
Read the Docs Template Documentation

Release latest

Read the Docs

Dec 03, 2018

1	FAQ	1
2	License	5
3	Installation Guide	7
4	Uninstallation	15
5	Translation	17
6	My Account	21
7	Upgrade Guide	27
8	Purchase, Payment and Invoices	31
9	Supports	33
10	Add Multiple Products to Cart	35
11	Admin Product Preview Plus	39
12	Advanced Search & Fast Auto Complete	43
13	Auto Invoice	45
14	Checkout Success Page	49
15	Configurable Product Matrix View	57
16	Configurable Product Table Ordering	61
17	Customer Group Without Tax	73
18	Defer JavaScript	77
19	Delete Order	85
20	Full Page Cache	91

21 Google Tag Manager	97
22 Improved Newsletter	99
23 Lazy Image Loader	101
24 Limit Order Quantity per Category	107
25 Limit Order Quantity per Product	111
26 Minimum Order Amount for Customer Group	115
27 Minimum Quantity of Configurable Product	119
28 Minimum Amount for Category	121
29 Multiple Store View Pricing	127
30 Order Delivery Date	139
31 Percentage Tier Price	147
32 Pro Configurable Product Grid Table View	151
33 Redirect Cart to Checkout Page	165
34 Reorder Product	167
35 Rich Snippets	171
36 SEO Layered Navigation	173
37 Shipping Method for Category	179
38 Shipping & Payment Methods Per Customer Group	185
39 Shopping Cart Rule per Store View	191
40 Store Locator	197
41 Unboxed	207
42 Wholesale Fast Order	219
43 Add Multiple Products To Cart	229
44 Admin Product Preview Plus	233
45 Ajax Add To Cart	243
46 Ajax Social Login	249
47 ANZ eGate payment Gateway	265
48 Auto Invoice	269
49 Catalog Price Rule per Store View	273
50 Checkout Custom Field	281

51 Checkout With Display Currency	283
52 Configurable Grid Table View	289
53 Configurable Product Wholesale Display	293
54 Custom Option Image	301
55 Defer JavaScript	305
56 Delete Order	309
57 Dynamic HTML Sitemap	315
58 Frequently Bought Together	319
59 Frontend Cancel Orders	331
60 Google AMP	337
61 Grouped Product with Custom Options	351
62 Hide Price/ Call For Price	355
63 Image Gallery	365
64 Infinite Scroll	373
65 Lazy Load	377
66 Limit Cart Quantity	381
67 Minimum Order Amount For Customer Group	385
68 Min/Max Order Quantity per Category	389
69 Multiple Store View Pricing	393
70 Multiple Wishlists	403
71 One Step Checkout	405
72 Order Delivery Date	409
73 Previous/Next Product Page	417
74 Quick View	419
75 Reorder Product List	423
76 Shipping and Payment Method for Customer Group	425
77 Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View	429
78 Simple Details on Configurable Products	435
79 Wholesale Fast Order	441
80 Topics	447

1.1 Magento Extensions

1.1.1 Do your extensions support multiple domains?

One extension is used for only one domain and if you want to use for other domains, you have to purchase this extension again.

1.1.2 What Magento Editions/Versions is compatible with?

Please note Magento 1 and Magento 2 are separate products and if you purchase an extension today, you have to select whether you want to purchase it for Magento 1 OR Magento 2. If you purchased a Magento 1 extension, you will need to re-purchase the extension for Magento 2, as Magento 2 is a completely new system and not a simple upgrade. All our extensions had to be developed from scratch for Magento 2

Our [Magento 1 extensions](#) are compatible with:

Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x

Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

Our [Magento 2 extensions](#) are compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

1.1.3 What browsers are your Magento extensions compatible with?

Our extensions are compatible with all popular browsers such as IE, Safari, Google Chrome, Mozilla FireFox, Opera.

1.1.4 Can I request trial?

We do not provide trial versions for our extensions. However, we are happy to offer 30-day money back guarantee if our extensions fail to function properly due to a bug and we cannot support to fix it. However, we always try our best to assist customer in solving problems.

1.1.5 How can I receive the updated version?

When BSSCommerce publishes new version of any product, please take notice of the release note tab in the product page to get the update news about the new version. Customers purchased product from us can get the updated version by [contacting us via email](#); we will send the new package version once we receive this kind of request. In addition, you can go to [My Account](#) -> [My Downloadable Products](#) to download the latest version of the extension.

1.1.6 Can I get the updated versions of extensions for free?

Yes, of course. However, please remember that we do not provide free service (including free support and installation service) for updated versions.

1.1.7 Are your extensions compatible with 3rd-party extensions?

All of our extensions were tested in clean Magento installations without third party extensions and we can't make sure whether they are compatible with 3rd party extensions or not. Therefore, in case you are not sure about the comparability of our extensions with other 3rd party extensions installed on your site in advance, please [contact us](#) for more information before your purchase.

1.1.8 Are your extensions open sources or encrypted?

Our extensions are 100% open source code

1.2 Installation, User guide and Translation

1.2.1 How can I install the extension?

To install the extension by your own, please read [Installation Guide](#) and follow steps we instruct you from this detailed document.

1.2.2 What should I do if I can't install the extension?

In case you cannot install the extension, please [contact us](#) to ask for more support. We are willing to install it for you based on [our policy](#).

1.2.3 Do you offer free installation?

We offer Free Installation for all paid extensions on a domain only. Once requested, we will contact you by asking for your site's credentials (Admin information, FTP account).

However, Free Installation Offer is just valid for 3 weeks (15 working days) for each order upon the date of purchase. After this period, we will charge the extra fee for this kind of service (basically \$40/ an Installation Request). Free installation is not applied on free extensions and updated versions.

1.2.4 Where can I get the user guide of extension?

Our detailed user guide with clear instructions is attached on the product page of each extension you bought from our site or you also get user guide of each extension in this [Wiki](#).

1.3 License

1.3.1 Do your extensions have license keys?

Yes, each of our extension has a license key and the license key is used for only one domain. If you want to use the extension for another domain, please purchase this module again for installing it to that new domain.

1.4 Payment, Invoice and Refund

1.4.1 What payment methods do you support?

We support PayPal as our payment method you can use to pay for the extension you purchase on our site.

1.4.2 How long does it take to receive my extension after purchasing?

When you finish your purchase, we will immediately send you an email including download link for you to get the module. In addition, the link for downloading your paid extension will be provided for you in your account. Please go to [My Account](#) -> [My Downloadable Products](#) to see the available link and download the extension.

1.4.3 How can I get my Invoice?

Your invoice is sent to your email after you finish your payment

1.4.4 Can I ask for refund after purchasing your extensions?

You absolutely ask for refund after purchasing our extension as long as the number of your purchase days does not excess 30 days because we only make refund for customer for a period of 30 days since the date you completed orders on our site.

1.4.5 What cases can I get refund?

If you are not satisfied about our extensions because our extensions do not function properly, you can ask for refund for the period of 30 days since the purchase date.

For more details, there are some cases you can get money return such as: Your site faces to some conflicts or bugs caused by our extensions, not modules of other Magento providers. In this case, you have to provide us access to your site to fix and if we cannot fix problems for you, you will be refunded. In addition, you cannot receive refund from us in the following cases:

- You do not give access account for us to fix bugs if our extension causes these bugs for your site
- The period for 30 – day money back is expired
- You do not purchase the right extension that you tend to buy.
- The extension does not have functions as you want and these functions are not written in the description.
- The incompatibility with third party extensions unless we confirmed compatibility with the specific extensions before your purchase.

- Installation services, conflicts resolution and customization services are not refundable

1.5 Some common conflicts/bugs

This license agreement is an agreement between BSSCommerce and you (the person or company who is being licensed to use extensions). The agreement applies to all extensions and services you purchase from us.

When you buy and use our products, you acknowledge that you have read this agreement and agree with all the content and terms of the agreement and comply it seriously.

This agreement takes effective at the moment when you order extensions from our site or receive it through email or on data medium or by any other means.

1. License

This agreement gives you the right to use only one license for one extension to install for your site. This license remains valid until when you do not want to continue using the module and uninstall from your Magento site or you break terms of the agreement. In addition, when you want to install the extension for another domain, you are required to purchase this extension again.

You just own a copy of extension to install for you site. Therefore, you are not allowed to distribute our extension for any third parties for non-commercial or commercial purposes without our permission. Every distribution by your own decision is regarded as the violation of this Agreement and entails liability, according to the current law.

You may not use any part of the code in whole or part in any other software or product or website.

You may not give, sell, sub-license, rent, lease or lend any portion of our extensions to anyone. You may not place the extension on a server so that it is accessible via a public network such as the Internet for distribution purposes.

2. Termination

In the issue of termination, if you fail in the compliance with terms and conditions of this License Agreement such as any violations of the agreement, BSSCommerce will terminate this license at any time. Your license to use our extension is revoked and you must destroy all copies of the extension on your site.

After we give you a notice of license termination, if you continue to use the module, you hereby agree to accept an injunction to enjoin you from its further use and to pay all costs (including but not limited to reasonable attorney fees) to enforce our revocation of your license and any damages suffered by us because of your misuse of the extension. In addition, we are not bound to return you all amount spent on the purchase of the extension for the termination of this license.

3. Limitation of Liability

BSSCommerce are not responsible for any damages on your site such as loss of profits/saving or loss of information which are not caused by the use of our extension. We are not also liable for any prosecution arising from use of the extension against law or for any illegal use.

4. Laws

We are the copyright holder of the extension. The module or a portion of it is a copyrightable matter and is liable to protection by the law. Any activity that infringes terms of this Agreement violates copyright law and will be prosecuted according to the current law.

In case you are holding an invalid license, we will reserve the right to revoke the license

3.1 Installation Guide for Magento 1 Extensions

Step 1:

When you finish purchasing process, we will immediately send you an email that includes the link to download the extension. On the other hand, you can log in your account, in **My Downloadable Products** section, click on **Download Link** to download the extension.

Order #	Date	Title	Release Note	Download Link	Status
100000649	2/29/2016	BSS Auto Invoice Extension		bss_autoinvoice_v1.1.0.zip	Available
100000649	2/29/2016	BSS Auto Invoice Extension		bss_autoinvoice_v1.0.9.zip	Available
100000649	2/29/2016	BSS Auto Invoice Extension		bss_autoinvoice_v1.0.7.zip	Available
100000649	2/29/2016	BSS Auto Invoice Extension		auto-invoice-free-extension-1.0.4_1_1.tgz	Available
100000649	2/29/2016	BSS Auto Invoice Extension		bss_autoinvoice_v1.0.5.zip	Available
100000649	2/29/2016	BSS Auto Invoice Extension	Version 1.0.4:	bss_autoinvoice_v1.0.4.zip	Available

Step 2:

The file that you download is normally a zip file. Then, please properly unzip that file before installing it.

Step 3:

Turn off Magento Compilation by navigating to System-Tools-Compilation or you can try to use following command line to disable it

```
php -f shell/compiler.php -- clear
```

Step 4:

It's required to disable cache in the administration panel of your site. Go to **System/Cache Management**. Select all caches and click **“Disable”** then submit.

Magento Admin Panel

Dashboard | Sales | Catalog | Customers | Promotions | Newsletter | CMS | Reports | **System**

Latest Message: Inspirational athlete, Serena Williams, will join Magento at Imagine 2017. [Read details](#)

Cache Storage Management

Select All | Unselect All | Select Visible | Unselect Visible | 0 items selected

Cache Type	Description
<input type="checkbox"/> Configuration	System(config.xml, local.xml) and modules configuration files(config.xml).
<input type="checkbox"/> Layouts	Layout building instructions.
<input type="checkbox"/> Blocks HTML output	Page blocks HTML.
<input type="checkbox"/> Translations	Translation files.
<input type="checkbox"/> Collections Data	Collection data files.
<input type="checkbox"/> EAV types and attributes	Entity types declaration cache.
<input type="checkbox"/> Web Services Configuration	Web Services definition files (api.xml).
<input type="checkbox"/> Web Services Configuration	Web Services definition files (api2.xml).

Additional Cache Management

Flush Catalog Images Cache Regenerated product images files.

Flush Swatch Images Cache Regenerated configurable swatches image files.

Flush JavaScript/CSS Cache Themes JavaScript and CSS files combined to one file.

Magento Admin Panel

Global Record Search | Logged in as admin | Wednesday, February 22, 2017 | [Log Out](#)

Dashboard | Sales | Catalog | Customers | Promotions | Newsletter | CMS | Reports | **System** | [Get help for this page](#)

Latest Message: Inspirational athlete, Serena Williams, will join Magento at Imagine 2017. [Read details](#) You have 17 critical, 6 major, 19 minor and 153 notice unread message(s). [Go to messages inbox](#)

8 cache type(s) disabled.

Cache Storage Management

[Flush Magento Cache](#) [Flush Cache Storage](#)

Select All | **Select all cache** | Unselect Visible | 8 items selected | **Select Disable then Submit** | Actions | Refresh | [Submit](#)

Cache Type	Description	Associated Tags	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration	System(config.xml, local.xml) and modules configuration files(config.xml).	CONFIG	DISABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Layouts	Layout building instructions.	LAYOUT_GENERAL_CACHE_TAG	DISABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Blocks HTML output	Page blocks HTML.	BLOCK_HTML	DISABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Translations	Translation files.	TRANSLATE	DISABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collections Data	Collection data files.	COLLECTION_DATA	DISABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAV types and attributes	Entity types declaration cache.	EAV	DISABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web Services Configuration	Web Services definition files (api.xml).	CONFIG_API	DISABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web Services Configuration	Web Services definition files (api2.xml).	CONFIG_API2	DISABLED

Step 5:

Use FTP client (such as Filezilla, WinSCP, CuteFTP) to upload or copy all folders in the zip package to your Magento site root folder. This will not overwrite any existing file; just add new files to the folder structure.

Step 6:

After uploading is done, **log in your Magento administration panel** to refresh cache. Go to **System/Cache Management**. Select all caches and take action **“Refresh”** then submit.

Cache Storage Management

8 cache type(s) enabled.

Flush Magento Cache | Flush Cache Storage

Select all cache | Unselect Visible | 8 items selected | Select Enable, then Submit

Cache Type	Description	Associated Tags	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Configuration	System(config.xml, local.xml) and modules configuration files(config.xml).	CONFIG ENABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Layouts	Layout building instructions.	LAYOUT_GENERAL_CACHE_TAG ENABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Blocks HTML output	Page blocks HTML.	BLOCK_HTML ENABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Translations	Translation files.	TRANSLATE ENABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Collections Data	Collection data files.	COLLECTION_DATA ENABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EAV types and attributes	Entity types declaration cache.	EAV ENABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Web Services Configuration	Web Services definition files (api.xml).	CONFIG_API ENABLED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Web Services Configuration	Web Services definition files (api2.xml).	CONFIG_API2 ENABLED

Step 7:

Navigate to **System/Configuration**, if you can see the extension tab, it is installed properly.

Current Configuration Scope: Default Config

Configuration

- GENERAL
 - General
 - Web
 - Design
 - Currency Setup
 - Store Email Addresses
 - Contacts
 - Reports
 - Content Management
- CATALOG
 - Catalog
 - Configurable Swatches
 - Inventory
 - Google Sitemap
 - RSS Feeds
 - Email to a Friend
 - BSS COMMERCE**
 - Checkout Success Page**

Checkout Success Page

- General
- Order Information Section
- Newsletter Subscription Section
- Suggest Products Block Section
- CMS Block Section
- Social Network Sharing Section
- Coupon Code
- Preview Section
- Style

*Note: Some extensions don't have Configuration in BSSCOMMERCE section of CATALOG tab. Therefore, please take a look their User guides for better usage.

Step 8:

Now if you get Access denied error when click on the extension tab, you need to **log out** admin panel and **log in** again.

Step 9:

Check everything in **front-end** and try to process, make sure that the extension is successfully installed and well compatible with your site.

*Note

After purchasing it, you should add our skype account at **support.bsscommerce** to contact us if you cannot install the extension by yourself. BSS Support Team will help you to install the **Magento** module and the installation fee will follow our [Terms and Condition](#) in Installation Policy section. Further assistance is available via Email and Skype. In case, you have followed all above steps but the extension doesn't work properly, you can delete the file or change the module's filename extension to keep your website function as normal. Then please contact us at support@bsscommerce.com or Skype: support.bsscommerce. Our supporters will assist you in resolving any issues within 24 hours. You also can see the example about installation guide for [Checkout Success Page](#) extension's video below:

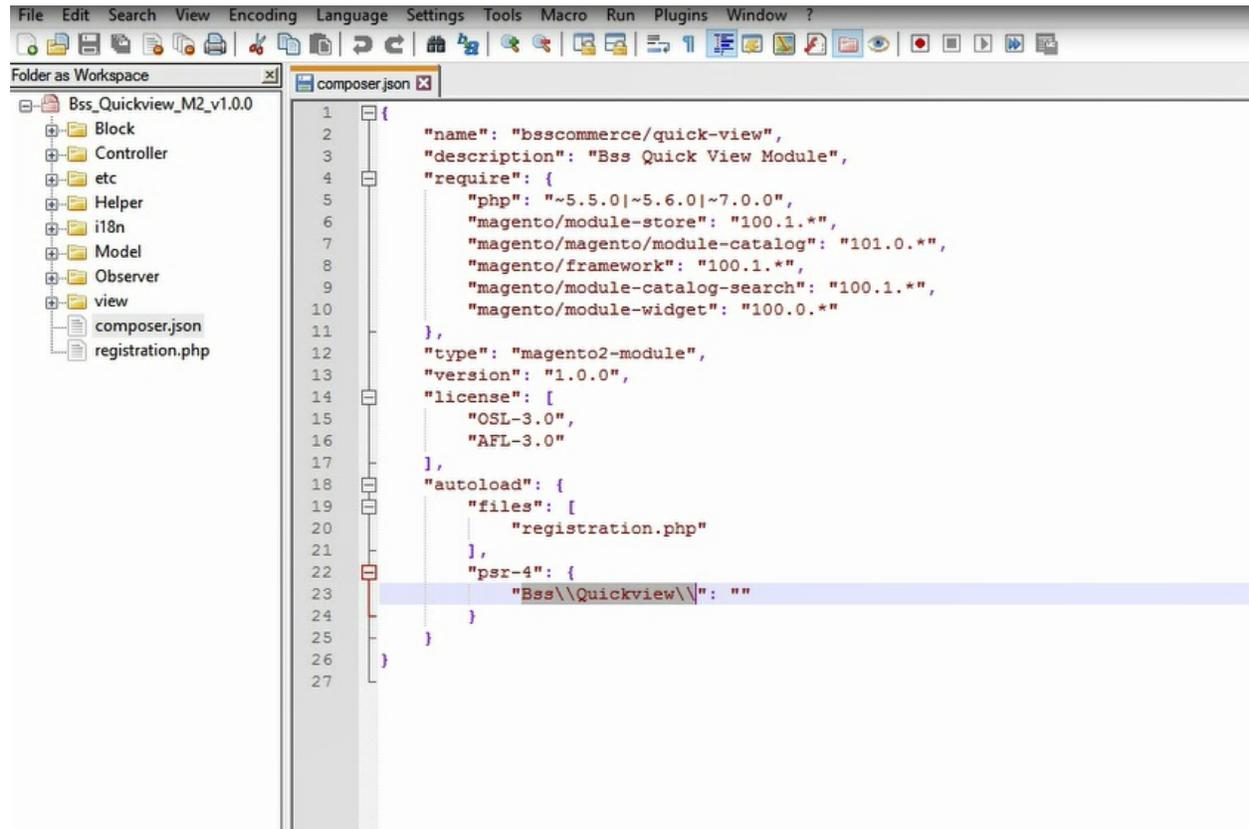
3.2 Installation Guide for Magento 2 Extensions

Step 1:

Unzip the file

Step 2:

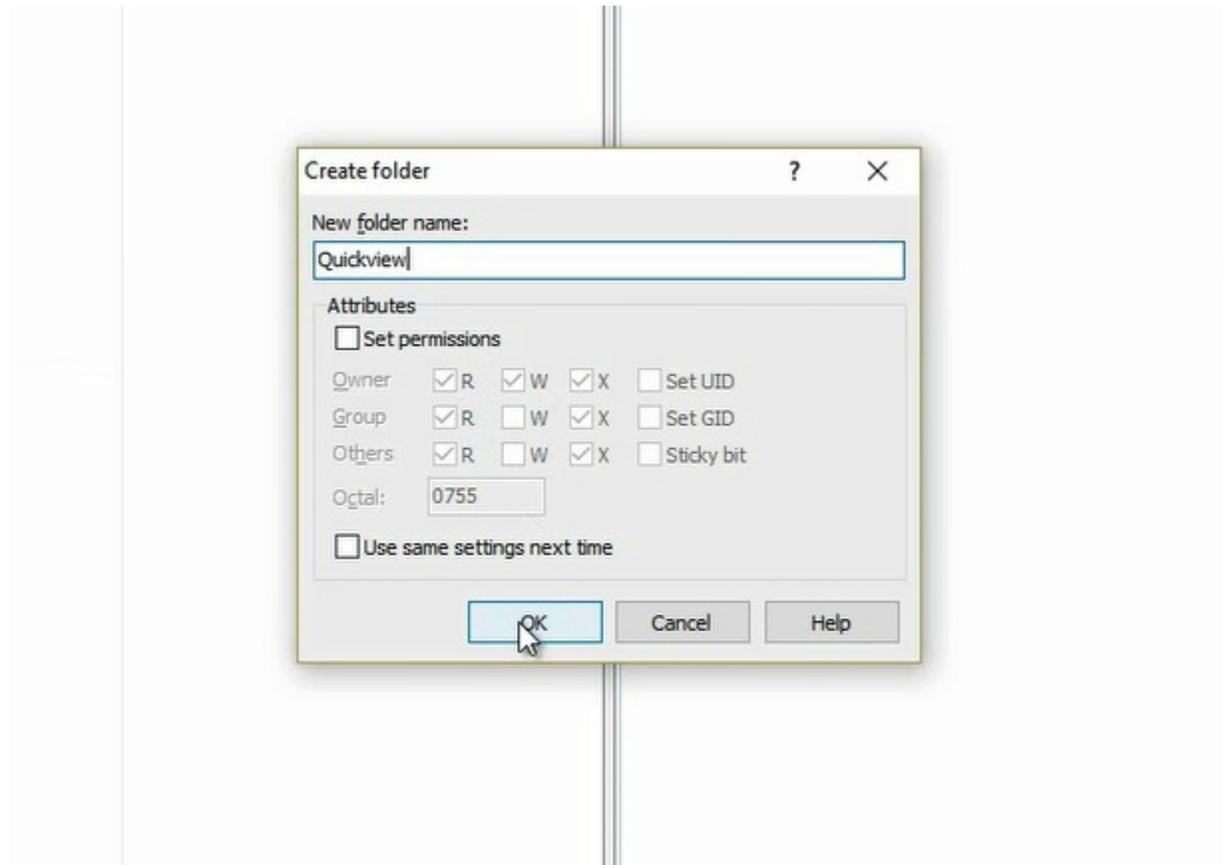
Create another directory called app/code/Bss/MODULENAME/ where MODULENAME must be replaced by the modules internal identifier. You can find it in the "composer.json" file in the extension ZIP file you downloaded, look at the node "psr-4".



```
1 {
2     "name": "bsscommerce/quick-view",
3     "description": "Bss Quick View Module",
4     "require": {
5         "php": "~5.5.0|~5.6.0|~7.0.0",
6         "magento/module-store": "100.1.*",
7         "magento/magento/module-catalog": "101.0.*",
8         "magento/framework": "100.1.*",
9         "magento/module-catalog-search": "100.1.*",
10        "magento/module-widget": "100.0.*"
11    },
12    "type": "magento2-module",
13    "version": "1.0.0",
14    "license": [
15        "OSL-3.0",
16        "AFL-3.0"
17    ],
18    "autoload": {
19        "files": [
20            "registration.php"
21        ],
22        "psr-4": {
23            "Bss\\Quickview\\": ""
24        }
25    }
26 }
27 }
```

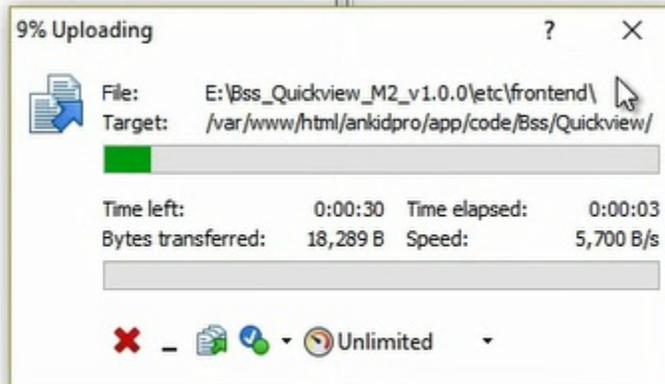
For example, it could say "Bss\AjaxCart" or "Bss\OneStepCheckout" there, then the MODULENAME is the part after \ and before \, so in our examples AjaxCart" or "OneStepCheckout". This is what you call the directory, then, for

example `app/code/Bss/AjaxCart`, and you put the contents of the extension ZIP file in there.



Step 3:

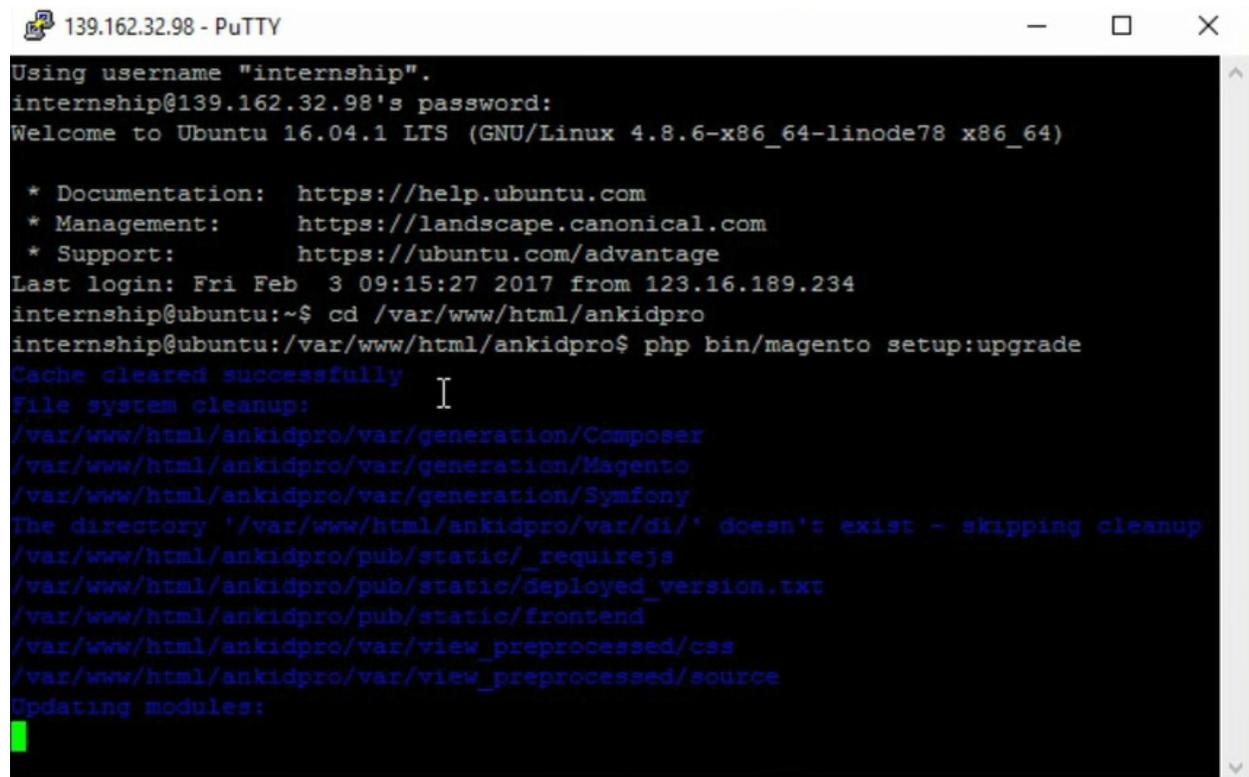
Upload the directory `app/code/Bss/MODULENAME/` into the root directory of your Magento installation. The root directory of Magento is the directory that contains the directories “app”, “bin”, “lib” and more. All directories should match the existing directory structure.



Step 4:

Go to Magento 2 root directory.

Run: `php bin/magento setup:upgrade`



Step 5:

Run: `php bin/magento setup:static-content:deploy`

```

139.162.32.98 - PuTTY
Using username "internship".
internship@139.162.32.98's password:
Welcome to Ubuntu 16.04.1 LTS (GNU/Linux 4.8.6-x86_64-linode78 x86_64)

 * Documentation:  https://help.ubuntu.com
 * Management:    https://landscape.canonical.com
 * Support:       https://ubuntu.com/advantage
Last login: Fri Feb  3 09:15:27 2017 from 123.16.189.234
internship@ubuntu:~$ cd /var/www/html/ankidpro
internship@ubuntu:/var/www/html/ankidpro$ php bin/magento setup:upgrade
Cache cleared successfully
File system cleanup:
/var/www/html/ankidpro/var/generation/Composer
/var/www/html/ankidpro/var/generation/Magento
/var/www/html/ankidpro/var/generation/Symfony
The directory '/var/www/html/ankidpro/var/di/' doesn't exist - skipping cleanup
/var/www/html/ankidpro/pub/static/_requirejs
/var/www/html/ankidpro/pub/static/deployed_version.txt
/var/www/html/ankidpro/pub/static/frontend
/var/www/html/ankidpro/var/view_preprocessed/css
/var/www/html/ankidpro/var/view_preprocessed/source
Updating modules:

```

Step 6:

Clear all Cache

*Note

If you have installed our extension via composer, please remove the module totally in vendor folder, delete line of module in composer.json and execute composer update before installing the updated version according to the guide above.

After purchasing it, you should add our skype account at **support.bsscommerce** to contact us if you cannot install the extension by yourself. BSS Support Team will help you to install the **Magento** module and the installation fee will follow our [Terms and Condition](#) in Installation Policy section. Further assistance is available via Email and Skype. In case, you have followed all above steps but the extension doesn't work properly, you can delete the file or change the module's filename extension to keep your website function as normal. Then please contact us at support@bsscommerce.com or Skype: [support.bsscommerce](https://www.skype.com/contact). Our supporters will assist you in resolving any issues within 24 hours.

Installation guides for Magento 2 extensions purchased from [Magento Marketplace](#)

You can also see an example about the installation guide of [Quick View for Magento 2 extension](#) in the following video:

How to uninstall magento 2 extension?

Here's our steps to uninstall this module:

Step 1: Connect via SSH to your magento installation and execute below commands:

```
php bin/magento module:disable <ExtensionProvider_ExtensionName> --clear-static-content php bin/magento setup:upgrade
```

Step 2: Remove extension files:

```
cd app/code/<ExtensionProvider>/ rm -rf <ExtensionName>
```

!Note: If you are using more extensions from the same provider make sure not to remove the shared extension, most providers use a shared extension or dependancy pack as a base for all their extensions.

5.1 Translation Guide for Magento 1 Extensions

To translate text in a custom module, you can use a language translation csv file.

Step 1: You access the `app/locale/en_US/name_of_the_module.csv` folder

- **`name_of_the_module.csv`** is the csv file of the module you want to translate
- **`en_US`**: This is the language folder. Remember that each site will have different language folders depending on what languages are available on the site. The other site, for examples, uses Japanese, then its language folder will be `ja_JP`. The module already contains US language folder.

After identifying the language folder of the site, you copy the **`name_of_the_module.csv`** file and paste it into the language folder.

Step 2: You open the `name_of_the_module.csv` file

In this file, you will see all text of the module displayed in 2 columns like below:

Fast Order	Fast Order
Search	Search
Photo	Photo
Product	Product
Qty	Qty
Total Price	Total Price
Edit	Edit
Action	Action
OK	OK
Reset	Reset
Subtotal:	Subtotal:
Download Sample Csv	Download Sample Csv
Import CSV	Import CSV
Add lines	Add lines
The SKU you entered was not found.	Photo
%s was added to your shopping cart.	%s was added to your shopping cart.
%s were added to your shopping cart.	%s were added to your shopping cart.
Items added to cart successfully.	Items added to cart successfully.
Please insert at least 1 products	Please insert at least 1 products
Enter product name or SKU	Enter product name or SKU
The file's format is not correct. Please download sample cs	The file's format is not correct. Please download si

(This is an example when opening the Bss_FastOrder.csv file of Magento Wholesale Fast Order extension by BSS)

All you need to do is adding the translation in the right column corresponding to the content in left column

5.2 Translation Guide for Magento 2 Extensions

To translate text in a custom module, you can use a language translation csv file.

Step 1: You access the `app/code/Bss/name_of_the_module/i18n/en_US.csv` folder

- **i18n:** This is the language folder. Remember that each site will have different language folders depending on what languages are available on the site. The other site, for examples, uses Japanese, then its language folder will be `ja_JP`. The module already contains US language folder.
- Create a csv file in the `app/code/Bss/name_of_the_module/i18n/` folder. For example: You create a file called `app/code/Bss/extensionname/i18n/fr_FR.csv`

Step 2: You open the `fr_FR.csv` file

In this file, you will see all text of the module displayed in 2 columns like below:

Fast Order	Fast Order
Search	Search
Photo	Photo
Product	Product
Qty	Qty
Total Price	Total Price
Edit	Edit
Action	Action
OK	OK
Reset	Reset
Subtotal:	Subtotal:
Download Sample Csv	Download Sample Csv
Import CSV	Import CSV
Add lines	Add lines
The SKU you entered was not found.	Photo
%s was added to your shopping cart.	%s was added to your shopping cart.
%s were added to your shopping cart.	%s were added to your shopping cart.
Items added to cart successfully.	Items added to cart successfully.
Please insert at least 1 products	Please insert at least 1 products
Enter product name or SKU	Enter product name or SKU
The file's format is not correct. Please download sample cs	The file's format is not correct. Please download si

(This is an example when opening the Bss_FastOrder.csv file of Magento Wholesale Fast Order extension by BSS)

All you need to do is adding the translation in the right column corresponding to the content in left column

6.1 Change or reset your password

Your password is the key to not only logging into your account, but also to changing your private information such as username or email address and your account setting. Therefore, it is vital that you keep your passwords safe. This guided assistance article will help you change your password for security reasons or reset it if you forget it.

6.1.1 1. Change your password

Step 1: Go to Login/Register.



HOME MAGENTO EXTENSIONS MAGENTO® 2 SERVICES BLOG ABOUT US

Support [Login/ Register](#) [0 Item](#)

Search Magento Extensions here...

Step 2: Under “REGISTERED CUSTOMERS”, fill in “Email Address” and “Password” blank, then click Login.

Support | [Login/ Register](#) 0 Item

HOME MAGENTO EXTENSIONS MAGENTO® 2 SERVICES BLOG ABOUT US

Search Magento Extensions here...

Login or Create an Account

NEW CUSTOMERS

By creating an account with our store, you will be able to move through the checkout process faster, store multiple shipping addresses, view and track your orders in your account and more.

[Create an Account](#)

REGISTERED CUSTOMERS

If you have an account with us, please log in.

Email Address*

Password*

[Login](#)

* Required Fields

[Forgot Your Password?](#)

GOOGLE CONNECT

You can login using your Google account.

FACEBOOK CONNECT

You can login using your Facebook account.

TWITTER CONNECT

You can login using your Twitter account.

Step 3: In Account Dashboard/Account Information, choose CHANGE PASSWORD

Support | [Account](#) | [Logout](#) 0 Item

HOME MAGENTO EXTENSIONS MAGENTO® 2 SERVICES BLOG ABOUT US

Search Magento Extensions here...

Account

Account Dashboard

- Account Information
- My Downloadable Products
- Address Book
- My Tickets
- My Orders
- My Product Reviews
- Newsletter Subscriptions

My Dashboard

Hello, Zoey Ho!

If you have any problems or need information, please do not hesitate to email us at support@bsscommerce.com or our instant support at Skype ip: [support.bsscommerce](https://www.skype.com/partners/bsscommerce)

Account Information

Contact Information

Zoey Ho
mailinhho9493@gmail.com

[EDIT](#) [CHANGE PASSWORD](#)

Newsletters

Address Book [MANAGE ADDRESSES](#)

DEFAULT BILLING ADDRESS	DEFAULT SHIPPING ADDRESS
You have not set a default billing address.	You have not set a default shipping address.
EDIT	EDIT

The screenshot shows the BSS Commerce account interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the BSS logo, a search bar, and links for Support, Account, Logout, and a shopping cart icon showing 0 items. Below the navigation bar is a menu with links: HOME, MAGENTO EXTENSIONS, MAGENTO® 2, SERVICES, BLOG, and ABOUT US. The main content area is titled 'Edit Account Information' and contains a form for 'ACCOUNT INFORMATION'. The form has fields for 'First Name*', 'Last Name*', and 'Email Address*'. A checkbox labeled 'Change Password' is highlighted with a red box. At the bottom of the form, there is a 'Back' button and a 'Save' button. A note '* Required Fields' is visible on the right side.

Step 4: Enter Current Password, New Password, and Confirm New Password, then click Save.

This screenshot shows the same BSS Commerce account page as the previous one, but with the 'Change Password' checkbox checked. The 'CHANGE PASSWORD' section of the form is highlighted with a red box. This section contains three input fields: 'Current Password*', 'New Password*', and 'Confirm New Password*'. The 'Back' and 'Save' buttons are still visible at the bottom of the form. The '* Required Fields' note is also present.

6.1.2 2. Reset your password

Step 1: Go to Login/Register.

The screenshot shows the BSS Commerce account page with the 'Login/ Register' button highlighted by a red box. The page layout is consistent with the previous screenshots, showing the navigation bar, menu, and account options.

Step 2: Under “REGISTERED CUSTOMERS”, choose “Forgot Your Password?”

BSS COMMERCE

HOME MAGENTO EXTENSIONS MAGENTO 2 SERVICES BLOG ABOUT US

Support | Login/ Register 0 Item

Search Magento Extensions here...

Login or Create an Account

NEW CUSTOMERS

By creating an account with our store, you will be able to move through the checkout process faster, store multiple shipping addresses, view and track your orders in your account and more.

Create an Account

REGISTERED CUSTOMERS

If you have an account with us, please log in.

Email Address*

Password*

Login

* Required Fields

Forgot Your Password?

Step 3: Enter your email address that you registered before into the blank, the click Submit.

BSS COMMERCE

HOME MAGENTO EXTENSIONS MAGENTO 2 SERVICES BLOG ABOUT US

Support | Login/ Register 0 Item

Search Magento Extensions here...

Forgot Your Password?

RETRIEVE YOUR PASSWORD HERE

Please enter your email address below. You will receive a link to reset your password.

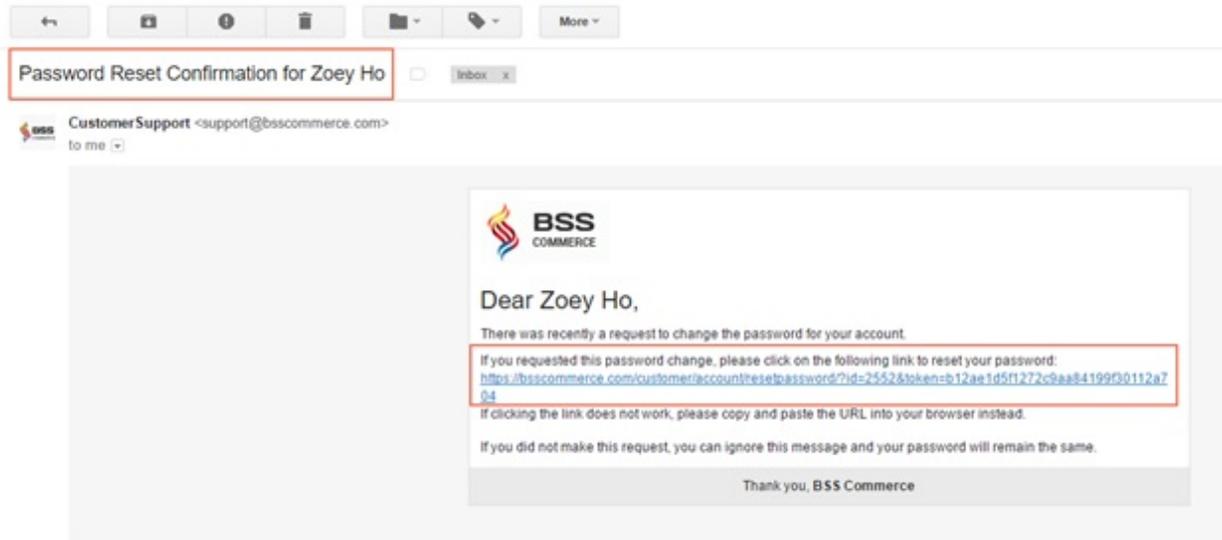
Email Address*

Submit

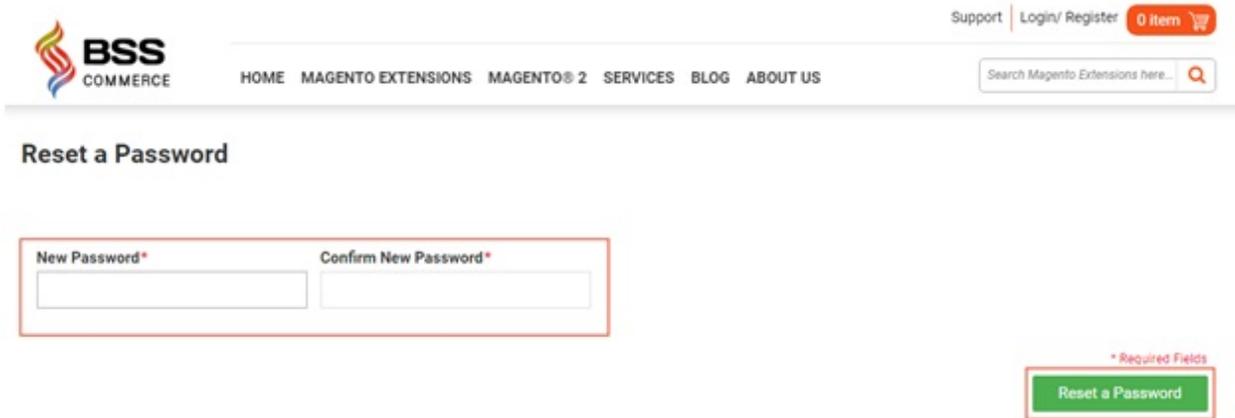
* Required Fields

< Back to Login

Step 4: Check your email. A request confirmation email will be sent to your email, with a link to reset your password. Follow the link that you receive (if clicking the link does not work, please copy and paste the URL into your browser instead).



Step 5: Enter your New Password and Confirm New Password, then click Reset a Password.



*Note:For security, password reset links become invalid once used.

We hope this article is helpful for you. If you don't succeed in changing or resetting your password, please feel free to contact us for any further assistance.

Skype: support.bsscommerce.

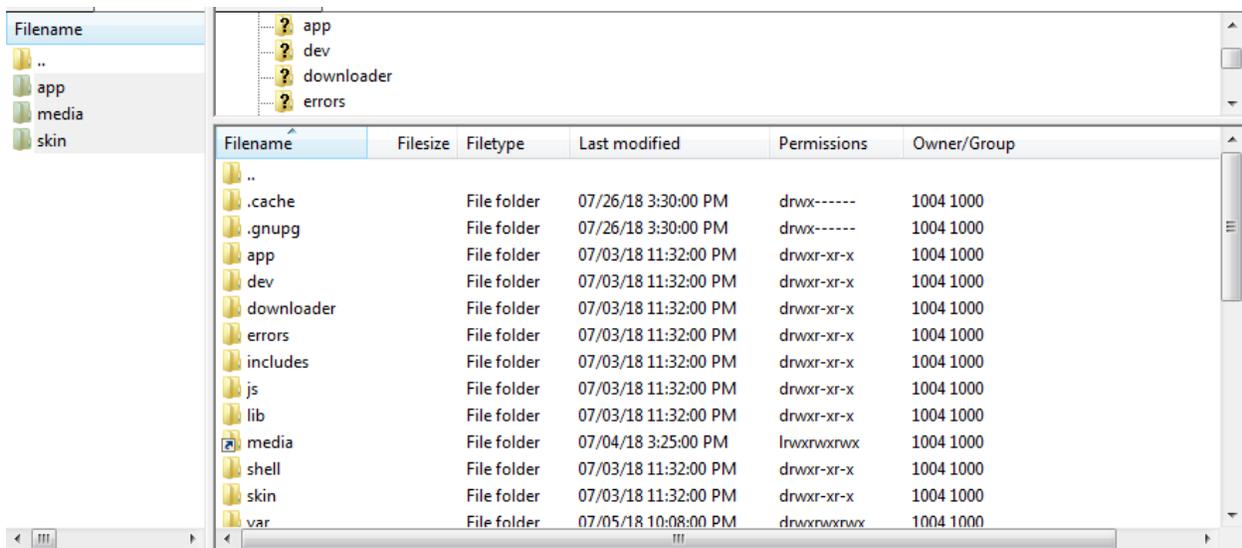
Email: support@bsscommerce.com

Tel: +84 983513599

7.1 Update Module in Magento 1 Manually

Update module via FTP

Extract module's file, place this file into code folder of Magento site:



Log into backend, flush Magento cache and check the module function after updating. In case you want to completely uninstall the old module before updating, follow these steps:

Step 1: To disable module, edit this file

```
/app/etc/modules/<your_module>.xml;
```

Replace `<active>>true</active>` by `<active>>false</active>`;

Step 2: Delete all mysql tables created by the module

Step 3: Delete the module in the core_recourse table

Step 4: Delete files in the <project_root>/var/cache folder

Step 5: Refresh Magento site and the module has been removed successfully

Then put the code of the module to site's folder via ftp as mentioned above and flush Magento cache

7.2 Update Module in Magento 2 Manually

I. Extension Update via FTP/SSH

If you have an odd extension on your Magento 2, update the module manually following the steps below.

Step 1: Connect to the root of your Magento 2 installation (the folder contains the extension folder) via SSH:

Step 2: Remove the module files using the command:

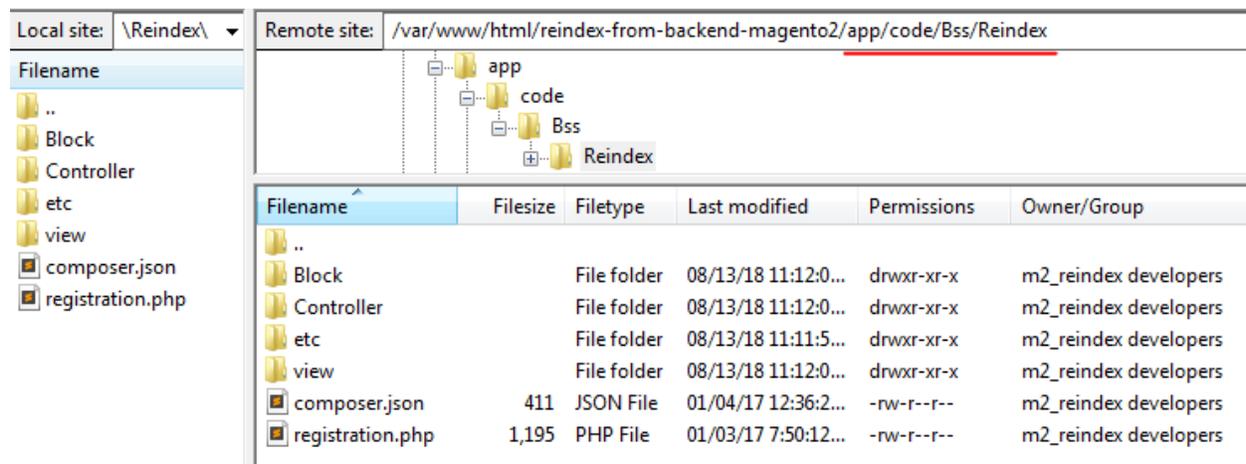
```
cd app/code/<VendorName>/
```

```
rm -rf <ComponentName>
```

Step 3: Update module latest version

Put code module into app/code/<ExtensionProvider>/<ExtensionName>

(<VendorName>/<ComponentName> find in file composer.json)



Apply the commands to install it:

```
php bin/magento setup:upgrade
```

```
php bin/magento setup:static-content:deploy
```

```
php bin/magento cache:flush
```

Finally you should check again the function of module

II. Extension Update via Composer

The extension update process is the same as the module installation process. To update the extension, simply execute the command:

```
composer update <composer_name>
```

Instead of the 'composer_name' please specify the corresponding module name which is indicated in your customer account. This command updates only the last two version numbers: e.g. 1.x.x (only x.x will be updated).

To update the version from 1.x.x to 2.x.x you need to execute the following command:

```
composer require <composer_name> ^x.0.0 --update-with-dependencies
```

Where x corresponds to the first version number. For example, to update the Improved Layered Navigation Extension for M2 from the 1.x.x version to the 2.x.x version you need to execute the command:

```
composer require bsscommerce/defer-js ^2.0.0 --update-with-dependencies
```

Purchase, Payment and Invoices

1. Purchase process

Step 1:

Choose your wanted extension with edition and quantity and then Click “Add to cart” button

Defer JavaScript
★★★★★ 18 Review(s) | Add Your Review
Trick (92)

Magento Defer JavaScript Extension by BSSCommerce speeds up Magento store performance by automatically deferring your JavaScript loading. Effectively reduces loading time, engages more customers and your sale is on way to boost up!

- Instantly and automatically defer parsing of Javascript
- Defer javascript till the last moment
- Work perfectly with Full page cache
- Magically improve pagespeed score!

Hot Update:
BUY Defer JS for Magento 1 get FREE Version for Magento 2!

Edition *
Community
Enterprise + \$50.00

Quantity: - 1 +

Total: \$25.00

ADD TO CART

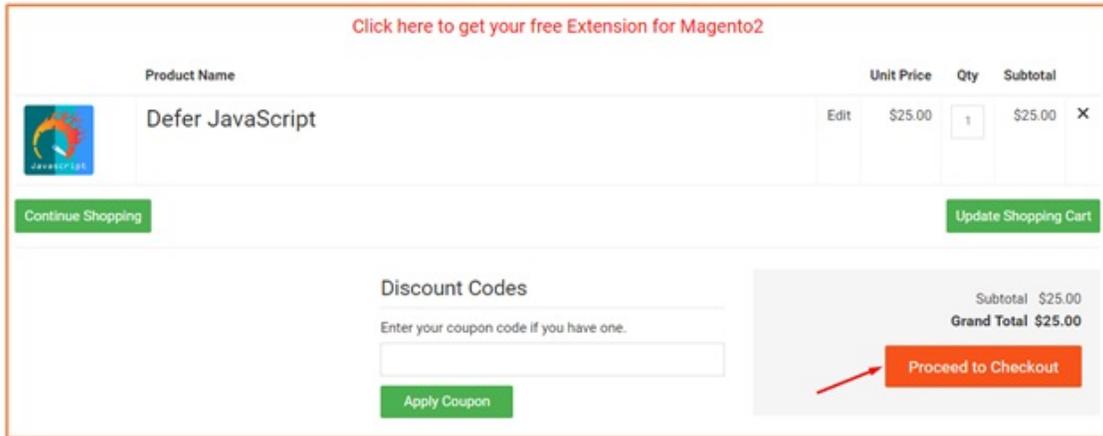
CUSTOMIZE THIS EXTENSION

DOCUMENTS

Step 2:

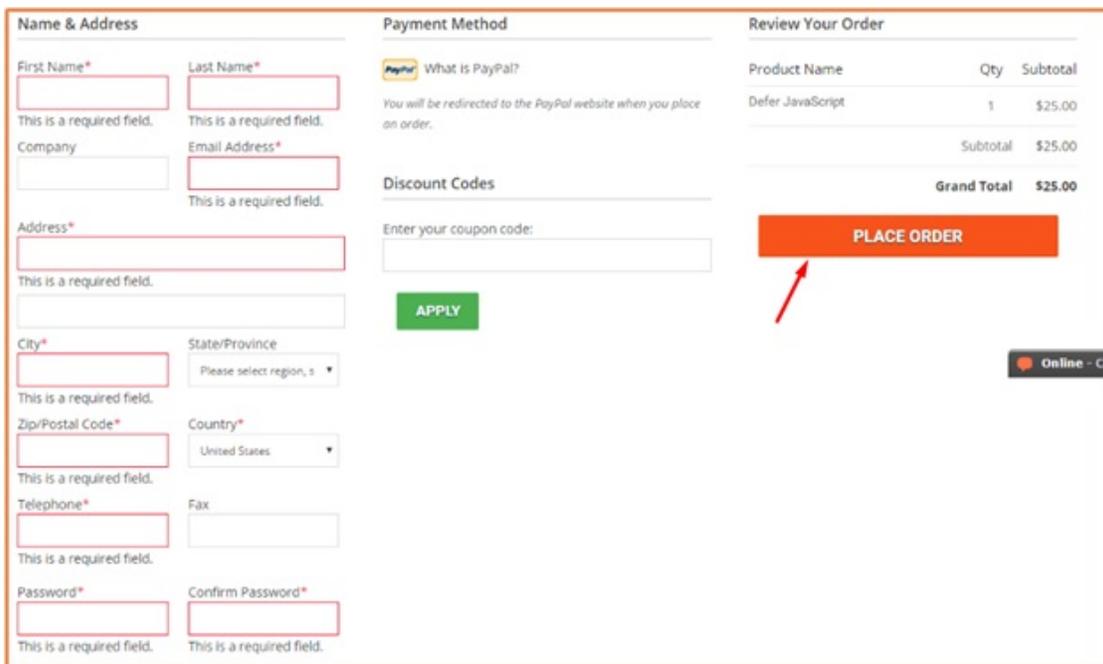
Check again the extension along with quantity and total amount in the shopping cart page.

- You can edit your purchase by clicking **Edit** and then **Click Update Shopping Cart**. If you want to continue shopping, please click to “**Continue Shopping**” to come back our Homepage.
- Enter discount code if you are provided
- After that, please click “**Proceed to Checkout**” button to redirect to the checkout page



Step 3:

- Fulfill all required information in the Name & Address section
- Enter discount code if you have not yet used it in the shopping cart
- Review your order carefully
- Click **“Place Order”** button



Step 4:

After you click **“Place Order”** button, you will be redirected to PayPal website to complete your payment here.

2. Payment

We provide customers PayPal as our payment method to purchase extensions from our site

3. Invoices

After you finish your payment, the invoice will be sent to your email with order information.

BSSCommerce offers Free 1-year support for all customers when purchasing Magento extensions.

Please notice that we just provide support **for only a domain** for each purchasing time of customers. Support includes answering any question related to our products and fixing any bug/error caused by our products which is reported by customers to make sure it works well as the demo version. Support does not include customizing our product to fit your own needs; with any request for customization will require extra fee. Free support service is just applied on paid products. Please notice that we do not offer free support for free extensions, that means if customers ask for any kind of support for a free extension, there will be extra fee for this kind of service. Customer can contact for support by Email, sending [Ticket](#) or through our [Live Chat](#). Please kindly understand all support request on weekend will be processed when we're back to office on next Monday (GMT+7).

Email: support@bsscommerce.com

Skype: support.bsscommerce

[Live Chat](#)

There is a note that when you contact us for fixing bugs on your site, please provide us access to your website (including Admin account and FTP information) so that we are able to support you as soon as possible.

Add Multiple Products to Cart

10.1 User Guide

10.1.1 Magento Add Multiple Products to Cart Extension Overview

As you know, Magento default does not allow customers to add many products to carts at one time in the product list pages such as category pages and search result pages. Therefore, customers cannot order their desired products with a large quantity when they do not want to visit each product page one by one because it is very time-consuming.

[Magento Add Multiple Products to Cart](#) is developed by BSSCommerce to solve this issue and bring better shopping experience for customers. By allowing customers to add multiple items to cart with various quantities at once, they can save a lot of time with the quicker order process than the normal one and also store owners can increase sales well, especially when target customers are wholesalers.

10.1.2 How does Magento Add Multiple Products to Cart Extension work?

You go to **System -> Configuration -> Add Multiple Products** to start making configuration.

Add Multiple Products

Enable	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Enable for module	
Add lib jQuery	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Add jQuery if site don't have it	
Validate Bug	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Check any bug before add to cart (If have error - prevent add to cart)	
Category	----- Shirts (ID: 15) ----- Tees, Knits and Polos (ID: 16) ----- Pants & Denim (ID: 17) ----- Blazers (ID: 40) --- Accessories (ID: 6) ----- Eyewear (ID: 18) ----- Jewelry (ID: 19)	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Enable add multiple product to cart for category	

In Enable:

- Choose **Yes** to enable the module
- Choose **No** to disable it

In Add Lib jQuery:

- Choose **Yes** to add Library jQuery if your site doesn't have it
- Choose **No** if your site already have it

In Validate bug: in this field, you will select the way to notify errors occurring when customers add products to cart.

- If you choose **Yes**, a popup of error notification will appear when customers add to cart products without selecting custom options or when no products are added to cart
- If you choose **No**, error notification will be displayed in the shopping cart for products that customers do not select custom options for them. Other products are still added to cart.

Category	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>-- Please Select a Category --</p> <p>All Category (*)</p> <p>Default Category (ID: 2)</p> <p>--- Women (ID: 4)</p> <p>----- New Arrivals (ID: 10)</p> <p>----- Tops & Blouses (ID: 11)</p> <p>----- Pants & Denim (ID: 12)</p> <p>----- Dresses & Skirts (ID: 13)</p> </div>	[STORE VIEW]
Custom option Product	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Yes</p> </div> <p>▲ Enable add multiple product to cart for product custom option (ex: simple product custom option,...)</p>	[STORE VIEW]
Downloadable Product	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Yes</p> </div> <p>▲ Enable add multiple product to cart for downloadable product</p>	[STORE VIEW]
Configurable Product	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Yes</p> </div> <p>▲ Enable add multiple product to cart for configurable product</p>	[STORE VIEW]
Bundle Product	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Yes</p> </div> <p>▲ Enable add multiple product to cart for bundle product</p>	[STORE VIEW]

In **Category**: you select categories that you want to apply this module to. It means that when you choose a category, customers can add multiple products belonging to this category to cart

In Custom Option Product:

- Choose **Yes** to enable the function of adding multiple products to cart for products with custom options
- Choose **No** to disable this function for products with custom options

Next, you can choose product types to apply this module:

In Downloadable Product:

- Choose **Yes** and customers can add multiple downloadable products to cart
- Choose **No** and there are not check box and quantity box for this product type. It means that customers cannot also add downloadable products along with other product types

In Configurable Product:

- Choose **Yes** and customers can add multiple configurable products to cart
- Choose **No** and there are not check box and quantity box for this product type. It means that customers cannot also add configurable products along with other product types

In Bundle Product:

- Choose **Yes** and customers can add multiple bundle products to cart
- Choose **No** and there are not check box and quantity box for this product type. It means that customers cannot also add bundle products along with other product types

Finally, you click **Save Config** and see changes in the frontend.

10.1.3 Note

Magento Add Multiple Products to Cart Extension does not work with pagination of product list pages. It means that if customers select multi products in page 1, they can add all of these products to cart in only page 1, not in other pages

10.2 Compatibility

Our Add Multiple Products to Cart is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

10.3 Changelog

10.4 FAQs

Admin Product Preview Plus

11.1 User Guide

11.1.1 Magento Admin Product Preview Plus Extension Overview

[Magento Admin Product Preview Plus Extension](#) by BSSCommerce helps administrators to check out the front end page right from Magento admin by just some clicks without saving any configuration. This extension adds preview buttons in Product grid view and Product Edit Page to view the frontend product page directly in the backend. It allows accessing customer and product information easily by clicking to the product and customer names. Magento Admin Product Preview Plus Extension also provides preview buttons in Category and CMS page for linking to the front end of Category and CMS page quickly. Especially, this extension links to shipping address by Google Map to locate customer positions and optimize shipping process.

11.1.2 How does Magento Admin Product Preview Plus Extension work?

1. Add Product Table And Customer Link

The screenshot displays the configuration interface for the 'Add Product Table And Customer Link' extension. It features several settings, each with a dropdown menu and a '[STORE VIEW]' label. Callout boxes on the right provide specific instructions for each setting:

- Enable:** Set to 'Yes'. Callout: 'Active for product table, customer link and product link in order grid'.
- Title of product table:** Set to 'Test test'. Callout: 'Name the product table as your wish.'
- Add columns in product table:** A list of columns is shown, including 'Product Information', 'SKU', 'Product Name', 'Image', 'Original Price', 'Price', and 'Order items quantity'. Callout: 'Choose more columns to add into product table.'
- Filter Products:** Set to 'Product Names'. Callout: 'Note: Use the Product Name, SKU, when filtering ordered items'.
- Sort table:** Set to 'Order'. Callout: 'Choose the column to sort and the product table will be displayed after this column.'
- Product link in order view:** Set to 'Yes'. Callout: 'Display product link in order view'.
- Type of Product link:** Set to 'Frontend'. Callout: 'Choose the destination to link to.'
- Open link with popup:** Set to 'Yes'. Callout: 'Note: You can set to open link in new tab or use popup (apply for product link (in order grid and order view) and customer link)'.
- Add customer link:** Set to 'Yes'. Callout: 'Display customer link in column Billing name.'

In **Enable**: Choose **Yes** to make product table, customer link and product link active or choose **No** if you want to deactivate them

In **Title of product table**: You name your own title for product table as your wish

In **Add columns in product table**: You choose columns that you want to add to the product table such as SKUs, names, images and so on

In **Filter Products**: You can select **Product names** or **Product SKUs** to filter products

In **Sort Table**: You choose the column to sort and the product table will be displayed behind this column.

In **Type of product link**: You can choose to link to **Frontend** or **Backend** page

In **Open link with pop up**: Choose **Yes** to open link in a pop up and choose **No** to open in a new tab [Please note that this function just applies for product link (in order grid and order view) and customer link]

In **Add customer link**: Choose **Yes** to display customer links in the column “Billing name” or choose **No** to exclude them.

2. Add Button Preview

Setting	Value	Label
Button view cms page	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Note: If cms page status is disable, the button will not be active.		
Button view Category page	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Note: If category is not active, the button will not be active.		
Button view product page	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Note: If Product status is Disable or Not visible individually, the button will not be active.		
Add column View product	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Note: If product status is Disable or Not visible individually, the link will not be shown in column.		

In **Button view CMS page**: Choose **Yes** to add preview buttons in Admin-CMS page or choose **No** to disable them. Please remember that in case CMS page status is Disable, the buttons will not be active.

In **Button view Category page**: Choose **Yes** to add preview buttons in Admin-Category page or choose **No** to disable them. Please remember that in case the category is not active, the button will not be available to use.

In **Button view Product page**: Choose **Yes** to add preview buttons in Admin-Product Edit Page or choose **No** to disable them. Please remember that in case Product status is Disable or Not Visible Individually, the button will not be active.

In **Add column View product**: Choose **Yes** to add a column of View product to Admin-Product Grid View or choose **No** to disable them. Please remember that in case Product status is Disable or Not Visible Individually, the link will not be shown in the column.

3. Google Map For Shipping

Setting	Value	Label
Active Google Map	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Note: Get information from shipping (street,city,region,post:code,country) to auto search for address by using Google map		

In **Active Google Map**: Choose **Yes** to link to shipping address by Google Map or choose **No** to disable this function.

11.2 Compatibility

Our Admin Product Preview Plus is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

11.3 Changelog

First Release: v1.0.0

11.4 FAQs

Advanced Search & Fast Auto Complete

12.1 User Guide

12.1.1 Advanced Search and Fast Autocomplete Overview

Everybody knows how important is make customers find what they want faster, it's an important part of any ecommerce system because it seems impossible to show all products with full details to customers at the same time. With a powerful search tool, a web-store can increase selling chance as well as customer ease of use. Magento by default use a simple searching function which takes a long time to show the entire search result page and does not provide most relevant results at first case.

On average, 15% of visitors use the product search in online store. These are the visitors who know what they want and are looking for it to buy, which brings about half of orders to your shop. Therefore, the sales of online store depend on whether a website search is able to quickly find a proper and satisfying goods and services. [BSS Magento Search and Fast AutoComplete Extension](#) will effectively deal with this issue.

12.1.2 How does Advanced Search and Fast Autocomplete work?

As an admin, you can set up your own store page by the most effective way that supports your trading objective. To polish the website configuration:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel -> System -> Configuration**.
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS COMMERCE -> select Advanced Search + FastAutoComplete**.

You can select between enable and disable Advanced Search and Fast Autocomplete Extension by selecting Yes/ No in **Enabled Module** box.

There are 6 sections for admin to continue configuring the extension: **Enable search categories, Enabled jQuery, Search by, Autocomplete minimum characters, Max results to show products, Max result to show categories.**

1. Enabled searchcategories

Choose Yes to enable searching by category

2. EnabledjQuery

Choose Yes to enable jQuery of module

3. Searchby

In this field, you can configure which attributes of product will be used to search product. Click to “Add” button to add more attribute, then choose attribute name from dropdown selection. Type a number in “Weight” box for each attribute. Search results will be sorted from high to low weight.

Attributes	Weight	
Name	10	Delete
Short Description	20	Delete
Description	1	Delete
SKU	4	Delete
		Add

▲ Search results sort from high to low weight. After changing, you must reindex 'Catalog Search Index'.

4. Autocomplete minimumcharacters

Type a number to this box to set up the minimum number of characters before displaying autocomplete result

5. Max results to showproducts

Type a number to this box to set up the maximum of product will be shown when searching

6. Max results to showcategories

Type a number to this box to set up the maximum of category will be shown when searching

Autocomplete minimum characters	1	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Minimum number of characters before displaying the autocomplete results.	
Max results to show products	6	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Number of products show when search.	
Max results to show categories	3	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Number of categories show when search.	

12.2 Compatibility

Our Advanced Search & Fast Auto Complete is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

12.3 Changelog

12.4 FAQs

13.1 User Guide

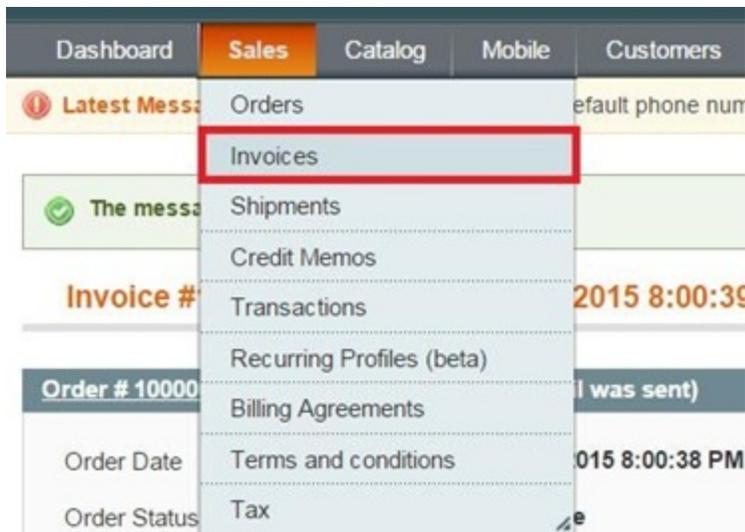
13.1.1 Magento Auto Invoice Overview

Magento Auto Invoice simplifies order status management which not only reduces significant admin works but also satisfies customers' need. Customers always want the place order as fast as possible and at once. With Auto Invoice, all status of orders will be automatically changed into "Complete" and invoices will accordingly be created. As a result, Magento Auto Invoice will put an end of overload of manually creating an invoice too much for Magento Store Owners.

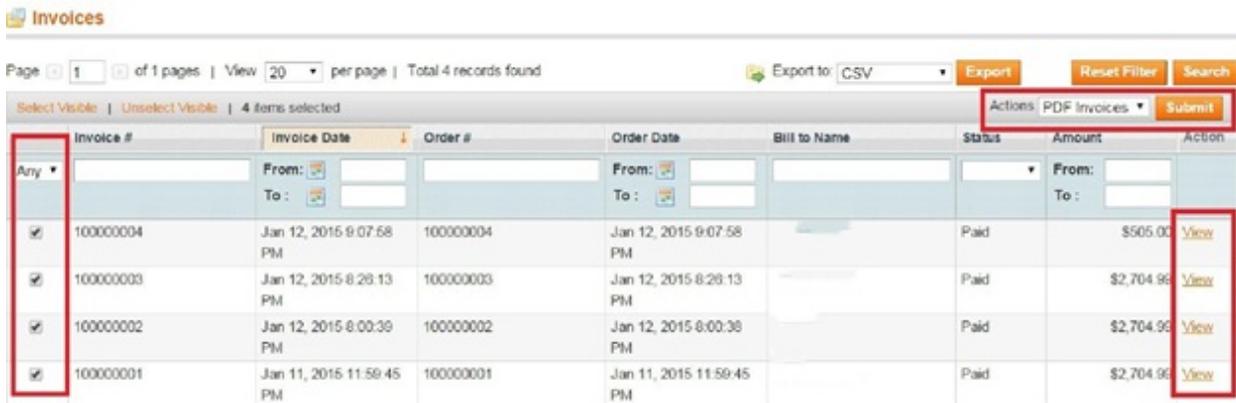
13.1.2 How Magento Auto Invoice works?

Invoice Management

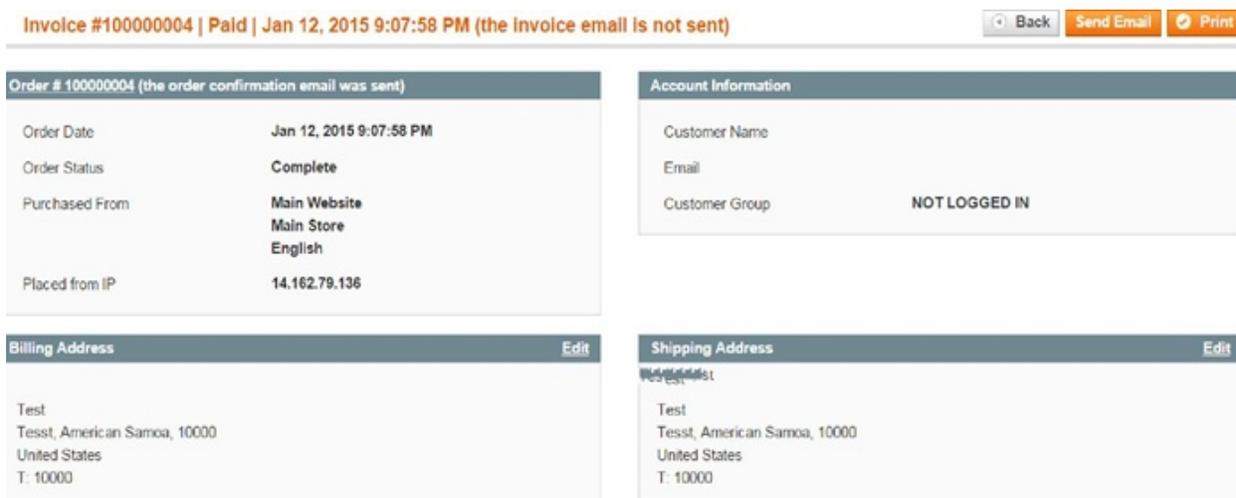
Step 1: After the orders has been successfully made with all required fields to be filled in, checking in your Sales->Invoices



Step 2: Submit your wanted confirmed orders, choose “Action” status into “PDF” if you want to attach invoice PDF files into the email. After submitting, Click “View” button!



Click “Send Email” and your customer will be successfully received it.



Backend Configuration

Magento Auto Invoice is easily configured from backend by these steps:

Go to Backend-> system->configuration

Easily **enable/disable** the extension and select the suitable **Payment Methods**

Bss Auto Invoice

Enabled: Yes

Select Payment Methods:

- Credit Card (Authorize.net)
- Credit Card Direct Post (Authorize.net)
- Moneybookers**
- All Polish Banks
- CartaSi
- Carte Bleue
- Credit Card / Visa, Mastercard, AMEX, JCB, DI
- Dankort
- EPS Online-Überweisung

▲ Select payment methods for which invoice and shipment autogeneration will work

Set enable or disable for automatic invoice and shipment generation in the same page as:

Enable automatic invoice generation: Yes

Enable automatic shipment generation: Yes

13.2 Compatibility

Our Auto Invoice is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

13.3 Changelog

13.4 FAQs

14.1 User Guide

14.1.1 Magento Checkout Success Page Overview

[Magento Checkout Success Page](#) extension is a unique extension which allows admin to tweak the success page or also called “thank you page” for better sales conversion.

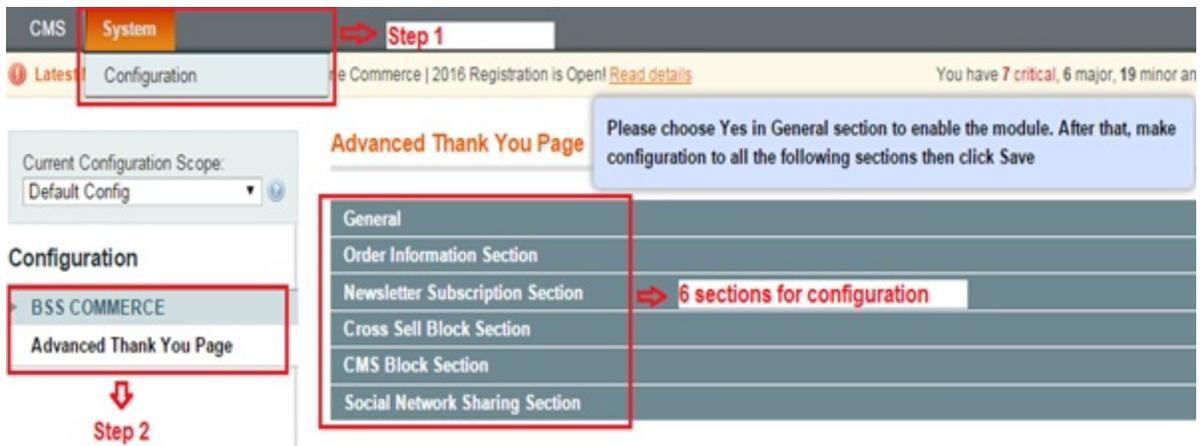
The Success page, which appears when customer’s order process is accomplished, is often forgotten by many Magento users. Interestingly, this page can be of much value when admin know how to make use of it properly. Our Checkout Success Page Extension is designed with the hope to help you utilize the success page to empower your sale.

14.1.2 How does Magento Checkout Success Page extension work?

As an admin, you can set up your own store page by the most effective way that supports your trading objective. To polish the website configuration:

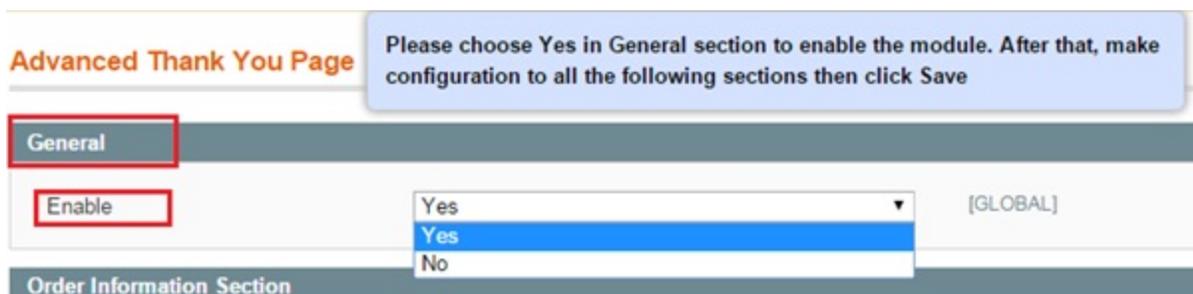
- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel => System => Configuration**
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS COMMERCE => select Checkout Success Page**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the below picture:



There are 6 sections for admin to continue configuring the extension: **General, Order Information Section, Newsletter Subscription Section, Cross Sell Block Section, CMS Block Section, Social Network Sharing Section.**

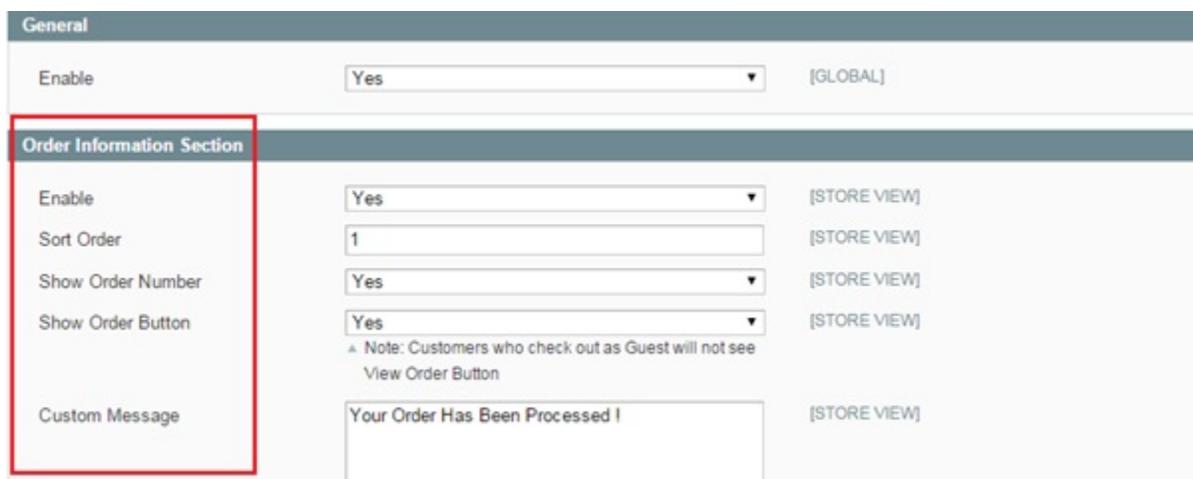
1. General Settings



There are 2 options in box **Enable**: **Yes** and **No**.

- Choose Yes to enable the module and continue customizing on other sections.
- Choose No to disable this module.

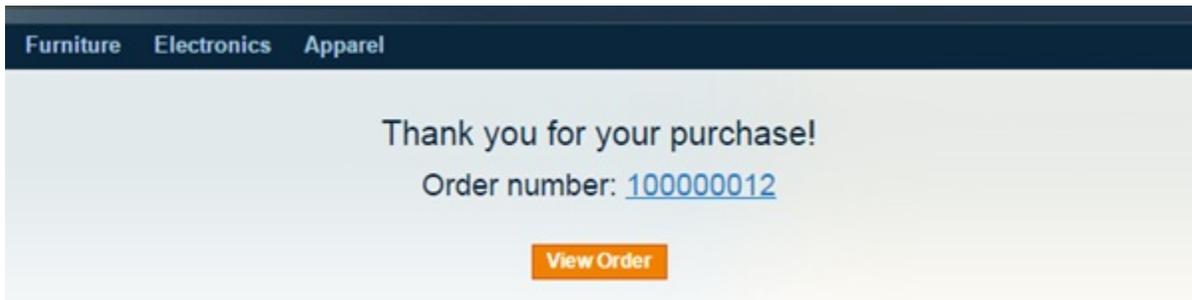
2. Order Information Section



There are 5 boxes appear in this section:

- **Enable:** Choose Yes to enable appearing order’s detail information on the Thank you page. Otherwise, choose No.
- **Sort Order:** Insert appearing ordinal number of order information (E.g: if you insert “1” => order information will appear first on the thank you page)
- **Show Order Number:** Choose Yes to enable showing Order number on the thank you page. Otherwise, choose No.
- **Show Order Button:** Choose Yes to show **View Order** button for customer on thank you page. This button allow customers view all their orders’ detail information when click on through a navigation.

The frontend will appear like this below picture:

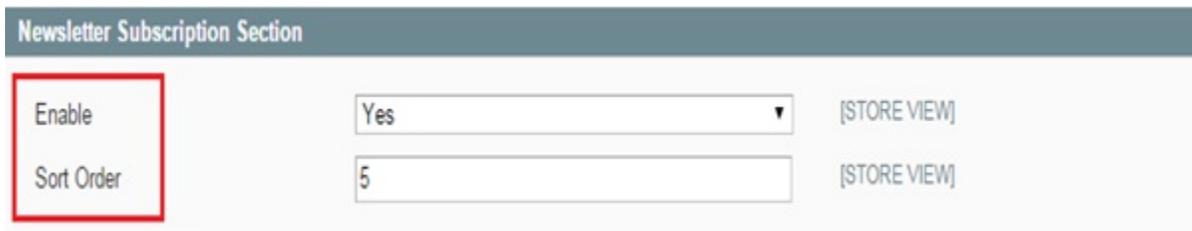


*Note: Customers who check out as guests will not able to see View Order *button*.

- **Custom Message:** Insert your custom message which appears on the thank you page to inform that orders are successful or being processed. (E.g: *Your order has been processed*)

After configuration, click on **Save config** button and reload the frontend to see the change.

3. Newsletter Subscription Section



There are 2 boxes appear for customization in this section:

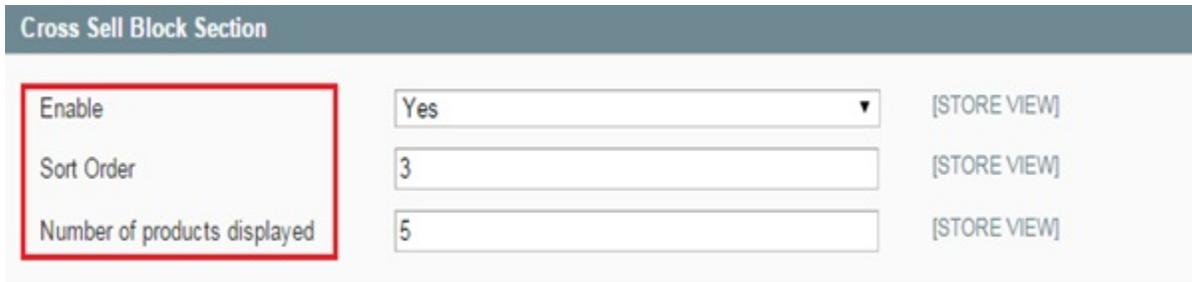
- **Enable:** Choose Yes to enable appearing newsletter subscription on the Thank you page which allows customers subscribe their email for your newsletter. Otherwise, choose No.
- **Sort Order:** Insert appearing ordinal number of newsletter subscription on the thank you page (E.g: if you insert “5” => newsletter subscription will appear last on the thank you page)

The frontend will appear like this below picture:



A newsletter subscription form with a red border. It contains a checkbox labeled "Sign me up for newsletter", an input field with the email address "saaskm@audnak.com", and a "Subscribe" button.

4. Newsletter Subscription Section

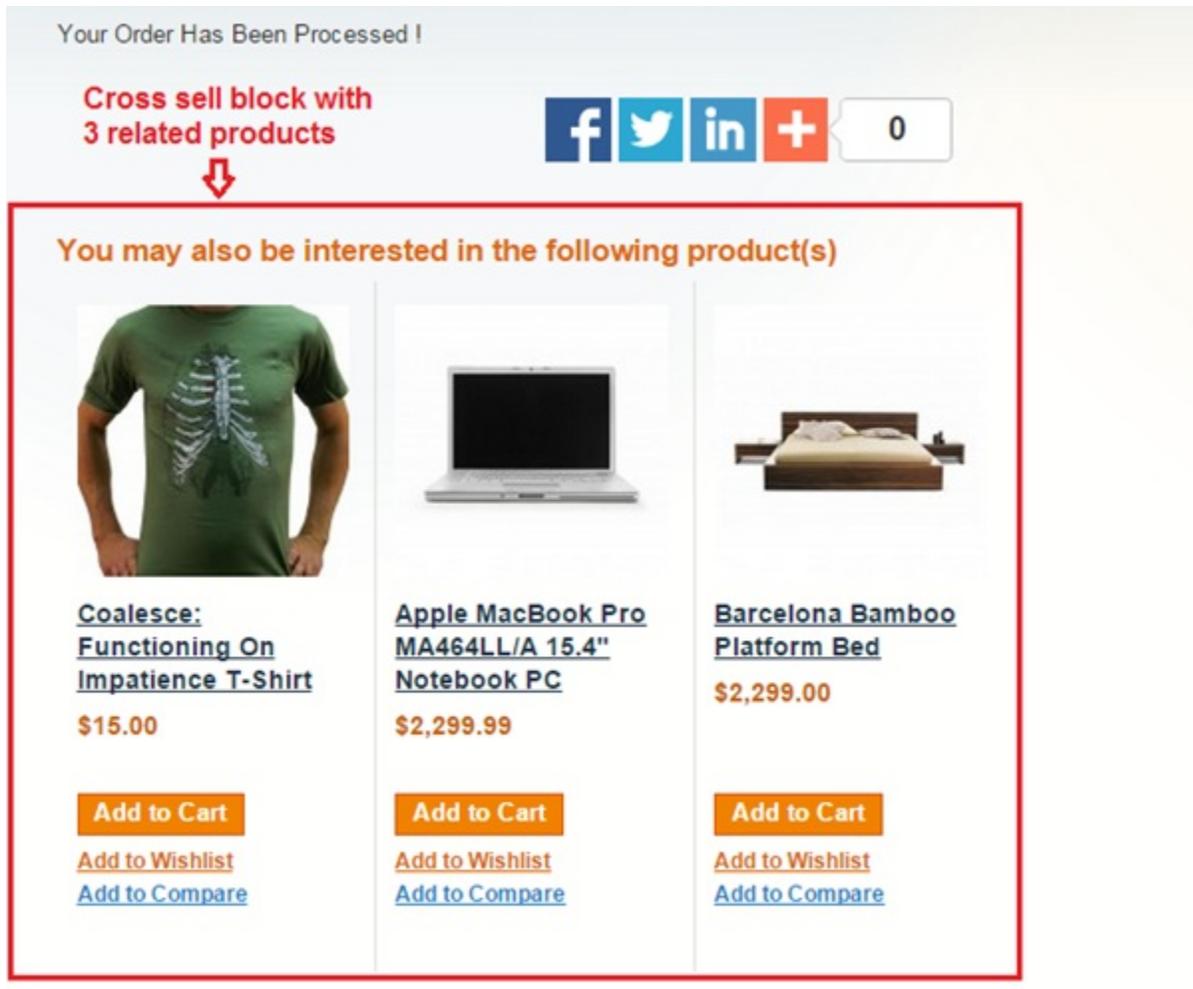


A configuration panel for the "Cross Sell Block Section" with a dark header. It contains three rows of settings, each with a label on the left, a value in the middle, and a "[STORE VIEW]" link on the right. The first row has "Enable" set to "Yes". The second row has "Sort Order" set to "3". The third row has "Number of products displayed" set to "5". A red box highlights the labels "Enable", "Sort Order", and "Number of products displayed".

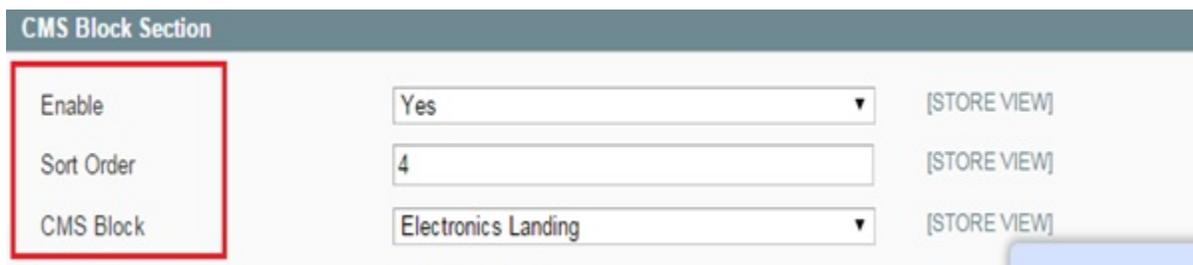
There are 3 boxes appear for customization in this section:

- **Enable:** Choose Yes to enable appearing cross sell block which shows related products on the Thank you page. Otherwise, choose No.
- **Sort Order:** Insert appearing ordinal number of cross-selling products on the thank you page.
- **Number of products displayed:** Insert the number of related products you want to display on the thank you page. (E.g: **3**).

The frontend will appear like this below picture:



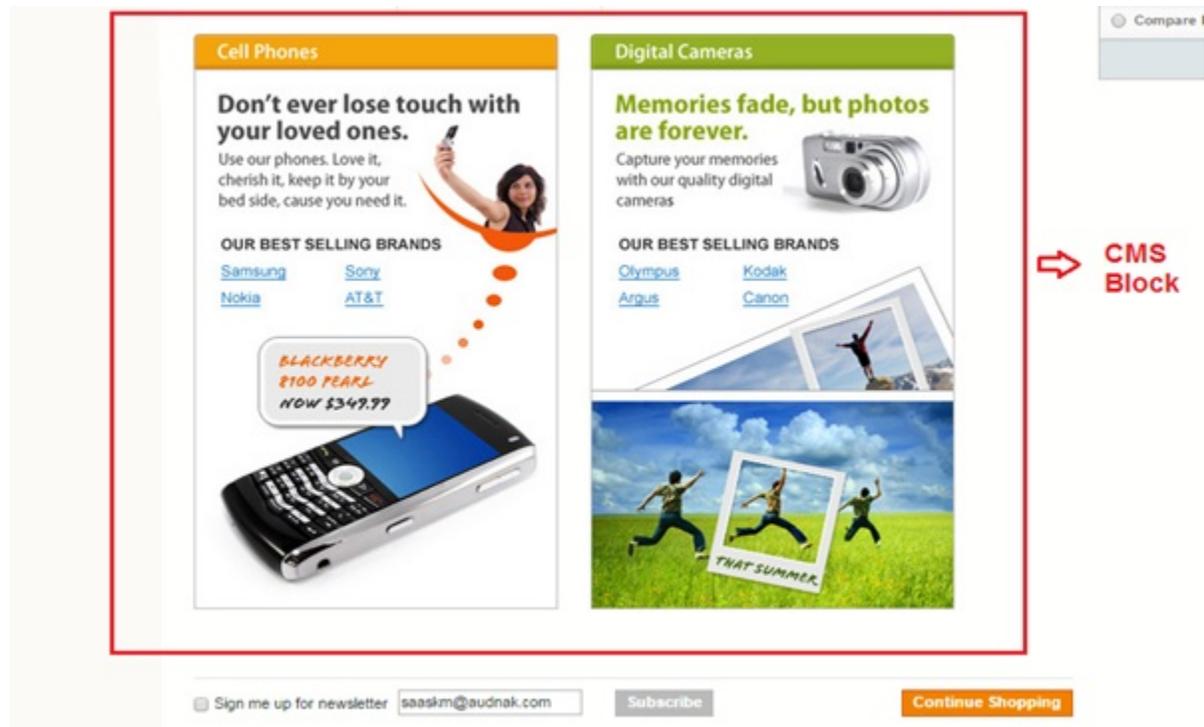
5. CMS Block Section



There are 3 boxes appear for customization in this section:

- **Enable:** Choose Yes to enable appearing CMS block on the Thank you page. Otherwise, choose No.
- **Sort Order:** Insert appearing ordinal number of CMS block on the thank you page.
- **CMS:** Pick from the list the CMS block you wish to appear on the landing page.

E.g: If you choose “Electronics Landing”, the frontend will appear like this picture:



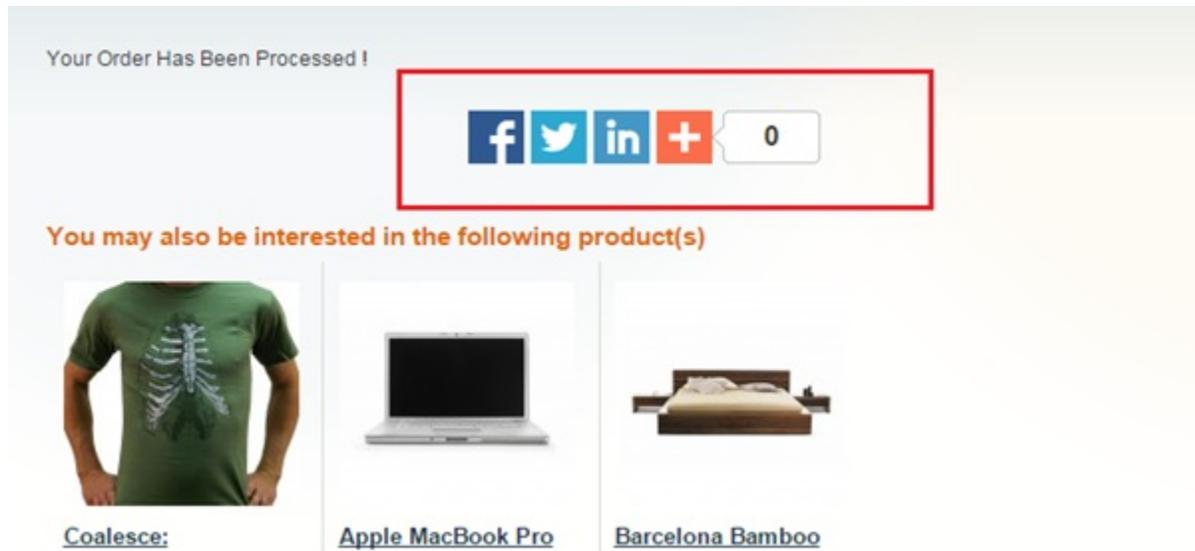
6. Social Network Sharing Section

Social Network Sharing Section		
Enable	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Sort Order	2	[STORE VIEW]
Sharing Buttons Style	Large icons	[STORE VIEW]

There are 3 boxes appear for customization in this section:

- **Enable:** Choose Yes to enable appearing Social Network Sharing on the Thank you page which allows customer to share their orders on their own social pages. Otherwise, choose No.
- **Sort Order:** Insert appearing ordinal number of Social Network Sharing on the thank you page.
- **Sharing Buttons Style:** There are 3 options for admin to choose for the social icon appearances as wish: Large icons, Small icons, Small icons with titles.

E.g: If choosing “Large icons” the frontend will appear like this picture:



14.2 Compatibility

Our Checkout Success Page is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

14.3 Changelog

14.4 FAQs

Configurable Product Matrix View

15.1 User Guide

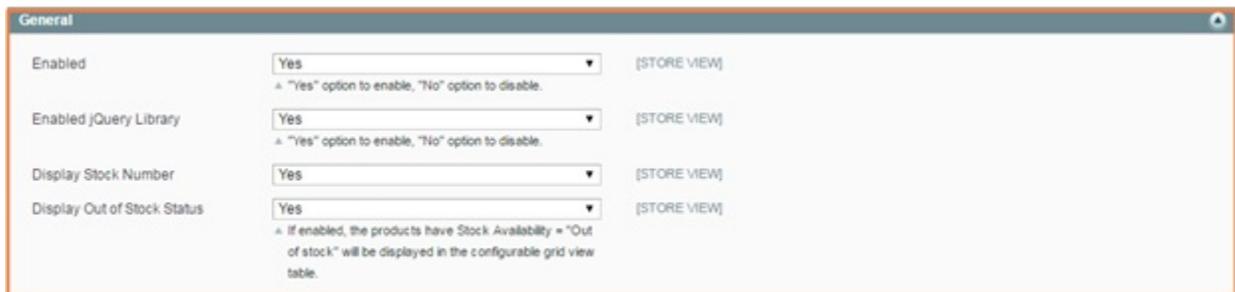
15.1.1 Magento Configurable Product Matrix View Extension Overview

[Magento Configurable Product Matrix View Extension](#) is one of three kinds of display for configurable products which are developed by BSSCommerce . This extension helps administrators to create a matrix form for configurable products with two attributes including unlimited custom options. Attributes are put in a column and a row and options are combined together to make a complete children product. Moreover, stock numbers are displayed in the matrix form to let customers know about product availability and also enable store owners take control in supplying products timely.

With the help of Magento Configurable Product Matrix View, store owners can target wholesale customers effectively because they can purchase your products in a large quantity without repeating this process. Therefore, owners will have more chances to boost up their sales and retain customers for better shopping experience in the site. In addition, this module is especially good for inventory management with stock numbers direct displayed in the matrix form.

15.1.2 How does Magento Configurable Product Matrix View Extension Extension work?

You go to **System -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Configurable Matrix View**



In **Enabled**: Choose **Yes** to enable the module or choose No to disable it in your site

In **Enabled jQuery Library**:

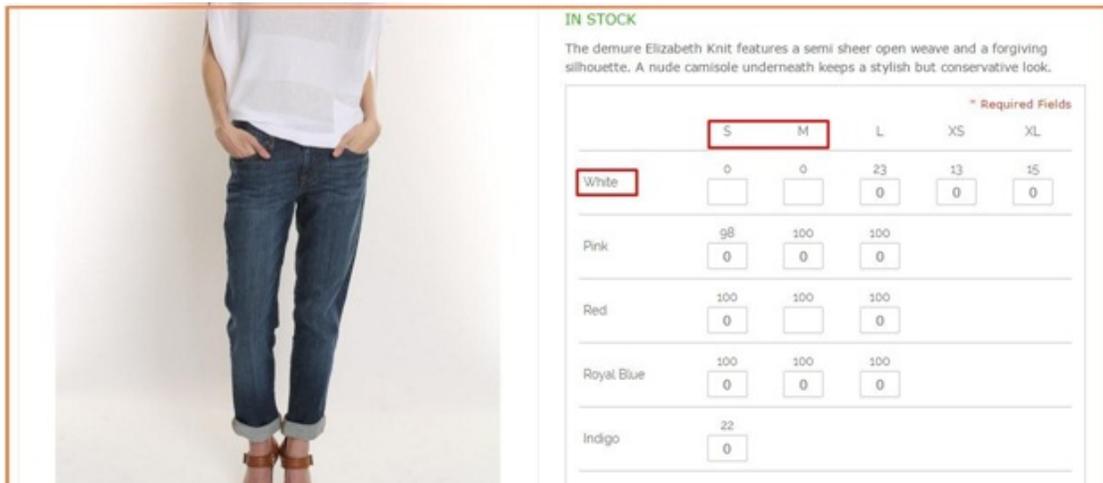
- Choose **Yes** to enable jQuery Library to run things related to jQuery.
- Choose **No** if your site already has jQuery Library already because it will cause some conflicts

In **Display Stock Number**:

- Choose **Yes** to show stock number in the matrix form
- Choose **No** to hide them

In **Display Out of Stock Status**:

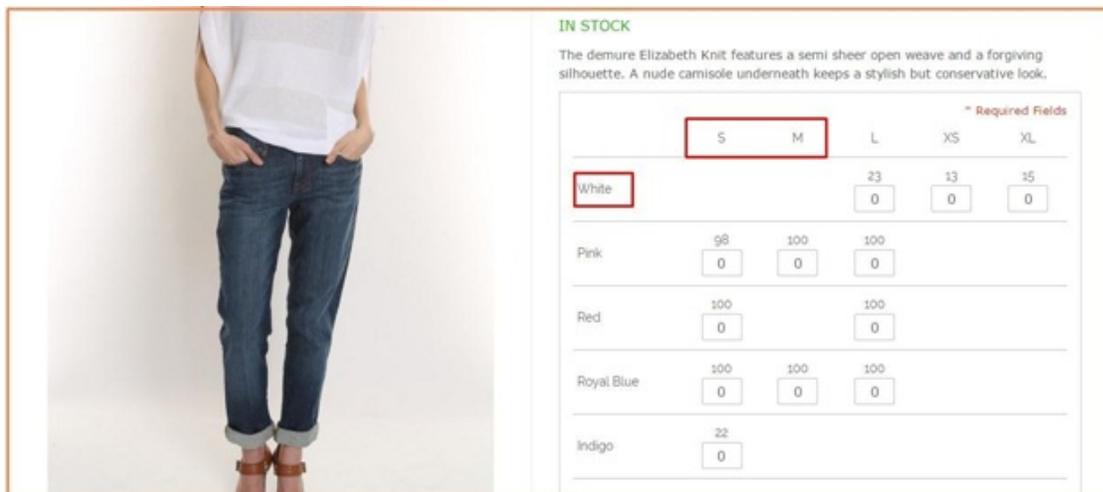
- If you choose **Yes**, out of stock products are still shown in the matrix form and stock numbers are equal to 0



The screenshot shows a product page for 'The demure Elizabeth Knit'. On the left is a model wearing a white t-shirt and blue jeans. On the right is a product matrix table. The table has columns for sizes S, M, L, XS, and XL, and rows for colors White, Pink, Red, Royal Blue, and Indigo. Stock numbers are displayed in the cells. The 'White' row has stock numbers 0, 0, 23, 13, and 15 for sizes S, M, L, XS, and XL respectively. The 'Pink' row has 98, 100, and 100 for S, M, and L. The 'Red' row has 100, 100, and 100 for S, M, and L. The 'Royal Blue' row has 100, 100, and 100 for S, M, and L. The 'Indigo' row has 22 for size S. The 'White' row has '0' in the S and M columns, and '0' in the XS and XL columns. The 'Pink' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Red' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Royal Blue' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Indigo' row has '0' in the S column. The 'White' row has '0' in the S and M columns, and '0' in the XS and XL columns. The 'Pink' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Red' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Royal Blue' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Indigo' row has '0' in the S column. The 'White' row has '0' in the S and M columns, and '0' in the XS and XL columns. The 'Pink' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Red' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Royal Blue' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Indigo' row has '0' in the S column.

	S	M	L	XS	XL
White	0	0	23	13	15
Pink	98	100	100		
Red	100	100	100		
Royal Blue	100	100	100		
Indigo	22				

- If you choose **No**, customer cannot choose these products due to no quantity box to select and also stock number are not displayed.



The screenshot shows the same product page as above, but with stock numbers hidden. The 'White' row has '0' in the S and M columns, and '0' in the XS and XL columns. The 'Pink' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Red' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Royal Blue' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Indigo' row has '0' in the S column. The 'White' row has '0' in the S and M columns, and '0' in the XS and XL columns. The 'Pink' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Red' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Royal Blue' row has '0' in the S, M, and L columns. The 'Indigo' row has '0' in the S column.

	S	M	L	XS	XL
White	0	0	23	13	15
Pink	98	100	100		
Red	100	100	100		
Royal Blue	100	100	100		
Indigo	22				

15.2 Compatibility

Our Configurable Product Matrix View is compatible with:

- Community: 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

15.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0:

15.4 FAQs

Configurable Product Table Ordering

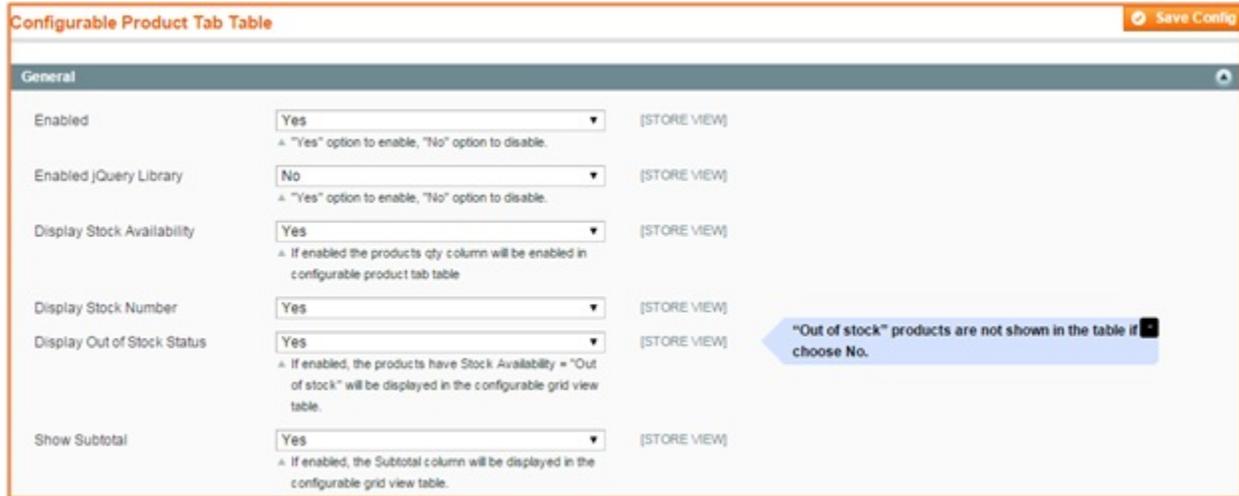
16.1 User Guide

16.1.1 Magento Configurable Product Table Ordering Extension Overview

[Magento Configurable Product Table Ordering](#) by BSSCommerce allows displaying configurable products in a very simple table to help customers easily choose multiple products at once.

Magento Configurable Product Table Ordering displays custom options of the first attribute of configurable products in a tab and custom options of the second one in a table. This brings customers the easier selection when they just need to choose a custom option of an attribute first and then other corresponding custom options of the second attribute will come out in a table with stock availability, stock number, out of stock status, tier prices, quantity and subtotal. In addition, this extension also allows showing advanced tier prices in a separated table for children products with the same tier prices and also functions for advanced tier price calculation for children products. In case, all children products have different tier prices or at least a children product have different tier price from others, this extension will show tier prices in the table.

16.1.2 How does Magento Configurable Product Table Ordering Extension work?



Configurable Product Tab Table Save Config

General

Enabled	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Enabled jQuery Library	No	[STORE VIEW]
Display Stock Availability	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Display Stock Number	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Display Out of Stock Status	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Show Subtotal	Yes	[STORE VIEW]

Out of stock products are not shown in the table if you choose No.

In **Enabled**: Choose **Yes** to enable this module or choose **No** to disable it

In **Enabled jQuery Library**: Choose **Yes/No** to enable or disable it

In **Display Stock Availability**:

Choose **Yes** to show the column of Availability in the table

Choose **No** to exclude this column from the table

In **Stock Number**: If you choose to enable Stock Availability, you just choose **Yes** to show Stock number in the table or choose **No** to hide Stock number. In case you choose to disable Stock Availability, Stock number is also not active.

In **Display Out of Stock Status**:

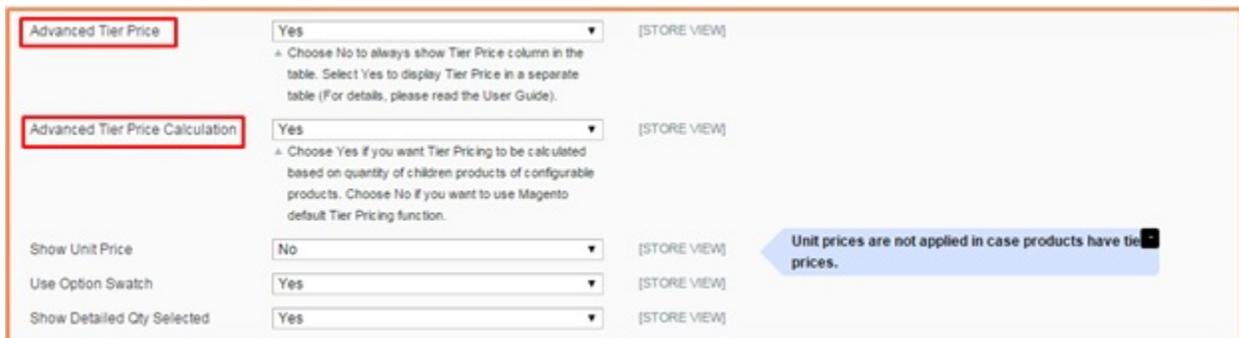
Choose **Yes** to display Out of Stock Status in the table

Choose **No** to exclude out of stock products from the table

In **Show Subtotal**:

Choose **Yes** to display the column of Subtotal in the table

Choose **No** to exclude it



Advanced Tier Price	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Advanced Tier Price Calculation	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Show Unit Price	No	[STORE VIEW]
Use Option Switch	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Show Detailed Qty Selected	Yes	[STORE VIEW]

Unit prices are not applied in case products have tier prices.

In **Advanced Tier Price**:

Choose **Yes** to display Tier Prices in a separated table (Only apply to children products with the same tier prices). Tier prices are shown as below:

* Required Fields

Tier Pricing		
QTY	UNIT PRICE	SAVE
1 - 9	\$210.00	0%
10 - more	\$200.00	5%

Color:

SIZE	AVAILABILITY	SUBTOTAL	QTY
S	10	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
M	21	\$630.00	<input type="text" value="3"/>
L	23	\$1,050.00	<input type="text" value="5"/>
XS	13	\$210.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>
XL	15	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>

White 9

Total Qty: 9
 Total: \$ 1,890.00

↻

Choose **No** to display Tier Prices in the table (Please note that Tier prices are shown in the table when children products have different tier prices or at least a children product has different tier prices from other ones). In that case, Tier prices are displayed as below:

* Required Fields

Color:

SIZE	AVAILABILITY	1 - 9	10 - MORE	SUBTOTAL	QTY
S	10	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
M	21	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
L	23	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
XS	13	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
XL	15	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Total Qty: 0
Total: \$ 0.00



[ADD TO CART](#)

[Add to Wishlist](#) |
 [Add to Compare](#) |
 



In Advanced Tier Price Calculation:

If you choose **Yes**, Tier price is based on tier prices of total quantity of chosen children products to calculate total amount

For example, tier price of buying 1-9 Pink-M shirts and 1-9 Pink-L shirts is similarly \$210. Tier price of buying 10-more Pink-M shirts and 10-more Pink-L shirts is \$200. Therefore, when you buy 5 Pink-M shirts and 5 Pink-L shirts, tier price is now determined as \$200/shirt (Tier price of buying 10-more Pink-M shirts and 10-more Pink ?L shirt). Total amount is now \$2,000.

* Required Fields

Color:

SIZE	AVAILABILITY	1 - 9	10 - MORE	SUBTOTAL	QTY
M	100	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$1,000.00	5
L	100	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$1,000.00	5

Pink 10

Total Qty: 10

Total: \$ 2,000.00

Calculate total amount based on Tier price of total quantity equal to 10

ADD TO CART

[Add to Wishlist](#) | [Add to Compare](#)

If you choose **No**, Magento default Tier Pricing function will be used to calculate. It means that total amount is calculated by tier prices of each children product multiply to total quantity of each chosen children product.

For the above example, when using Magento default tier price calculation, total amount is determined as \$2,100,000 because it is calculated based on each tier price of each children product (Tier price is equal to \$210 shirt)

* Required Fields

Color:

SIZE	AVAILABILITY	1 - 9	10 - MORE	SUBTOTAL	QTY
M	100	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$1,050.00	5
L	100	\$210.00	\$200.00	\$1,050.00	5

Pink 10

Total Qty: 10

Total: \$ 2,100.00

Calculate total amount based on tier price of each children product

[ADD TO CART](#)

[Add to Wishlist](#) |
 [Add to Compare](#) |
 



In **Show Unit Price**: Choose **Yes** to show unit price in the table (Please note that Unit prices are shown in the table only when products have fixed prices, not tier prices)

In **Use Option Swatch**: Choose **Yes** to enable Color Swatch function or choose **No** to disable it

In **Show Detailed Qty Selected**:

Choose **Yes** to display detailed quantity of selected products corresponding to each custom option in the attribute tab as below:

Color:

SIZE	AVAILABILITY	SUBTOTAL	QTY
S	100	\$400.00	2
M	100	\$0.00	0
L	100	\$0.00	0

White	3
Pink	4
Red	3
Royal Blue	2

Total Qty: 12
Total: \$ 2,400.00

ADD TO CART

Choose **No** to disable this function

16.2 Compatibility

Our Configurable Product Table Ordering is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

16.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.5:

- Fix bugs with special price

16.4 Common Problems

1. How to resolve conflict with Ajax Shopping Cart extension by Amasty?

<https://amasty.com/ajax-shopping-cart.html>

Edit file:

app/code/local/Amasty/Cart/controllers/AjaxController.php

Add function: `_initProduct()`;

Edit function `indexAction()` **into:**

```
public function indexAction()
{
    $idProduct = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParam('product_id');
    $idProduct = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParam('product')?
↳Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParam('product'): $idProduct;
    $isProductView = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParam('IsProductView');
    $params = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParams();
    $related = $this->getRequest()->getParam('related_product');
    unset($params['product_id']);
    unset($params['IsProductView']);

    if($this->getRequest()->getParam('configurable_grid_table') == 'Yes') {
        $params = $this->getRequest()->getParams();
        $config_super_attributes = $params['super_attribute_quickshop'];
        $cart = Mage::getSingleton('checkout/cart');
        $config_table_qty = $params['config_table_qty'];
        $options = isset($params['options']) ? $params['options'] : null;

        $qty_config = array();

        foreach($config_table_qty as $sup_qty => $_super_qty) {
            $qty_config[$sup_qty] = $_super_qty;
            $required += $_super_qty;
        }

        if($required == 0) {
            $this->getSession()->addError($this->__('Cannot add the item to
↳shopping cart. '));
            $this->goBack();
            return;
        }

        $config_table_qty = $qty_config;

        foreach($config_super_attributes as $sId => $config_attribute) {
            if(!isset($config_table_qty[$sId]) || $config_table_qty[$sId]=='')
↳|| !is_numeric($config_table_qty[$sId])){
                if($config_table_qty[$sId] != '0'){
                    $config_table_qty[$sId] = 1;
                }
            }

            if(isset($config_table_qty[$sId]) && $config_table_qty[$sId]!='' &&
↳ $config_table_qty[$sId] > 0) {
                $product= $this->_initProduct();
                $related= $this->getRequest()->getParam('related_product');

                if (!$product) {
                    $this->goBack();
                    return;
                }

                if(isset($config_table_qty[$sId])) {
                    $params = array();
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

$params['qty'] = $config_table_qty[$sId];
$params['super_attribute'] = $config_attribute;

if($options != null) $params['options'] = $options;

try {
    if($params['qty'] > 0 && $params['qty']!= '') {
        $cart->addProduct($product, $params);
        if (!empty($related)) {
            $cart->addProductsByIds(explode(',', $related));
        }
        $cart->save();
        Mage::getSingleton('checkout/session')->
↪setCartWasUpdated(true);
        if (!$cart->getQuote()->getHasError()){
            $responseText = $this->addToCartResponse($product,
↪$cart, $IsProductView, $params,0);
        }
        } else {
            $responseText = $this->showOptionsResponse($product,
↪$IsProductView);
        }
    } catch (Exception $e) {
        $responseText = $this->addToCartResponse($product, $cart,
↪$IsProductView, $params, $e->getMessage());
        Mage::logException($e);
    }
}
}
}
} else {
    if($related) unset($params['related_product']);
    $product = Mage::getModel('catalog/product')
        ->setStoreId(Mage::app()->getStore()->getId())
        ->load($idProduct);
    $responseText = '';
    if ($product->getId())
    {
        if(!array_key_exists('qty', $params)) {
            $params['qty'] = $product->getStockItem()->getMinSaleQty();
        }
        try{
            if(($product->getTypeId() == 'simple' && !($product->
↪getRequiredOptions() || (Mage::getStoreConfig('amcart/general/display_
↪options')
                                && $product->
↪getHasOptions()))
                || count($params) > 2
                || ($product->getTypeId() == 'virtual' && !($product->
↪getRequiredOptions() || (Mage::getStoreConfig('amcart/general/display_
↪options')
                                && $product->
↪getHasOptions()))))
            {
                $cart = Mage::getSingleton('checkout/cart');
                $cart->addProduct($product, $params);
                if (!empty($related)) {

```

(continues on next page)

Does this extension automatically calculate total amount when I change quantity for each children product?

Yes, total amount are also calculated automatically anytime you adjust your desired quantity

Can your module support displaying the tab table in the category page?

No, it cannot. Our module just shows the tab table on the product page

16.5.2 Guide

How to disable this extension from my site?

If you do not want to continue using this module, you go through **System -> Configuration -> Configurable Product Table Ordering**

In Enable, you set No to disable this extension

Are children products with the same tier prices always displayed in a separate table?

No, this depends on your setting in the backend.

In **Advanced Tier Prices**: if you set Yes, these products are just shows in a separate table

Otherwise, they are still in the original table when you set No

I just want to know total product quantity I have chosen, not quantities of options in the attribute tab, so how can I do it?

It's very simple, you find **Show Detailed Qty Selected** in the configuration of this module from backend, set No for it to only display total product quantity.

17.1 User Guide

17.1.1 Magento Customer Group without Tax Overview

[Magento Customer Group without Tax extension](#) has ability to reject taxes on category page and product page. Also, customers won't see tax rate in their cart and check out with pay no tax. This unique extension also allows admin apply for specific customers and individual customer groups while tax rates are still shown to remained customers. Hence, it's really useful for your website's marketing and sale policy.

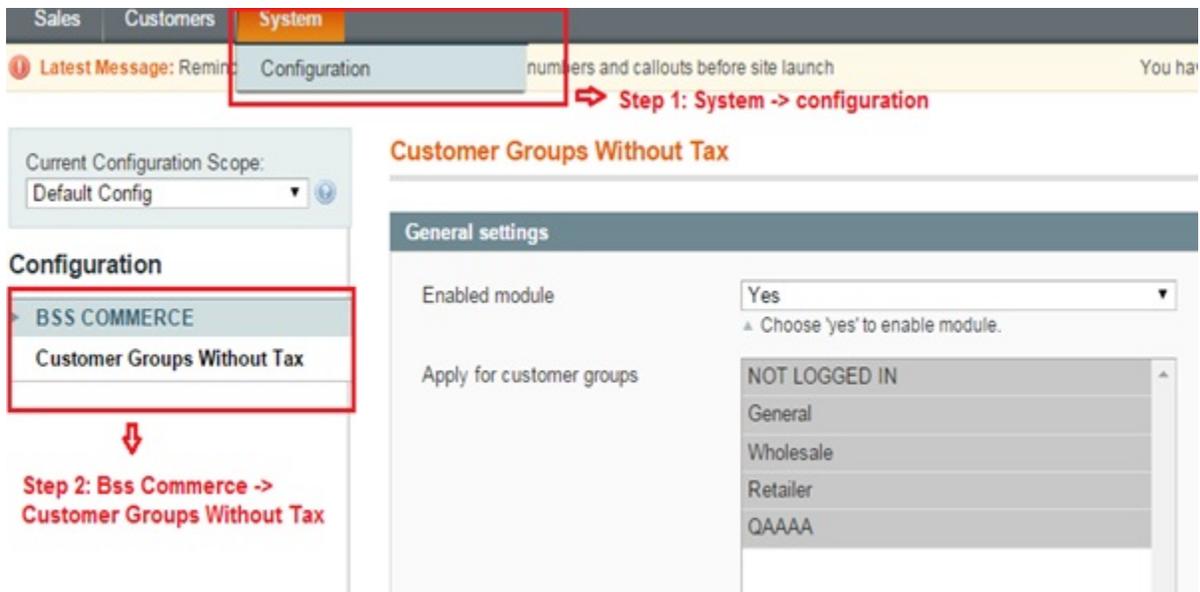
17.1.2 How Magento Customer Group without Tax works

1. Instruction Manual

As an admin, you can set up your own store page by the most effective way that supports your trading objective. To make the configuration:

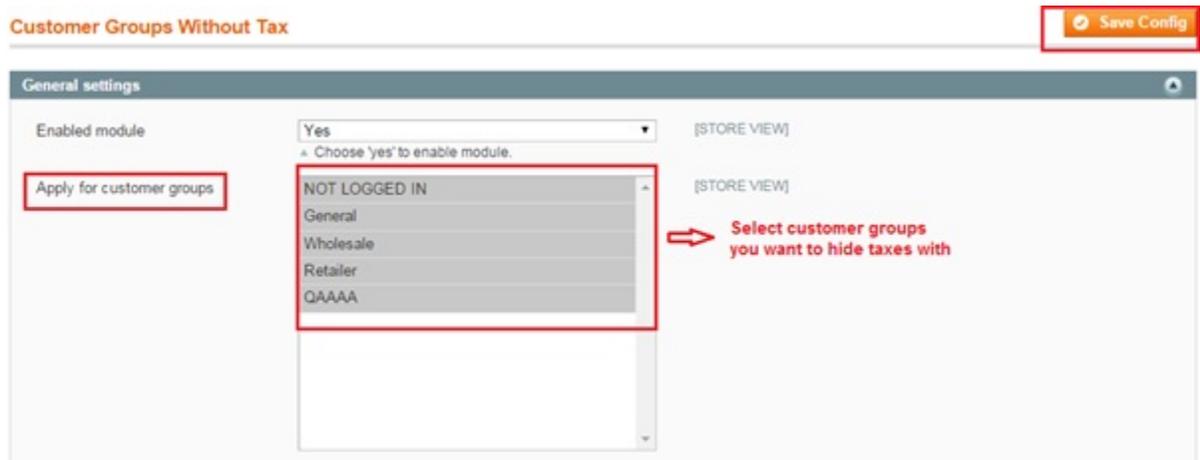
- Step 1: Go to **System => Configuration**.
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS Commerce => select Customer Group Without Tax**

After this 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the following picture:



In box **Enable module**, choose Yes to enable the module. After being enabled, a box named **Apply for customer groups** will appear for you to continue configuring the extension.

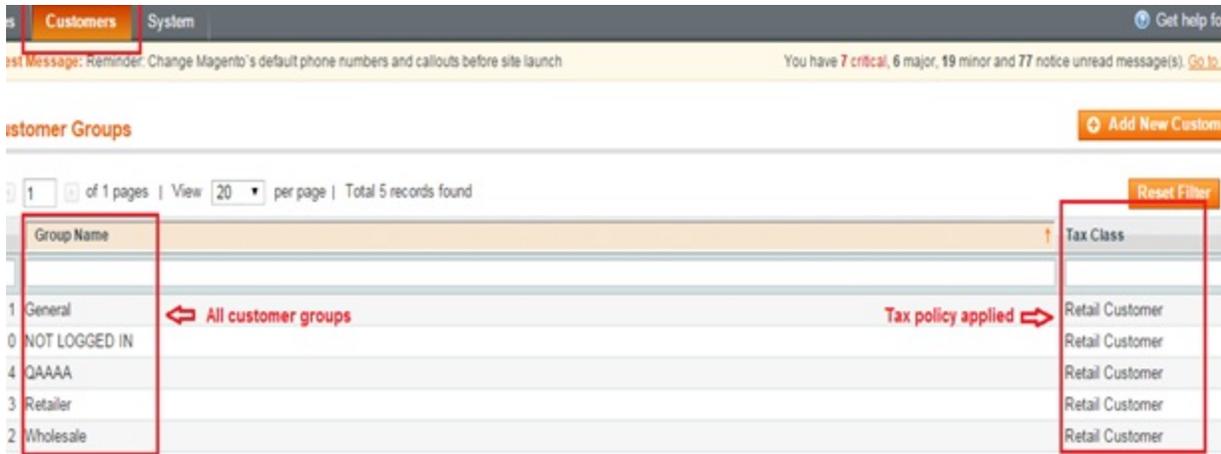
In the box **Apply for customer groups**, select one, some or all customer groups' names which you want to reject taxes on website view.



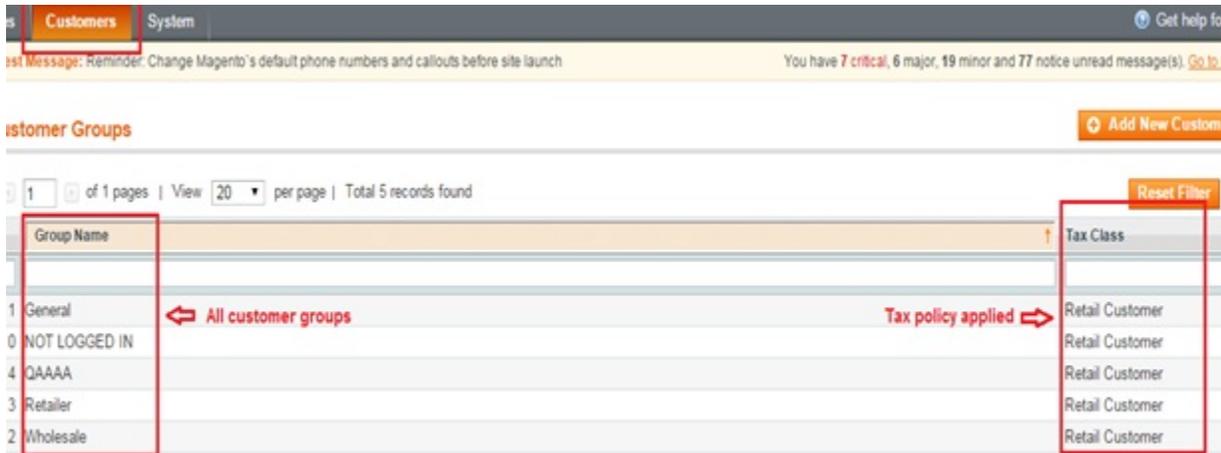
After all above configuration is done, you save the configuration by clicking on **Save config** button to the right of the backend. To see the change, go to frontend and reload the page.

2. Preview tax policy on customer groups

To preview which customer group is applied tax policy, go to **Admin Panel -> Customers -> Customer Groups**. All groups of customer will be shown with applied tax policy like this following picture:



The result in frontend when applying Magento Customer Group without Tax will be shown like this:



17.2 Compatibility

Our Customer Group Without Tax is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

17.3 Changelog

17.4 FAQs

18.1 User Guide

18.1.1 Defer Javascript Extension Overview

Defer Parsing of JavaScript is listed as one of the most impactful factors of speed improvement for websites that you can implement among many website optimization tips.

When customers visit your website, they do not expect to wait so long for loading pages because this makes them impatient and leave your website after waiting in vain. Therefore, Defer JavaScript Extension is developed to effectively reduce loading time by automatically putting JavaScript files to the end of page after loading all HTML and CSS. As a result, you will keep customers stay on your site as well as engage more customers and your sales is of course on the way to boost up!

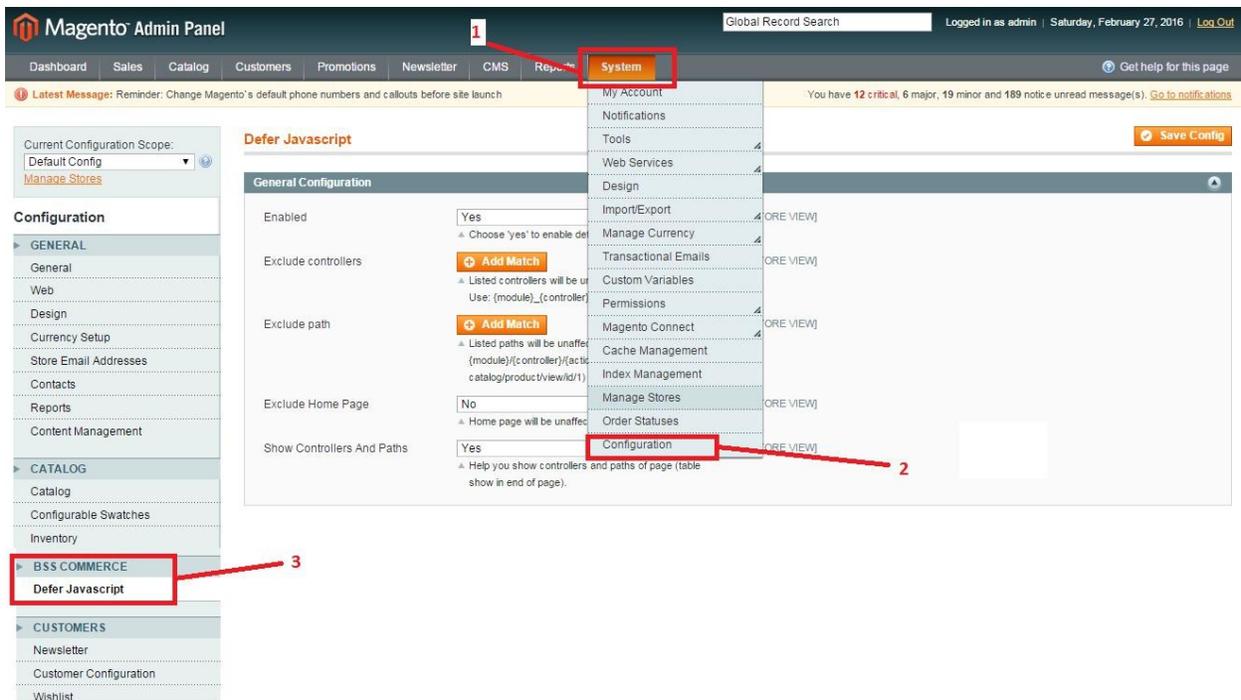
18.1.2 How does Defer JavaScript Extension work?

To configure the module, follow these below instructions:

Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel** -> **System** -> **Configuration**

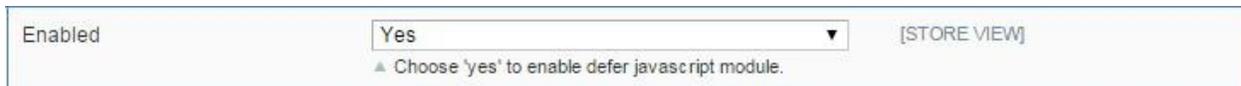
Step 2: On the left side of the page, find **BSS COMMERCE** -> select **Defer JavaScript**

After these two steps, you can see your admin screen as this image:



1. Enable Defer JavaScript

You can easily enable or disable BSS Defer JavaScript module by selecting “Yes” or “No” in the Enable box.



2. Manage Controllers, Path, and Homepage

There may be some pages you do not want them to be affected by Defer JavaScript. Therefore, to exclude impact of BSS Defer JavaScript from some pages, you can fulfill these pages’ information into **Excluded** boxes:

- Exclude controllers and paths: By clicking **Add Match** button and then write down your wished paths or controllers you can disable defer JavaScript on these paths or controllers page.
- Exclude Homepage: you can disable this module on Homepage through only a click. Select “Yes” in the **Exclude Home Page** box, you can disable the module on your home page.



Please remember that, when you click **Add Match** button, you have to fill in the controllers/ paths which you want not to be affected by our module. You should not leave it blank as below picture.

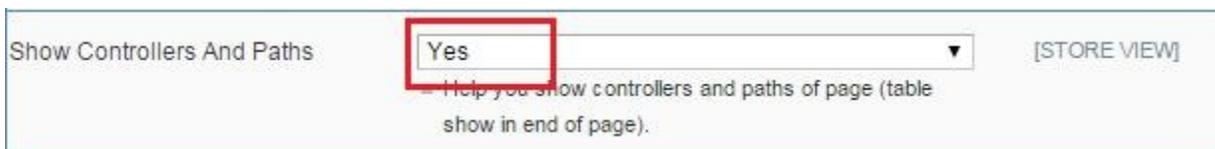


If you do not fill it up, the system will automatically set all pages in your website affected by our module.

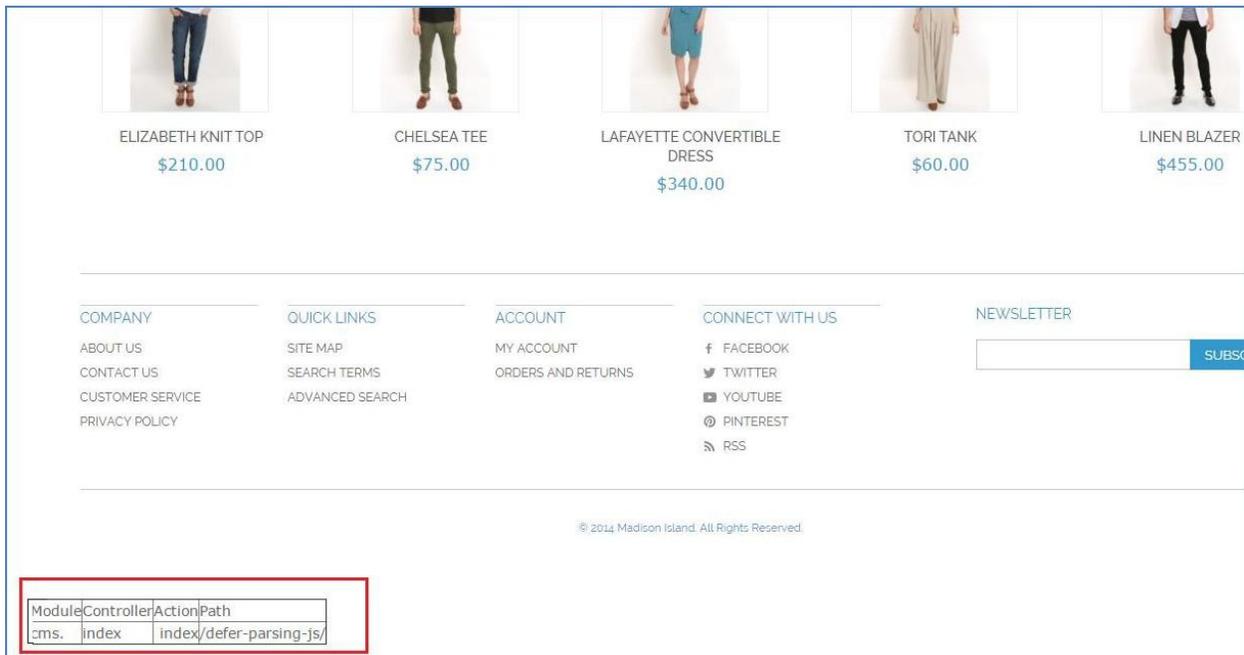
You can click on **Delete** button in the right side of the box to close the created blank box.

If you want to disable Defer JavaScript function in some pages, however, you do not know the controllers/ paths to fulfill the **Exclude Controllers** box or **Exclude Paths** box;

Show Controller and Paths will help you solve the problem. When you select **“Yes”** like this:



You can see the information you need in the table shown in the end of frontend page. For example:



After finishing configuration process, you can click on **“Save Config”** button to save all of your setting with Defer JavaScript.

18.2 Compatibility

Our Defer JavaScript is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x

- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

18.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.4:

- Fix bugs for configuring with Full Page Cache module
- Document update: How to fix BSS Defer Javascript for other Full Page Cache modules

Version 1.0.5:

- Fix bugs for configuring with Full Page Cache module

Version 1.0.6:

- Fix bugs when working with Full Page Cache module

Version 1.0.8:

- Option to not defer selected script

Version 1.0.9:

–

Version 1.1.1:

18.4 Common Problems

18.4.1 1. I've uploaded the files to the site. Now when I tried to access to the module get this error message:

Fatal error: Class 'Bss_DeferJS_Block_Adminhtml_Form_Field_Regex' not found in /home/storedep/public_html/includes/src/__default.php on line 28651**

When installation [Defer Javascript extension](#), customers often run into this kind of error as they forget to disable compilation as it's required that before you make any changes to your Magento installation you should always **disable compilation**. To fix this problem, just simply run the compilation process, and then enable it.

To disable Compilation in Magento, please navigate to Admin panel Go to System > Tools > Compilation page and click on **Disable** button

18.4.2 2. Configure Defer Javascript with Full Page Cache

To configure module Defer Javascript with module Full Page Cache, please follow all following instructions (2 steps).

step1: In the folder named "Model" of module Full Page Cache, find all functions named "setBody" or "setHtml" (In almost cases, you can find these functions in file "Observer.php")

*Note: "setHtml" function just appears in some cases

-For example in **Lesti_Full Page Cache** module :

```

$response = Mage::app()->getResponse();
    $response->setBody($body);

    ...
    $observer->getEvent()->getResponse()->setBody($body);

    ...

    $observer->getTransport()->setHtml($placeholder);

```

step2: Still in this example, add one of the following code defer above function “setBody” or “setHtml”

*Note: there are 3 types of code defer for each type of function:

For example:

```

$response = Mage::app()->getResponse();

//code defer
if(Mage::helper('bss_deferjs')->isEnabled()) {
    $body = Mage::helper('bss_deferjs')->deferJs($body);
}
//end

$response->setBody($body);

....

//code defer
if(Mage::helper('bss_deferjs')->isEnabled()) {
    $body = Mage::helper('bss_deferjs')->deferJs($body);
}
//end
$observer->getEvent()->getResponse()->setBody($body);

...

//code defer
if(Mage::helper('bss_deferjs')->isEnabled()) {
    $body = Mage::helper('bss_deferjs')->deferJs($body);
}
//end
$observer->getTransport()->setHtml($placeholder);

```

After all of these steps, you have done configuring module Defer Javascript to work well with module Full Page Cache.

18.4.3 3. Defer JavaScript cannot interfere JavaScript fills from frames

For Magento sites including a lot of video embedded for the third parties such as Youtube, Vimeo and so on, site speed is also considerably influenced (slower) and causes customers to wait so long for loading these video. When installing Defer JavaScript extension, there is an issue that the module cannot interfere JavaScript files from frames, so it does not have any effect on deferring these JavaScript files in order to make sites perform faster.

To solve this problem, we need to defer video loading to save many file requests and resource downloads, which can improve site performance effectively. It means that we will keep the video from loading all the

associated files by not identifying the iframe src until after the page loads.

Step 1: Get the embed code of the video you want to defer

Take an example:

```
<iframe width="853" height="480" src="https://www.youtube.com/embed/7ngPu_kUdN4?rel=0"
frameborder="0" allowfullscreen></iframe>
```

Step 2: Alter the embed code by making 2 following changes

- Make the “src” empty by removing the url from it as below: src=""
- Put the url that is cut from “src” and add it to “data-src”.

```
data-src="//www.youtube.com/embed/7ngPu_kUdN4?rel=0"
```

Therefore, the code becomes:

```
<iframe width="853" height="480" src="" data-src="//www.youtube.com/embed/7ngPu_kUdN4?rel=0"frameborder="0"
allowfullscreen></iframe>
```

Step 3: Add the script to bottom of page

```
<script>
function init() {
var vidDefer = document.getElementsByTagName('iframe');
for (var i=0; i<vidDefer.length; i++) {
if (vidDefer[i].getAttribute('data-src')) {
vidDefer[i].setAttribute('src',vidDefer[i].getAttribute('data-src'));
} } }
window.onload = init;
</script>
```

18.4.4 4. The Defer score does not increase in case Magento sites uses Full Page Cache also

We need to fix the Full Page Cache module to overcome this problem (Let’s look at the instruction enclosed with installation guide) For more details, it can be explained as below:

The purpose of the Full Page Cache extension is saving HTML of Magento sites into Caches and these HTML are set up again by using events when loading sites. Therefore, to fix this module, we firstly use keywords such as setBody and setHTML to search for code snippets that have HTML setup again. Next, we add a code snippet of Defer JavaScript (called from helper) into those HTML codes (have HTML setup again) and then setBody and setHTML.

18.4.5 5. The Defer score does not increase although JavaScript files stay on </body>

Let’s set No for **Put Javascript In HTML Body Tag** section in the configuration of the module

Defer Javascript

General Configuration		
Enabled	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Choose 'yes' to enable defer javascript module.	
Exclude controllers	<input type="button" value="Add Match"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Listed controllers will be unaffected by defer javascript. Use: {module}_{controller}_{action}	
Exclude path	<input type="button" value="Add Match"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Listed paths will be unaffected by defer javascript. Use: {module}/{controller}/{action}/... (Example: catalog/product/view/id/1)	
Exclude Home Page	<input type="text" value="No"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Home page will be unaffected by defer javascript	
Show Controllers And Paths	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Help you show controllers and paths of page (table show in end of page).	
Put Javascript In HTML Body Tag	<input type="text" value="No"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ Choose 'yes' to put all defer javascript in end of HTML body tag.	
Help exclude javascript	- Add attribute nodefer after <script for prevent defer. - Example: From: <code><script type="text/javascript">...</script></code> To: <code><script nodefer type="text/javascript">...</script></code>	

The purpose of this option is to meet W3C checking on this site: <https://validator.w3.org/>

18.4.6 6. The Defer score does not increase although JavaScript files stay on the bottom of page

If the Magento site uses a Minify HTML module, we need to disable it and then check on GTMetrix

In case this solution does not make the defer score go up, we need to check again to find out which JavaScript is causing this error.

18.4.7 7. Some images from the third parties that are inserted by using JavaScript are pulled down after deferring

There are two ways to solve this problem:

- Use nodefer tags to make these images not be pulled down
- Rewrite their JavaScript in case you want to get higher defer scores

18.5 FAQs

19.1 User Guide

19.1.1 Delete Order Overview

Imagine that a ton of unnecessary orders, invoices, shipments and credit memos are account for large scale of Database memory, which results in diminishing Server performance and bothers shop owners. Magento, however, allows you to **cancel** the orders, it does **not support you to delete** them. Moreover, there is almost no plug-in solve this problem.

Fortunately, [Delete Order extension](#) addresses this vital weakness of Magento and helps you to manage the Data better with superior benefits.

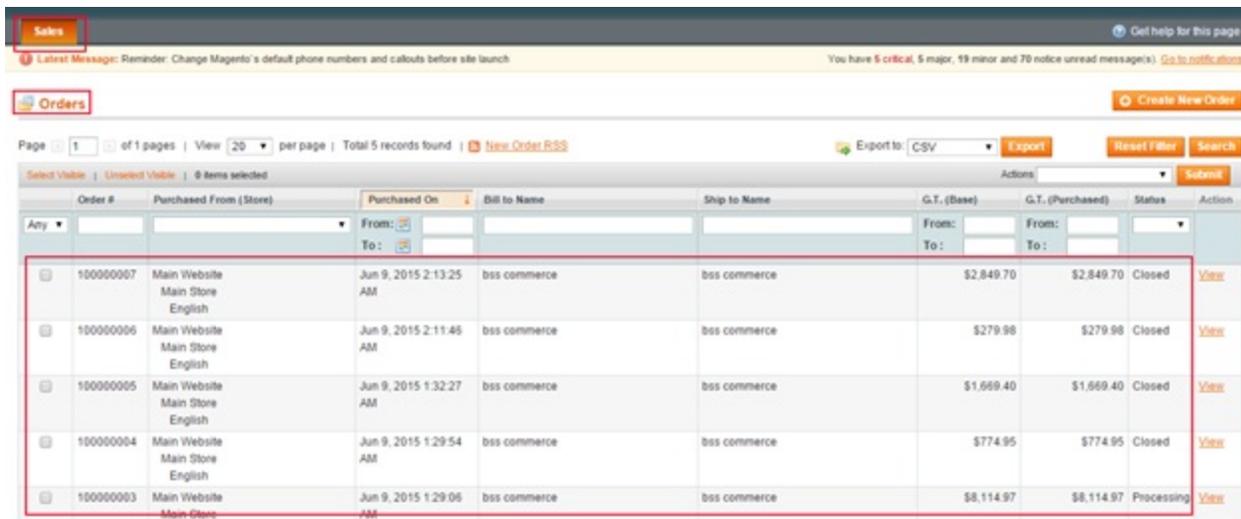
19.1.2 How does Delete Order work?

1. Delete orders

In order to delete orders, following these below instructions:



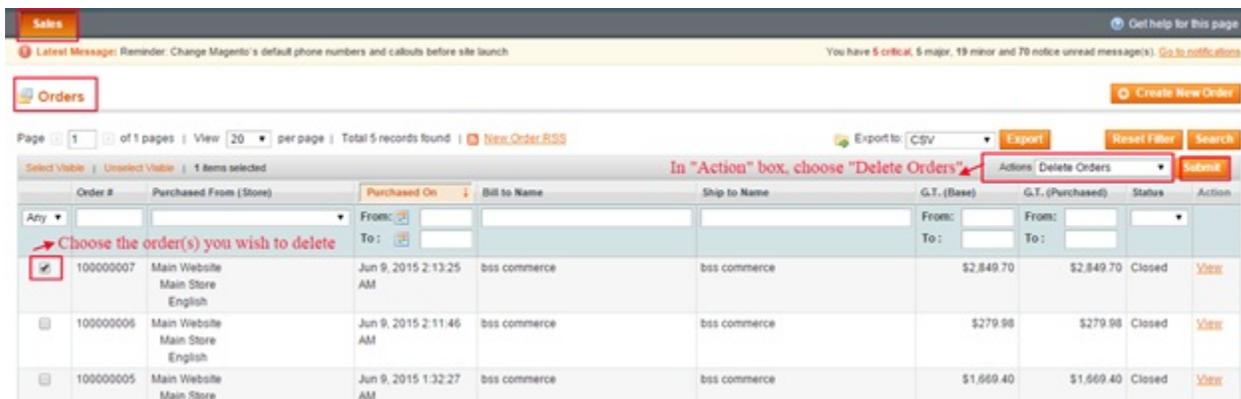
In **Sales** section, choose **Orders**. Here, a list of orders is shown.



- First: Go to **Admin Panel** => **Sales** => **Orders**
- Next: Choose the excessive orders you want to delete
- Next: In the **Actions** box => choose Delete Orders
- Last: click on **Submit** button

*Note: Remember that if you choose Delete Orders , all the related information about order’s invoice, shipment, credit memo will be deleted from backend at ease.

If you want to delete only invoice or shipment or credit memo of any order, you have to keep this order remaining.



NOTE: You can choose to delete one, more or all orders

2. Delete Invoices

In order to delete Invoices, follow this following instructions:



- First: Go to **Admin Panel** => **Sales** => **Invoices**
- Next: Choose the excessive invoices you want to delete

- Next: In the **Actions** box => choose Delete Invoices
- Last: click on **Submit** button

Page 1 of 1 pages | View 20 per page | Total 4 records found

Export to: CSV | Export | Reset Filter | Search

Select Visible | Unselect Visible | 2 items selected

Invoice #	Invoice Date	Order #	Order Date	Bill to Name	Status	Amount	Action
100000006	Jun 9, 2015 2:16:45 AM	100000004	Jun 9, 2015 1:29:54 AM	bss commerce	Paid	\$774.95	View
100000005	Jun 9, 2015 2:14:56 AM	100000006	Jun 9, 2015 2:11:46 AM	bss commerce	Paid	\$279.98	View
100000004	Jun 9, 2015 2:13:56 AM	100000007	Jun 9, 2015 2:13:25 AM	bss commerce	Paid	\$2,849.70	View
100000003	Jun 9, 2015 1:33:32 AM	100000005	Jun 9, 2015 1:32:27 AM	bss commerce	Paid	\$1,669.40	View

3. Delete Shipments

In order to delete Shipments, follow this following instructions:



- First: Go to **Admin Panel** => **Sales** => **Shipments**
- Next: Choose the excessive shipments you want to delete
- Next: In the **Actions** box => choose Delete shipments
- Last: click on **Submit** button

Page 1 of 1 pages | View 20 per page | Total 3 records found

Export to: CSV | Export | Reset Filter | Search

Select Visible | Unselect Visible | 3 items selected

Shipment #	Date Shipped	Order #	Order Date	Ship to Name	Total Qty	Action
100000005	Jun 9, 2015 2:16:33 AM	100000004	Jun 9, 2015 1:29:54 AM	bss commerce	5	View
100000004	Jun 9, 2015 2:15:07 AM	100000006	Jun 9, 2015 2:11:46 AM	bss commerce	2	View
100000003	Jun 9, 2015 1:34:39 AM	100000003	Jun 9, 2015 1:29:06 AM	bss commerce	3	View

4. Delete Credit Memos

In order to delete Credit Memos, follow this following instructions:



- First: Go to **Admin Panel** => **Sales** => **Credit Memos**
- Next: Choose the excessive shipments you want to delete
- Next: In the **Actions** box => choose Delete Credit Memos

- Last: click on **Submit** button

The screenshot shows the Magento Admin interface for Credit Memos. At the top, there's a 'Sales' header and a notification bar. Below that, the 'Credit Memos' section is active. The interface includes a search bar, a 'Select Visible' filter, and a '2 items selected' indicator. The main grid displays the following data:

Atty	Credit Memo #	Created At	Order #	Order Date	Bill to Name	Status	Refunded	Action
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	100000006	Jun 9, 2015 2:17:20 AM	100000004	Jun 9, 2015 1:29:54 AM	bss commerce	Refunded	\$774.95	View
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	100000005	Jun 9, 2015 2:15:18 AM	100000006	Jun 9, 2015 2:11:46 AM	bss commerce	Refunded	\$279.98	View
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	100000004	Jun 9, 2015 2:14:06 AM	100000007	Jun 9, 2015 2:13:25 AM	bss commerce	Refunded	\$2,849.70	View
<input type="checkbox"/>	100000003	Jun 9, 2015 1:33:47 AM	100000005	Jun 9, 2015 1:32:27 AM	bss commerce	Refunded	\$1,669.40	View

19.2 Compatibility

Our Delete Order Extension is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

19.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.2:

- Update deleting order function: completely clear all related invoices, credit memos and shipments
- Compatible with all Magento sites

Version 1.0.3:

- Fix bugs on Magento version 1.9.2.4

19.4 Common Problems

I purchased “Delete Order/Invoice/Shipment/Credit Memo”. I uploaded the files to my root folder now I get this page “Service Temporarily Unavailable The server is temporarily unable to service your request due to maintenance downtime or capacity problems. Please try again later.” -> Could you please try to check if there is a file called maintenance.flag in your magento root? If so Delete it. The problem will be sorted out.

19.5 FAQs

19.5.1 Features

What are the differences between version 1 and version 2 of BSS Delete Order extension? Is version 2 the upgraded and better one?

In facts, BSS Delete Order version 2 is the upgraded one to be able to compatible with Magento 2 platform. But basics function of the version 2, for now, is simplier (only enables deleting orders along with all other relating data at the same time) and you cannot remove unwanted invoices, shipment and credit memos separately. In other words, version 1 is the more full-function one.

If I delete a piece of data using this extension, is other relating data/information deleted either?

When deleting unnecessary orders, all respective shipment, invoices, credit memo are deleted too. However, when you only delete any data of shipment, invoices, credit memo, its order still remains under your control

Is is posible to choose to delete all types of unnecessary data in one click, or I have to do it seperately for each type?

Yes, by deleting orders, other data relating to it will be wiped out immediately. In case you want to keep orders data, deleting other types of info will have to be done seperately.

Using this extension, if I delete a certain order by mistake, is it moved to a folder like recycle bin from which I can find and restore it or it is deleted for good?

Unfortunately, the answer is no. When you delete an order, it is deleted permanently and can not be restore. So before hitting the **Submit** button for this action, please take a second look carefully

19.5.2 Guide

May I have to make any configuration from the backend?

No, you just install this module to to your site and an action of Delete Order is automatically added to the backend to choose.

20.1 User Guide

20.1.1 What is Full Page Cache?

[Full Page Cache for Magento](#) is an ideal way to speed up your Magento eCommerce site by reducing server responsive time, reducing hardware requirements and costs, and making your Website more responsive to shop on. A fast site can place directly higher in search engines and increase profits amazingly.

Full page caching ensures your content is always up to date with the auto refresh cache system and allows for easily configurable hole, punching from the admin panel. With a quick and simple install, our [Full Page Cache](#) helps you achieve blazing fast page load times. This massively improves page load time and allows your server to handle many more requests!

20.1.2 Why should install Full Page Cache?

Literally, Full Page cache relates to the storage of the full output of a page in a cache, so that in subsequent page loads will not require much server load at all.

Full Page cache extension is indispensable especially for enterprise level eCommerce sites with high-traffic visiting in order to keep server load as low as possible, and to avoid downtime during periods of high traffic. For instance, If 1000 users are visiting the site at once, memory capacity used with full page caching enabled is inappropriate in comparison to the server load caused by 1000 Users Magento at a time.

Thoroughly considered, Full page cache extension will increase site speed, since all the server needs to do is fetch and render the page from the cache.

20.1.3 Configuration Settings

BSS's FPC has a handful of configurable settings to control how pages are cached. All settings are located in **“System -> Configuration -> Brim Extensions -> Full Page Cache”**

General Settings

Full Page Cache

 Save Config

Settings ▲

Version	3.1.0	[STORE VIEW]
Enabled	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Yes</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[STORE VIEW]
<small>▲ Turn the extension off and on.</small>		
Enable Level1 Cache	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">No</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[GLOBAL]
<small>▲ Extremely fast cache. Used for visitors without products in cart. Dynamic block updates are not supported in Recently viewed products.</small>		
Cache Block Updates	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">No</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[STORE VIEW]
<small>▲ Allow unique block updates to be cache. Pages will load faster but use much more disk space.</small>		
Enable HTML Minification	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">No</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[STORE VIEW]
<small>▲ Turn on to minify HTML before caching. Saves on storage, useful for 10,000+ products.</small>		
Invalidate Action	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Clean</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[STORE VIEW]
<small>▲ Notify: Displays a Magento notification when the cache is out of date. Manual flush of the cache is required. Clean: Removes out of date pages from the cache. Warning: may cause slow saves on large catalogs.</small>		
Page Expires (seconds)	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">7200</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[STORE VIEW]
<small>▲ Number of seconds a page is valid in the cache.</small>		
Debug	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">No</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[STORE VIEW]
<small>▲ Enable server side debugging.</small>		
Response Debugging	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">No</div> <div style="float: right; border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 0 5px;">↕</div>	[STORE VIEW]
<small>▲ Enable response header debugging.</small>		

Cache Conditions Settings

Full Page Cache

Save Config

Settings

Cache Conditions

Use Customer Group In Cache Key [GLOBAL]
 ▲ This can be turned off if you are not using any customer group functionality such as catalog price rules based on customer groups.

Share pages between NOT LOGGED IN and General Customers [GLOBAL]
 ▲ Treats the NOT LOGGED IN and General customer groups and the same. Useful if pricing is the same for both customer groups and no other customer group features are used.

Maximum Query Parameters to Cache [GLOBAL]
 ▲ If a request contains more than the set number of parameters the request will NOT be cached. -1 allows unlimited parameters, but is not recommended.

Session Variables [GLOBAL]

Session Variable	Session Model	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Delete
Add New Session Variable		

▲ List of session variables to include in a pages cache key.

Ignored Url Parameters [GLOBAL]

Parameter	
<input type="text" value="gclid"/>	Delete
Add New Parameter	

▲ List of parameter keys to ignore when generating a page's cache key. ie: gclid

Full Page Cache

Save Config

Settings

Cache Conditions

Layout Settings

Custom Block Updates [WEBSITE]

Block Name	Container	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Delete
Add New Block Update		

▲ List of custom block names to dynamically update (holepunch).

Cache Additional Page Types [WEBSITE]

Handles	Enabled	
<input type="text" value="Popular Search Terms"/>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	Delete
Add New Page Type		

▲ List of additional page types (layout.xml handles) to cache. Entries will override the brim_pagecache.xml layout file.

Custom Layout XML [WEBSITE]

▲ ADVANCED: Appends custom layout.xml for the FPC.

Mobile Settings

Full Page Cache

Save Config

Settings			▼
Cache Conditions			▼
Layout Settings			▼
Mobile Settings			▲
Enable User Agent Detection	Yes		[GLOBAL]
User Agent Pattern	iPhone iPod BlackBerry Pre Palm Googlebot-Mobi		[GLOBAL]
Storage Settings			▼
Config File			▼
Help			▼

Storage Settings

Full Page Cache

Save Config

Settings			▼
Cache Conditions			▼
Layout Settings			▼
Mobile Settings			▼
Storage Settings			▲
Use System Cache			[GLOBAL]
Type	Optimized File		[GLOBAL]
Path			[GLOBAL]
▲ Directory under [magento root]/var/. Ex: cache-fpc Applied when using File or Scalable File backends			
Config File			▼
Help			▼

Config File Settings

Full Page Cache Save Config

Settings ▼

Cache Conditions ▼

Layout Settings ▼

Mobile Settings ▼

Storage Settings ▼

Config File ▲

Auto Write XML Config to Disk Yes [GLOBAL]

▲ Disable if you prefer to manually create and maintain app/etc/brim_pagecache.xml

XML [GLOBAL]

Help ▼

20.2 Compatibility

Our Full Page Cache is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

20.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0:

- First Release

Version 1.0.1:

- Fix the issue with compilation

Version 1.0.2:

- Fix bugs for Ultimo theme

20.4 FAQs

21.1 User Guide

21.2 Compatibility

Our Magento Google Tag Manager is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

21.3 Changelog

21.4 FAQs

22.1 User Guide

22.2 Compatibility

Our Improved Newsletter is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

22.3 Changelog

22.4 FAQs

23.1 User Guide

23.1.1 Magento Lazy Image Loader Extension Overview

If you are a Facebook user, you definitely know its image load mechanism. For the purpose of reducing image load time to enhance customer experience, Facebook permits pages loading images as customers' scroll.

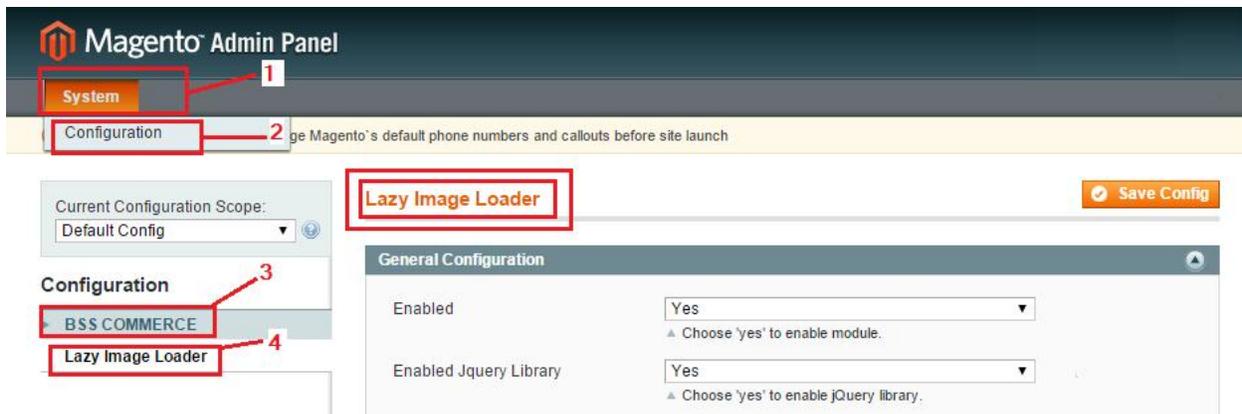
[Magento Lazy Image Loader extension](#) possesses the same functionality which loads product images on your Magento site only when customers scroll the page. By the same token, the extension easy usage drives Magento newcomers at ease. Likewise, the abilities to exclude particular controllers and paths from the effect of Lazy Image Loader extension promote the extension to be the adorable extension that needs to be added to shop owners carts.

23.1.2 How does Magento Lazy Image Loader extension work?

To make configuration of this module, follow these below instruction:

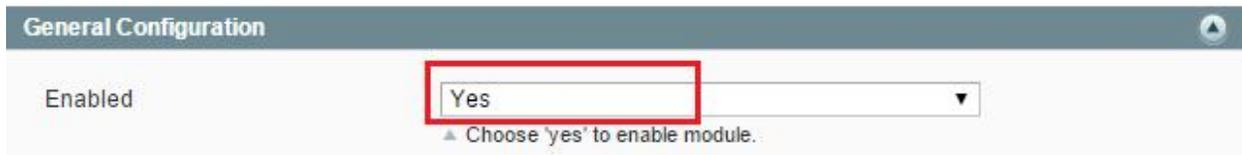
- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel => System => Configuration**
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS Commerce => select Lazy Image Loader**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the below picture:



1. Enabled

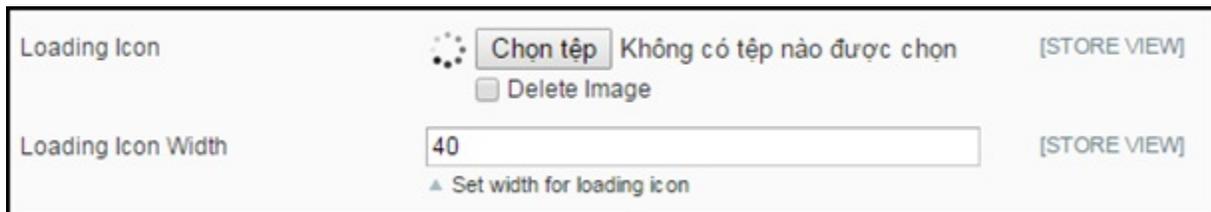
You can select between enable and disable Magento Lazy Image Loader Extension by setting the status in **Enabled** box into “Enable” or “Disable”.



2. Loading Icon

In **Loading Icon**: you choose the files to upload images from your computer

In **Loading Icon Width**: you set the width for icon loading



3. Manage Jquery Library

When setting up Lazy Image Loader, you can also control Jquery Library in your website. You can select “Yes” to allow Jquery Library combining with Lazy Image Loader extension when it runs on your website.



4. Threshold

In **Threshold** box, you can set the number pixel before image appear on the screen, then the image will be loaded earlier as the pixels you set. For instance, if you set the number in the box is 14, it means that the images will be loaded before when your scroll position is far from 14 pixels.

Threshold [STORE VIEW]

▲ If you want your images to load earlier, lets say number pixel before they appear on the screen

5. Exclude controllers, Path, Homepage

Magento Lazy Image Loader Extension allows admin deciding which part will be excluded from lazy-loaded function. To exclude controller, admin can click on **Add Match** and then filling the match in the box. Admin also can delete the **Match** and add more by clicking on **Delete**, and **Add Match** button alternately.

Exclude controllers [STORE VIEW]

▲ Listed controllers will be unaffected by lazy image load.
Use: {module}_{controller}_{action}

1 **Add Match**

Exclude controllers [STORE VIEW]

Matched Expression	
<input type="text"/>	Delete
	Add Match

2 ▲ Listed controllers will be unaffected by lazy image load.
Use: {module}_{controller}_{action}

Similar to **Controller**, admin can control the **Path** which they do not want to be affected by Lazy Image Loader.

Exclude path

▲ Listed paths will be unaffected by lazy image load. Use: {module}/{controller}/{action}/... (Example: catalog/product/view/id/1)

1 **Add Match**

Exclude path

Matched Expression	
<input type="text"/>	Delete
	Add Match

2

Finally, admin can set whether Homepage be affected by lazy image load or not in the box **Exclude Home Page**.

Exclude Home Page [STORE VIEW]

▲ Home page will be unaffected by lazy image load.

6. Exclude lazy images

In **Help Exclude lazy images**: Our extensions allows adding attribute **notlazy** after **src** attribute to `` to help you prevent loading lazy images and make them not be affected by this extension.

Help exclude lazy images

- Add attribute **notlazy** after **src** attribute to `` for prevent lazy load.
- Example:
From: ``
To: ``

For example: If you want to exclude an image named BSS from Lazy Image Loader's impact, you do as the following:

From: ``

To: ``

It means that you just need to add **notlazy** after **src** attribute to `` and then this image is not affected by Lazy Image Loader

After finishing all of these set-up steps, you can click on **Save Config** button to start using Magento Lazy Image Loader extension.

23.2 Compatibility

Our Lazy Image Loader is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

23.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.3:

- SEO-friendly improvement
- Support JQuery Library

Version 1.0.4:

- Loading effect
- Option to not load some wanted images

Version 1.0.5:

- Option to upload loading icon

Version 1.0.6:

- Support srcset attribute

23.4 FAQs

Limit Order Quantity per Category

24.1 User Guide

24.1.1 Magento Limit Order Quantity Per Category Overview

[Magento Limit Order Quantity Per Category Extension](#) allows setting minimum and maximum quantity of all products per category in an order that customers have to meet before successfully checking out. This extension also helps Magento store owners limit order quantity per category for each specific customer group, which gives them more control over order product quantity to reduce shipping costs and other related costs like storage management and package.

24.1.2 How does Magento Limit Order Quantity Per Category Extension work?

Go to **System -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Min/Max Order Quantity per Category for Customer Group** to begin setting up

Min/Max Order Qty per Category for Customer Group	
Enable	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>  <small>▲ Select Yes to enable the module</small>
Show category	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>  <small>▲ Show all category of product on shopping cart</small>
Messages Limit Max	<input type="text" value="The max quantity allowed for purchase at category ."/>
Messages Limit Min	<input type="text" value="The min quantity allowed for purchase at category {"/>

1. In Enable:

Choose **Yes** to enable module or choose **No** to disable it

2. In Show Category:

- Choose **Yes** to display all product category in the shoppingcart.
- Choose **No** to hide product category

3. In Messages Limit Max:

You can change the notification messages when maximum required order quantity per category is not met (This message locates at the top left corner of the Shopping Cart). Without any changes, default message will be shown as: The max quantity allowed for purchase at category {category_name} is {qty_limit} [Product Name : {product_name}]

4. In Messages Limit Min:

You can change the notification messages when minimum required order quantity per category is not met. Without any changes, default message will be shown as: The min quantity allowed for purchase at category {category_name} is {qty_limit} [Product Name : {product_name}]

5. In Min/Max Order Quantity

Customer Group	Category	Min Qty	Max Qty	
NOT LOGGED IN	--Wo'men(ID: 4)	8	100	Delete
General	--Accessories(ID: 6)	5	100	Delete
NOT LOGGED IN	----New Arrivals(ID: 10)	3	10	Delete
				Add Qty

Set Option for min/max qty per category for customer group

You can freely choose customer group and category to apply the min/max quantity rule. Click **Add** button for more options.

After finishing with setup, choose **Save Config**

*Note:

For products belong to multiple categories, the order quantity of products needs to meet the min/max requirement of all those categories. The min/max rule is applied to the total number of products in each category added to cart, not the order quantity of each particular product.

24.2 Compatibility

Our Limit Order Quantity Per Category is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

24.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0:

- First Release

Version 1.0.1:

- Fix bugs when getting current category is NULL

24.4 FAQs

Limit Order Quantity per Product

25.1 User Guide

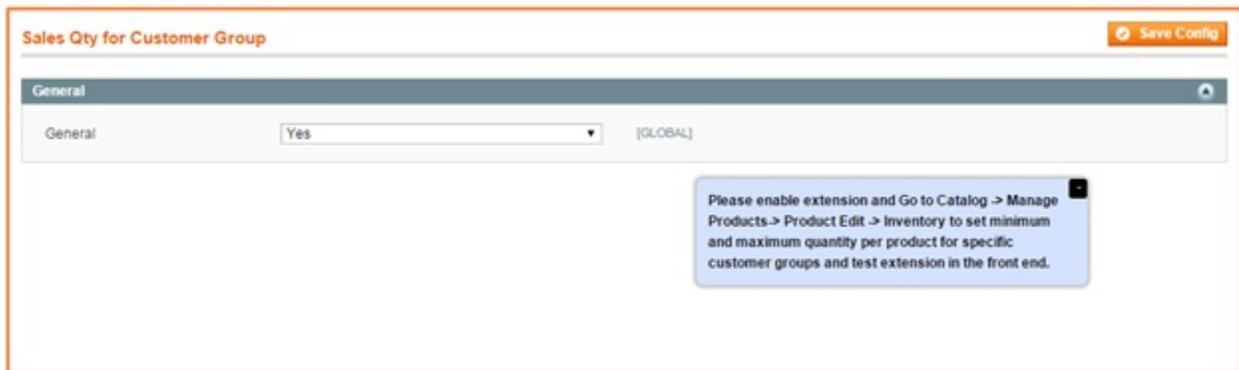
25.1.1 Magento Limit Order Quantity Per Product Extension Overview

[Magento Limit Order Quantity per Product Extension](#) by BSSCommerce is developed to help administrators to take control the allowed number of products that customer need to order for a successful purchase. In Magento default, you can also set up the minimum and maximum order quantity for each product but it does not allow you to apply these settings to specific customer groups. Therefore, this module enhance your customization to make it suitable with your products and your customers you want to control their order quantity.

By setting minimum and maximum order quantity per product for specific customer groups, you can save a lot of shipping costs and other related costs due to preventing the very small quantity of products and also increases sales effectively for your store.

25.1.2 How does Limit Order Quantity Per Product Extension work?

You go to **System -> Configuration -> BSS COMMERCE -> Sales Qty for Customer Group**



In **General**: Choose **Yes** to enable the module or choose **No** to disable it

After you enable the module, you go to **Catalog -> Manage Products -> Product Edit -> Inventory**. (At this step, you choose each product in product grid table to make configuration)

After going to **Inventory** of each product, you set up minimum and maximum order quantity for each customer group.

Customer Group	Min Qty	Action
NOT LOGGED IN	2	[icon]
General	3	[icon]
VIP Member	2	[icon]
Private Sales Member	4	[icon]
Wholesale	10	[icon]

Customer Group	Max Qty	Action
NOT LOGGED IN	10	[icon]
General	15	[icon]
VIP Member	20	[icon]
Private Sales Member	20	[icon]
Wholesale	50	[icon]

In **Min Sales Qty**: click **Add Group Min Sales Qty** to set up the minimum order quantity for each customer group

In **Max Sales Qty**: Click **Add Group Max Sales Qty** to set up the maximum order quantity for each customer group =>Then Save configuration and repeat this process for other products.

In the frontend, if the requirements about minimum and maximum order quantity for a product are not met, they cannot add it to cart and Magento default will show a notification about the order quantity limitation of this product.



25.2 Compatibility

Our Limit Order Quantity Per Product is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

25.3 Changelog

25.4 FAQs

25.4.1 Features

Can Limit Order Quantity per Product take effects independently on different store views?

No. These limits are all applied to global scope

What limits this extension let me set for order quantity per product?

BSS Limit Order Quantity per Product extension enables configuration of lowest and highest order quantity for each product that is valid for a customer to proceed to check out.

For each product, are maximum and minimum limits of order quantity fixed for every customer? What if I only want to set order quantity limits to some specific customers?

Using this extension, limit order quantity per product can be set up differently among your customer groups, even when only one group is set up limits and others aren't. But you can also use a fixed limit for all customers by setting the same limits for all customer groups

Does this extension support a customized message to notice customers about the limits of order quantity per product?

With this extension, only the default notification of Magento is used to notice customers when limit order quantity is not satisfied

25.4.2 Guide

How to set up order quantity limits per product in this extension?

This extension is very easy to handle:

- You just need to enable the module. To do that, go to System Configuration BSS Commerce Sales QTy for Customer Group, then at General settings section of this module you choose Yes
- Then go set up limits for which product you want (Catalog Manage Products (choose the product) Inventory Set up Min/Max Sales Qty for customer groups as picture below:

Minimum Order Amount for Customer Group

26.1 User Guide

26.1.1 Magento Minimum Order Amount for Customer Group Extension Overview

Magento [Minimum Order Amount](#) for Customer Group Extension is a must-have extension that allows setting up the minimum amount of an order that each customer group has to meet.

- Flexibly set the limitation for each customer group
- Extremely Suitable For B2B Business Model
- Well-compatible with all Magento theme
- Life time support and free installation

26.1.2 How does Magento Minimum Order Amount for Customer Group Extension work?

Administrator can easily enable/disable this extension from backend without special knowledge needed. Check it at **System-> Configuration -> Sales -> Minimum Order Amount**

Minimum Order Amount

Enable: Yes

Minimum Amount:

Customer Group	Minimum Amount	
Minority Client	0	Delete
Retailers	800	Delete
WholeClient	2000	Delete
NOT LOGGED IN	300	Delete
NOT LOGGED IN		Delete

Add Minimum amount

Description Message: *****You must have at least 100\$

Subtotal after discount. This message will be shown in shopping cart when subtotal after discount less than minimum amount.

In **Enable**: Choose **Yes** to enable the module or choose **No** to disable it.

In **Minimum Amount**: click “**Add Minimum Amount**” to set up minimum order amount for each customer group.

In **Description Message**: you customize your own message/notification to show customers in the shopping cart in case requirements about order amount are not met.

For example, if customer does not order with the minimum amount of \$100, the message is displayed in the shopping cart as below:

SHOPPING CART

*****You must have at least 100\$

Tori Tank was added to your shopping cart.

PRODUCT	PRICE	QTY	SUBTOTAL
<p>TORI TANK SKU: urblo05 Color: Indigo Size: L</p>	\$60.00	1	\$60.00

DISCOUNT CODES: [] APPLY

ESTIMATE SHIPPING AND TAX

COUNTRY: United States STATE/PROVINCE: Please select region, st

CITY: [] ZIP: []

ESTIMATE

EMPTY CART UPDATE SHOPPING CART CONTINUE SHOPPING

26.2 Compatibility

Our Minimum Order Amount For Customer Group is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

26.3 Changelog

26.4 FAQs

26.4.1 Features

I'd like to experience this helpful extension but what if it conflicts with my using theme?

That's not a problem because this one is built well-compatible with all Magento themes. This module has nothing to do with display customization in the frontend, so it has no effect on whatever theme you are using on your site

Why should I use this module when requirement of minimum order amount may make my customers feel annoyed because of their limited budget?

When deciding whether to use this module or not, you have to thoroughly consider your business model and your targeted customers. Sometimes, delivery of orders with tiny amount are not cost-efficient for your business, then you can avoid it by setting up a minimum order amount for your customer.

Magento also has a default minimum order amount function, so why should I use another extension like BSS Minimum Order Amount for my website?

The reason why we develop this extension is to optimize the similar default function in Magento. Magento itself just allows you to set up a specific minimum order amount for the whole website, meanwhile our extension enables you to choose different minimum amounts for different customer groups, especially at the scope of a storeview only. It is super convenient when your website has multi-store view.

Using this module, whether discount is included in total amount when comparing with minimum order amount or not?

The amount to compare with minimum level is the subtotal after discount is applied.

Does this module set limitation to the number of customer groups on which I want to place minimum order amount?

No. You can manage the number of your customer groups and the limit of their order value also

What is the difference between Description message and Error to show in shopping cart?

They work quite similarly, both are customized message to inform customers that they still can not check out. Description message will be displayed in shopping cart when the subtotal after discount is less than minimum amount, and Error to show in shopping cart will only be shown when customers click on the button Proceed to checkout

Minimum Quantity of Configurable Product

27.1 User Guide

27.1.1 Minimum Quantity of Configurable Product Extension Overview

Minimum Quantity of Configurable Product is developed to allow admin to set minimum quantity as the compulsory condition for customer's checkout. This minimum quantity value can be specifically set for a configurable product or some specific configurable products. Besides, admin can also choose to apply this minimum value for all configurable products on large scale.

27.1.2 How does Minimum Quantity of Configurable Product Extension work?

1. Set minimum quantity for all configurable product

Navigate to **System -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERE -> Minimum Quantity of Configurable Product**

The screenshot displays the Magento 2 admin interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Sales', 'Catalog', and 'System'. A notification bar at the top right indicates 'You have 15 critical, 6 major, 1 minor messages'. The left sidebar shows the 'Configuration' menu with 'BSS COMMERCER' expanded and 'Minimum Qty Of Configurable Product' selected. The main content area is titled 'Minimum Qty Of Configurable Product' and contains a 'General Settings' section. In this section, the 'Enabled' dropdown is set to 'Yes' with a note 'Choose 'yes' to enable module.' Below it, the 'Minimum Qty Of Configurable Product' text input field is highlighted with a red box and contains the value '10'. A '[STORE VIEW]' label is visible to the right of the input field.

In **Enabled**, choose **Yes** to enable or **No** to disable the extension

In **Minimum Qty of Configurable Product**, enter a number to set minimum quantity for all configurable products in store.

2. Set minimum quantity for a specific configurable product

Go to **Catalog -> Manage Product -> Find the configurable product -> Inventory**

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' configuration page for the product 'Bowery Chino Pants (Clothing)'. On the left, there is a sidebar with 'Product Information' and various tabs: General, Prices, Meta Information, Images, Design, Gift Options, Clothing, **Inventory** (highlighted with a red box), Websites, and Categories. The main content area shows the 'Inventory' section with the following settings:

Setting	Value	Scope
Manage Stock	Yes	[GLOBAL]
Use Config Settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Minimum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart	10	[GLOBAL]
Use Config Settings	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Enable Qty Increments	No	[GLOBAL]
Use Config Settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Stock Availability	In Stock	[GLOBAL]

In **Minimum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart**, use config setting or remove tick from the checkbox to enter a new value for minimum quantity of the chosen configurable product

27.2 Compatibility

Our Minimum Quantity of Configurable Product is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

27.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0: First Release

27.4 FAQs

Minimum Amount for Category

28.1 User Guide

28.1.1 Magento Minimum Amount For Category Overview

[Magento Minimum Amount For Category extension](#) is a unique extension which allows admin to customize the minimum order amount for individual categories.

In order to better boost up your sale, shop owners always try to make efforts to promote customers' amount purchase. Set up a minimum order amount for each category when customers are purchasing is a good idea. Only when customers' total amount is met with the minimum amount admin already set up, can customers' order be moved to checkout process.

In order to avoid tiny order amount, setting the minimum order amount is the optimal choice. Besides minimum order amount for customer group, we can also configure minimum order amount for different categories. The extension is beneficial as it forces customers to shop more to meet the minimum order amount if they would like to complete the checkout process. The extension is one simple tool to boost your sales in particular and your overall revenue in general.

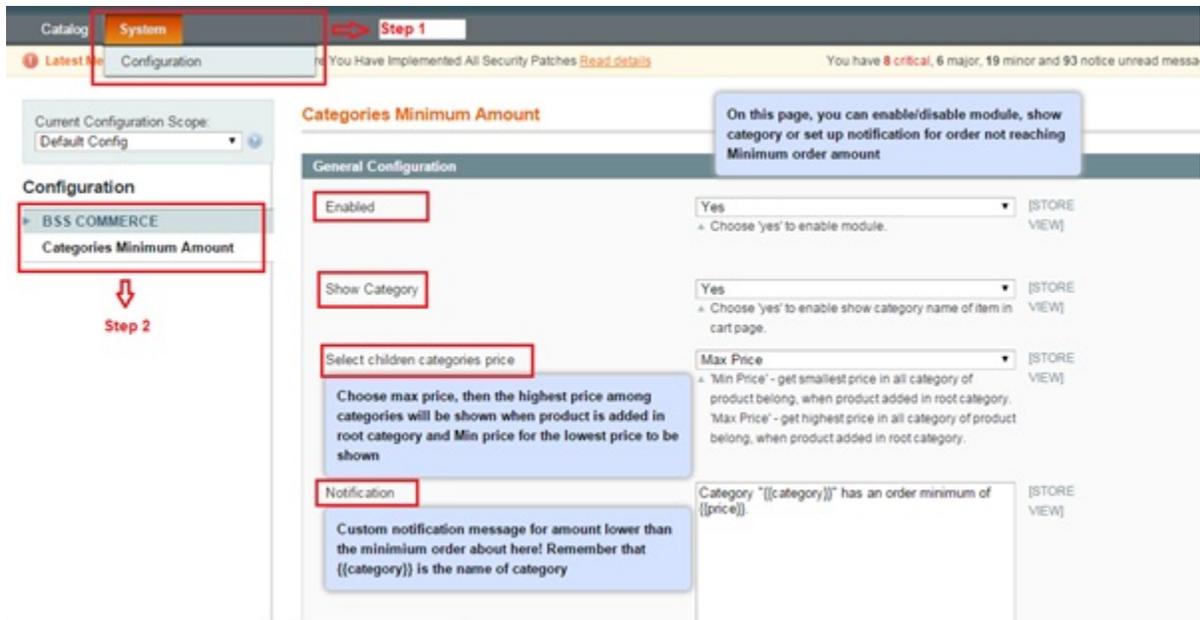
28.1.2 How does Magento Minimum Amount For Category extension work?

1. Instruction Manual

As an admin, you can set up your own store page by the most effective way that supports your trading objective. To polish the website configuration:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel** => **System** => **Configuration**
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS COMMERCE** => select **Categories Minimum Amounts**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the below picture:



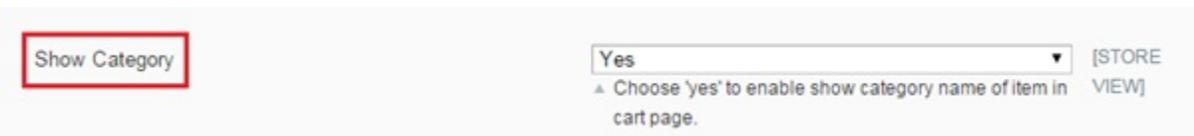
In the configuration table, there are 4 boxes for admin to customize the extension: **Enabled**, **Show Category**, **Select children categories price**, **Notification**.



In **Enabled**: There are 2 options in **Enable** box: **Yes** and **No**.

- Choose **Yes** to enable the module and continue customizing on other sections.
- Choose **No** to disable this module.

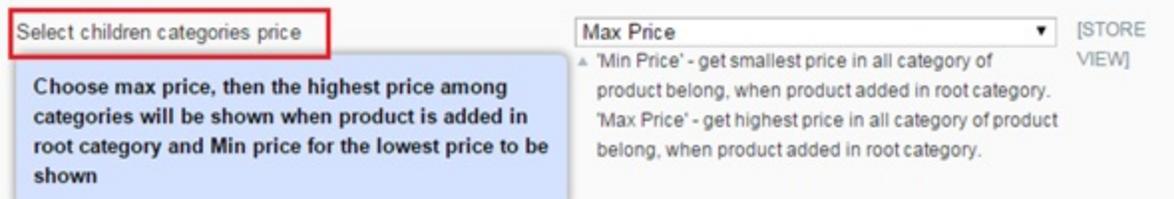
In **Show Category**:



There are 2 options in **Show Category** box: **Yes** and **No**.

- Choose **Yes** to enable showing category name of item in shopping cart page
- Choose **No** to disable showing category name of item in shopping cart page

In **Select children categories price**:

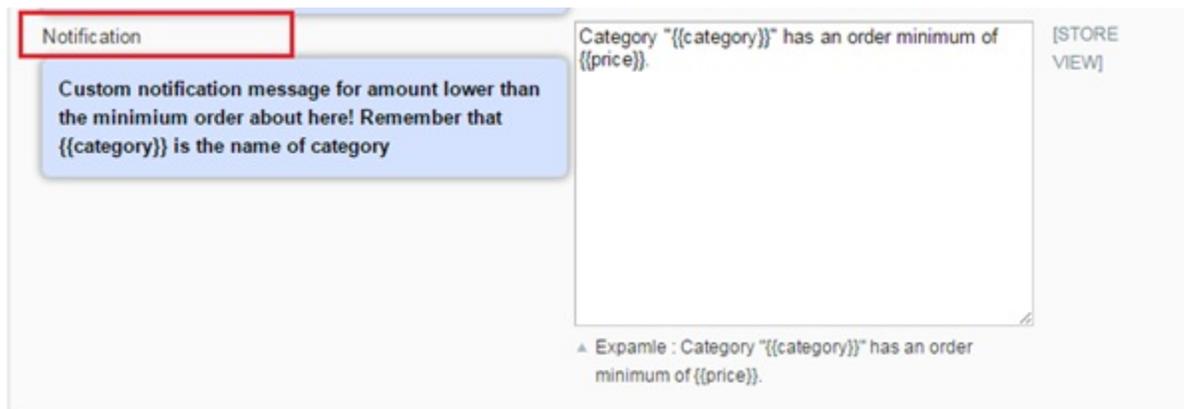


There are 2 options in box: Min Price and Max Price

This box allows admin to set up price displaying for products which belong to many categories and have different prices in each category. When customers don't add product to cart from any specific category but adding from other pages, for instance in the search result page, the price will be shown as the customization.

- Choose Min Price to show the lowest price in all categories which products belong to when products are purchased.
- Choose Max Price to show the highest price in all categories which products belong to when products are purchased.

In Notification:



In this box, admin can insert a custom notification message appears when customers order an amount lower than the minimum order amount being set.

Remember to use **{{category}}** in the custom message to automatically display exactly name of category the product are in, use **{{price}}** to automatically display exactly the minimum price for each category being set.

E.g: Category **{{category}}** has an order minimum of **{{price}}**

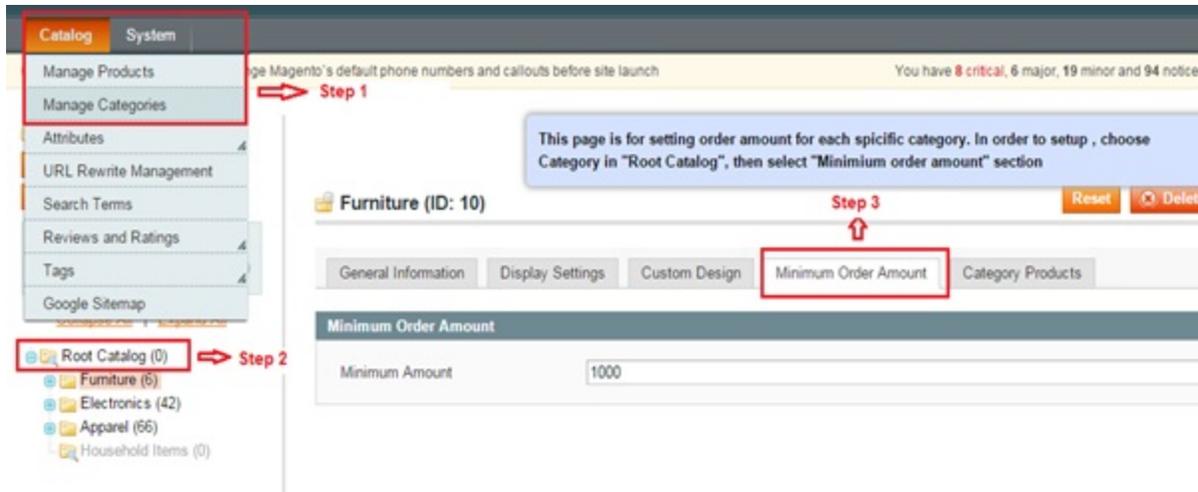
After all, click on **Save Config** button to save all configuration.

2. Set up Minimum Order Amount for each category

To set up minimum order amount for each category, follow these below instructions:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel => Catalog => Manage Categories**
- Step 2: In **Root Catalog** at the left side => select category to set up minimum order amount.
- Step 3: In the appearing configuration page, choose **Minimum Order Amount** section

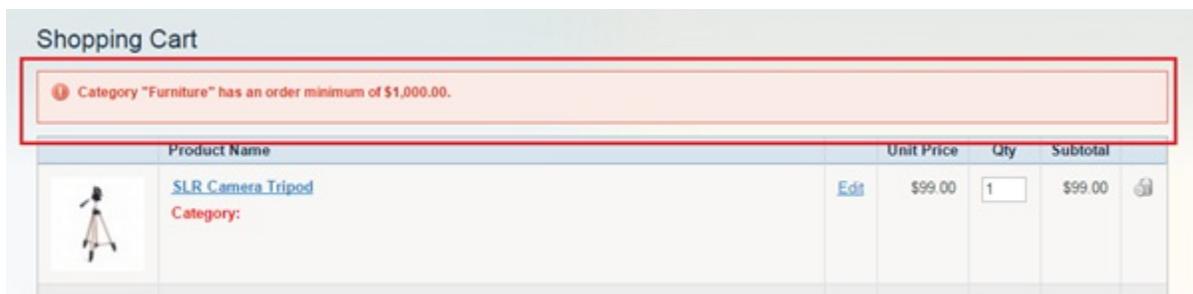
After these 3 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the below picture:



In the box **Minium Amount**, fill in with number of the minimum amount of each category.

*In this example, when filling **1000** => the minimum amount of Furniture category is \$1000 *for customers. So that customers have to place orders which worth more than 1000\$ to proceed checkout.*

If customer orders under-\$1000-product, a message notification will appear in frontend like this picture:



After all, don't forget to click on **Save Config** button to save all configuration.

28.2 Compatibility

Our Minimum Amount for Category is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

28.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.3:

- Fix bugs with price including tax

28.4 FAQs

28.4.1 Features

In what case specifically this module's function work best?

When store owners want to refuse orders with tiny amounts that are not effective to run through the whole process until delivered to save shipping costs.

Does this extension have another version compatible with Magento 2 platform?

Unfortunately, version for Magento 2 of BSS Minimum Order Amount for Categories extension is still not available until now. However, there is another one already having two versions for Magento 1 and Magento 2 which works in a quite similar function: [BSS Minimum Order Amount for Customer Group](#) . Check it out if you are interested.

Does this extension allow me to set minimum order amount for every subcategory or just for main categories?

Yes. Minimum order amount can be set up for all categories and subcategories of products on your website

Does this extension support a customized notification to customers when their order amount is less than the minimum set?

Yes. And remember to follow the structure to create this customized message, for example: "Category "{{category}}}" has an order minimum of {{price}}". Because {{category}} and {{price}} are added to make sure each name and minimum order amount of a certain category to be shown in a specific notification

Does this minimum order amount configuration take effect at website level or store view level?

Only at store view level. To change the store view, select which one you want at the section "Current Configuration Scope" on the top left of Categories Minimum Amount configuration page

28.4.2 Guide

When a product is shorted into multiple categories and minimum order amounts of them are set differently, which one will be the final minimum order amount for that product?

There are two options for you to decide the final minimum order amount for a certain product in multiple categories: it will be the min or max price among different minimum order amounts for all those categories. To do so, go to System Configuration BSS Commerce Categories Minimum Amount then enable the module, at "Select children categories price" you choose Min Price or Max Price

- Min Price: The final one will be the lowest among minimum amounts of all categories into which that product is sorted
- Max Price: The final one will be the highest among minimum amounts of all categories into which that is sorted

When I don't fill in a specific minimum order amount for a subcategory, does the minimum order amount of its root category count?

This is also decided by your options: the answer can be Yes or No depending on which one you choose at the section "Select minimum order amount of parent categories" (System Configuration BSS Commerce Categories Minimum Amount)

- Choose Yes: Minimum amount of root category will be counted as minimum amount of that subcategory
- Choose No: Minimum order amount of root category will not be counted, which means that subcategory has no minimum order amount

Multiple Store View Pricing

29.1 Installation Guide

To install Multiple Store View Pricing, you follow our [Installation Guide for Magento 1 extensions](#) .

*Note: Please remember that after you install Multiple Store View Pricing, you go to **System -> Configuration -> Catalog -> Catalog Price Scope** and choose **Store View**.

Then you need to reindex product prices and also apply catalog price rules again.

29.2 User Guide

29.2.1 Magento Multiple Store View Pricing Extension

Being an e-Commerce shop owner, have you ever found a temporary solution to set particular prices for each store view of the whole store system? Nevertheless, what will you do if you have a desire for setting multiple prices of the same items in each store view of each local store but all default Magento functions cannot help you handle it?

[Multiple Store View Pricing extension](#) is a useful tool which allows online shop owners set and display different prices for each product in each store view of the corresponding store as wish. With this powerful extension, now you will not face with any trouble in

29.2.2 How does Magento Multiple Store View Pricing Extension work?

1. Enable Multiple Store View Pricing Extension

You go to **System -> Configuration -> Catalog**. Among all sections shown up in the page, find **Price** section to start the customization.



In box **Catalog Price Scope**, there are 3 options for admin to choose: Global, Website, Store.

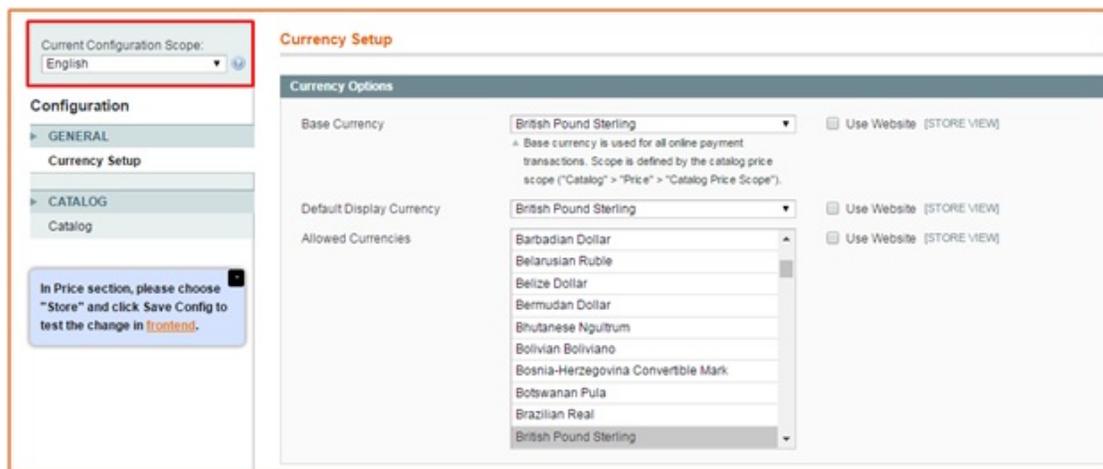
You choose Store to enable the module. Then you click **Save Config** and begin to customize prices of products in each store view of each store

2. Set up price for a product in the English store view: Madison 8GB Digital Media Player, for example

2.1 Set up base currency and default currency for English store view

In **Configuration**, you go to **General -> Currency Setup** to set up base currency for English store view

Choose **English** store view from **Current Configuration Scope**



In **Base Currency**: Choose **British Pound Sterling** as base currency and customers will use this one to checkout.

In **Default Display Currency**: you can choose **British Pound Sterling** or any other currency because this one is only displayed in the product or category page, not used in the checkout.

In **Allowed Currencies**: Choose **British Pound Sterling**

Then, click to **Save config** and start to set up price for a product in the English store view

2.2. Set up price for Madison 8GB Digital Media Player in the English store view

Go to **Manage Products** and choose Madison 8GB Digital Media Player to edit

Step 1: Choose **English** store view per store (Main Store) in **Choose store view box**

Step 2: In **Price** section (on the left side column), you unmark **“Use Default Value”** and add your wanted price for the product in this English store view: 600, for instance

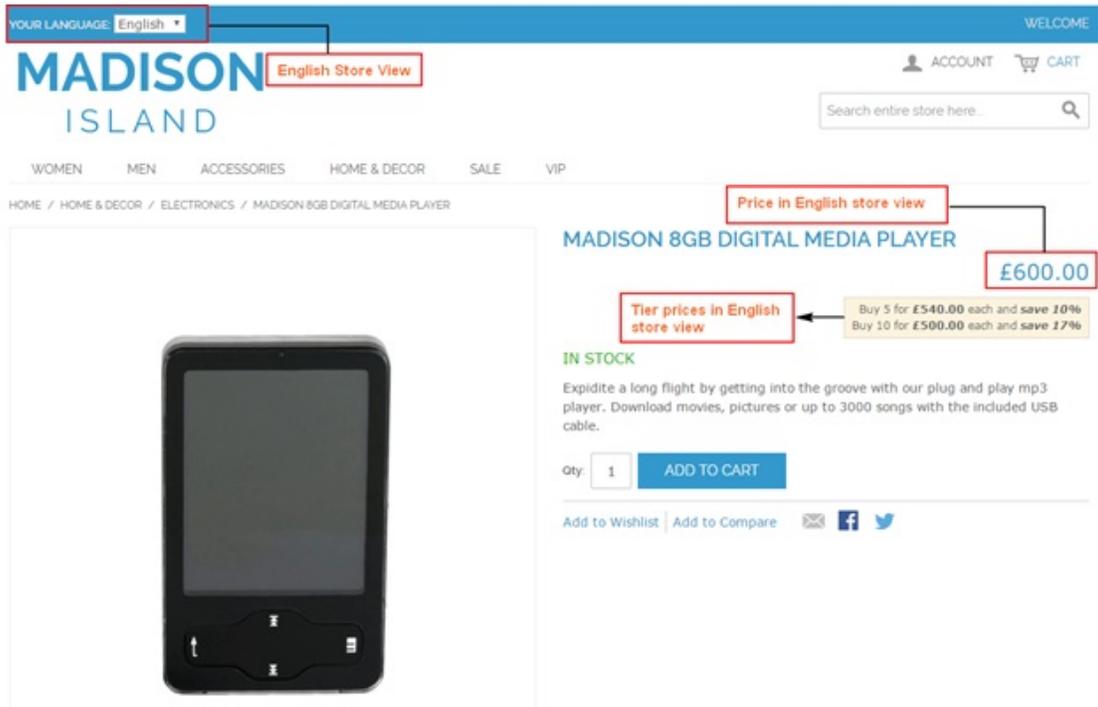
The screenshot shows the 'Prices' configuration page for the product 'Madison 8GB Digital Media Player (Electronics)'. The 'Choose Store View' dropdown is set to 'English'. The 'Price *' field is set to '600.00 [GBP]'. The 'Group Price For Store View' table has two entries: 'Main Website / English [GBP]' for 'NOT LOGGED IN' with a price of '600.00', and 'Main Website / English [GBP]' for 'Wholesale' with a price of '500.00'. The 'Tier Price For Store View' table has two entries: 'Main Website / English [GBP]' for 'ALL GROUPS' with a quantity of '5 and above' and a price of '540.00', and 'Main Website / English [GBP]' for 'ALL GROUPS' with a quantity of '10 and above' and a price of '500.00'. The 'Use Default Value' checkbox is unchecked for the main price and the first group price.

In addition, you can also set up **Group Price, Special Price and Tier Price per store view** for this product if you want.

- In **Group Price For Store View**: Click **Add Group Price** button to add new group prices. You choose each customer group in the drop-down list and set up a particular price of this product
- In **Special Price**: Set up a special price of this product in English store view
- In **Tier price For Store View**: Click **Add Tier** for adding new Tier prices

Finally, you save configuration and see the changes from the frontend page

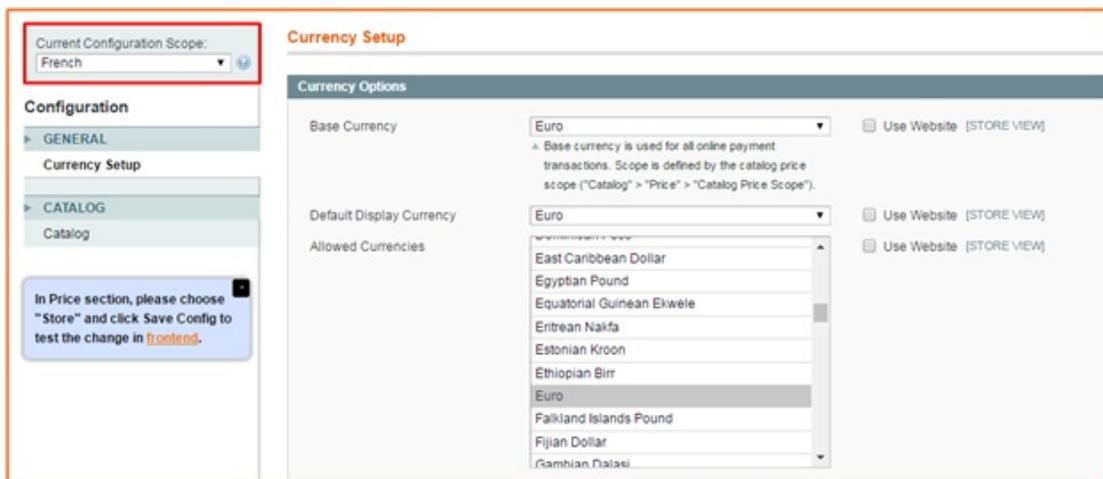
Prices of Madison 8GB Digital Media Player in the English store view from the product page:



3. Set up price for a product in the French store view: Madison 8GB Digital Media Player, for example

3.1. Set up base currency and default currency for French store view

In **Configuration**, you go to **General -> Currency Setup** to set up base currency for French store view
Choose **French** store view from **Current Configuration Scope**



In **Base Currency**: Choose **Euro** as base currency and customers will use this one to checkout.

In **Default Display Currency**: you can choose Euro or any other currency because this one is only displayed in the product or category page, not used in the checkout.

In **Allowed Currencies**: Choose **Euro**

Then, click to **Save config** and start to set up price for a product in the French store view

3.2. Set up price for Madison 8GB Digital Media Player in the French store view

Go to **Manage Products** and choose Madison 8GB Digital Media Player to edit

Step 1: Choose **French** store view per store (Main Store) in **Choose store view box**

The screenshot displays the 'Prices' configuration page for the product 'Madison 8GB Digital Media Player (Electronics)'. On the left, a sidebar lists 'Product Information' categories. The main area is divided into several sections:

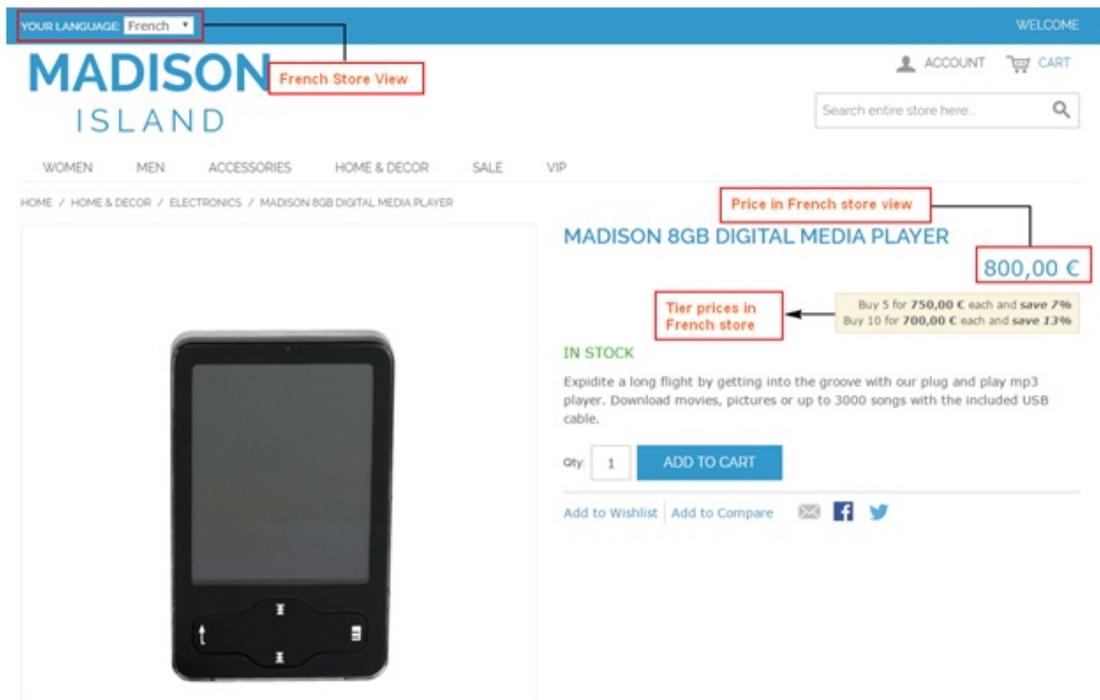
- Price *:** A text input field containing '800.00 [EUR]'. A callout box points to this field with the text 'Set up product price for french store view'.
- Group Price:** A table with columns 'Website', 'Customer Group', and 'Price'. An 'Add Group Price' button is visible.
- Group Price For Store View:** A table with columns 'Store View', 'Customer Group', and 'Price'. It shows two entries for 'Main Website / French': one for 'NOT LOGGED IN' with a price of 600.00, and one for 'Wholesale' with a price of 600.00. A callout box points to the price field with the text 'Set up Group price for french store view'.
- Special Price:** A text input field for special pricing, with a note that it is active only when lower than the actual price.
- Special Price From/To Date:** Two date input fields.
- Tier Price For Store View:** A table with columns 'Store View', 'Customer Group', 'Qty', and 'Price'. It shows two entries for 'Main Website / French': one for 'ALL GROUPS' with a quantity of 5 and a price of 750.00, and another for 'ALL GROUPS' with a quantity of 10 and a price of 700.00. A callout box points to the price field with the text 'Set up Tier price for french store view'.

Step 2: In **Price** section (on the left side column), you unmark **“Use Default Value”** and add your wanted price for the product in this French store view: 800, for instance

For Special prices, Group prices for Store View and Tier Prices For Store View, you do similarly to that in English store view as mentioned before.

Finally you save configuration in go to the frontend to see the changes:

Prices of Madison 8GB Digital Media Player in the French store view from the product page:



4. Conclusion

After all above settings, you can see differences in prices of Madison 8GB Digital Media Player between English and French store view.

29.3 Compatibility

Our Multiple Store View Pricing is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

29.4 Changelog

Version 2.0.4:

- Fix bugs with Group Price

Version 2.0.5:

- Fix bugs with Special Price and Special Price dates

Version 2.0.6:

- Fix bugs with Catalog Price Rule

Version 2.0.7:

- Fix price display in category page

29.5 How to Delete Multiple Store View Pricing extension

Step 1: Go to Admin -> System -> Configuration -> Catalog -> Catalog Price Scope

You change Catalog Price Scope to Website or Global

Step 2: Go to Admin -> Catalog-> Attributes -> Manage Attributes

You need to delete 2 attributes with attribute code as “tier_price_for_store” and “group_price_for_store”

Step 3: Setup base currency again by navigating to Admin -> System -> Configuration -> Currency Setup -> Base Currency

Step 4: Delete product prices at each store view

You upload the `delete_price_store.php` file to Magento root folder and run it. It is noticeable that you had better backup the `catalog_product_entity_decimal` table in DB before running.

This is the script of the `delete_price_store.php` file:

```
<?php
require_once('app/Mage.php');
umask(0);
Mage::app();

$resource = Mage::getSingleton('core/resource');
$readConnection = $resource->getConnection('core_read');
$writeConnection = $resource->getConnection('core_write');

$query = "SELECT attribute_id FROM " . Mage::getSingleton('core/resource')->
->getTableName('eav/attribute') . "
WHERE attribute_code = 'price' AND backend_model != '' LIMIT 1";

$attribute_id = $readConnection->fetchOne($query);

if($attribute_id) {
    $query = "DELETE FROM ".Mage::getSingleton('core/resource')->getTableName(
->'catalog_product_entity_decimal')."
        WHERE `attribute_id` = ".$attribute_id." AND `store_id` != '0'";

    $writeConnection->query($query);
}

echo 'Delete price per store view success.';
echo '<br>';

$query = "SELECT attribute_id FROM " . Mage::getSingleton('core/resource')->
->getTableName('eav/attribute') . "
WHERE attribute_code = 'special_price' AND backend_model != '' LIMIT 1";

$attribute_id = $readConnection->fetchOne($query);
if($attribute_id) {
    $query = "DELETE FROM ".Mage::getSingleton('core/resource')->getTableName(
->'catalog_product_entity_decimal')."
        WHERE `attribute_id` = ".$attribute_id." AND `store_id` != '0'";
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
$writeConnection->query($query);
}
echo 'Delete special price per store view success.';
```

Step 5: Remove the code of the module

You delete the folder: `app/code/local/Bss/MultiStoreViewPricing` and also remove the file: `app/etc/modules/Bss_MultiStoreViewPricing.xml`

Step 6: Finally, you should clear all caches

29.6 FAQs

29.7 How to Import Price with Data Flow

Step 1

Go to Admin - System - Import/Export - Dataflow - Profiles

Step 2

Choose “Import All Products” in the Profile Name tab

Step 3

- Click to the Upload File section
- Upload the CSV file that you want to import
- Click to Save Files button

This is a sample file that you can take as a reference:

Download a Sample CSV file here: [import_price_dataflow \(copy\).csv](#)

You need to complete this CSV file with necessary information about products: store view codes, SKUs, prices and special prices

You go to System - Manage Stores to get a store view code. For example, English store view has a code as default.

Step 4

- Click to the Run Profiles section
- Select the uploaded csv file
- Click to Run Profile in Popup button in order to import prices

Step 5

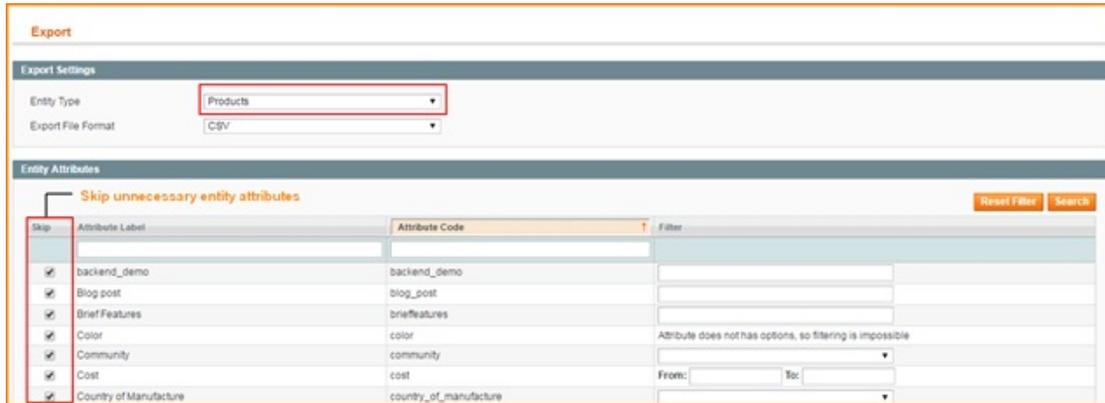
Finally, go to Catalog - Manage Products to check prices and special prices of products at each store view.

29.8 Import Product Price Per Store View

Step 1: Export file

- Go to System -> Import/ Export -> Export

- In Entity Type, choose Product
- Skip unnecessary attributes. If you just want to make change to price attribute, you can skip all entity attributes except SKU, price, special price



- Click Continue at the right bottom corner of the table to download a CSV file to your computer.

Step 2: Set up price for store view

- Open the CSV file
- Find SKU of the product you want to set up price for store view
- In the `_store` column equivalent to each SKU, replace the current store code by code of store view or add a new row to add new code of store view (Check code of store views at System -> Manage Store)
- Fill in equivalent price and special price for in price and special_price column as you want

sku	_store	price	special_price
acj005		500	250
	default	400	200
acj000		210	
	default	400	200

Price in global scope (points to the first row)

Price in store view scope (points to the second row)

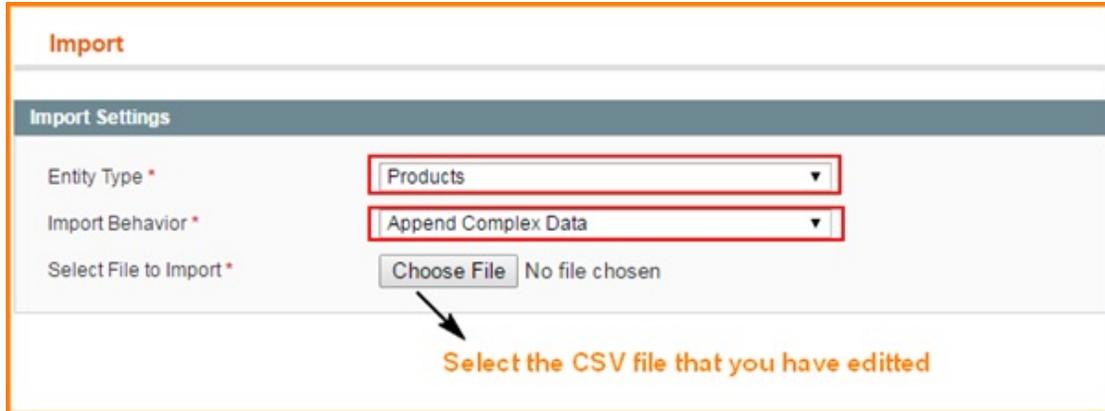
Product SKU (points to the first row's sku)

Store view code (points to the second row's _store)

- Save file

Step 3: Import file

- Go to System -> Import/ Export -> Import
- In Entity Type, choose Product
- In Import Behavior, choose Append Complex Data
- Upload the CSV file that you have made changes in step 2

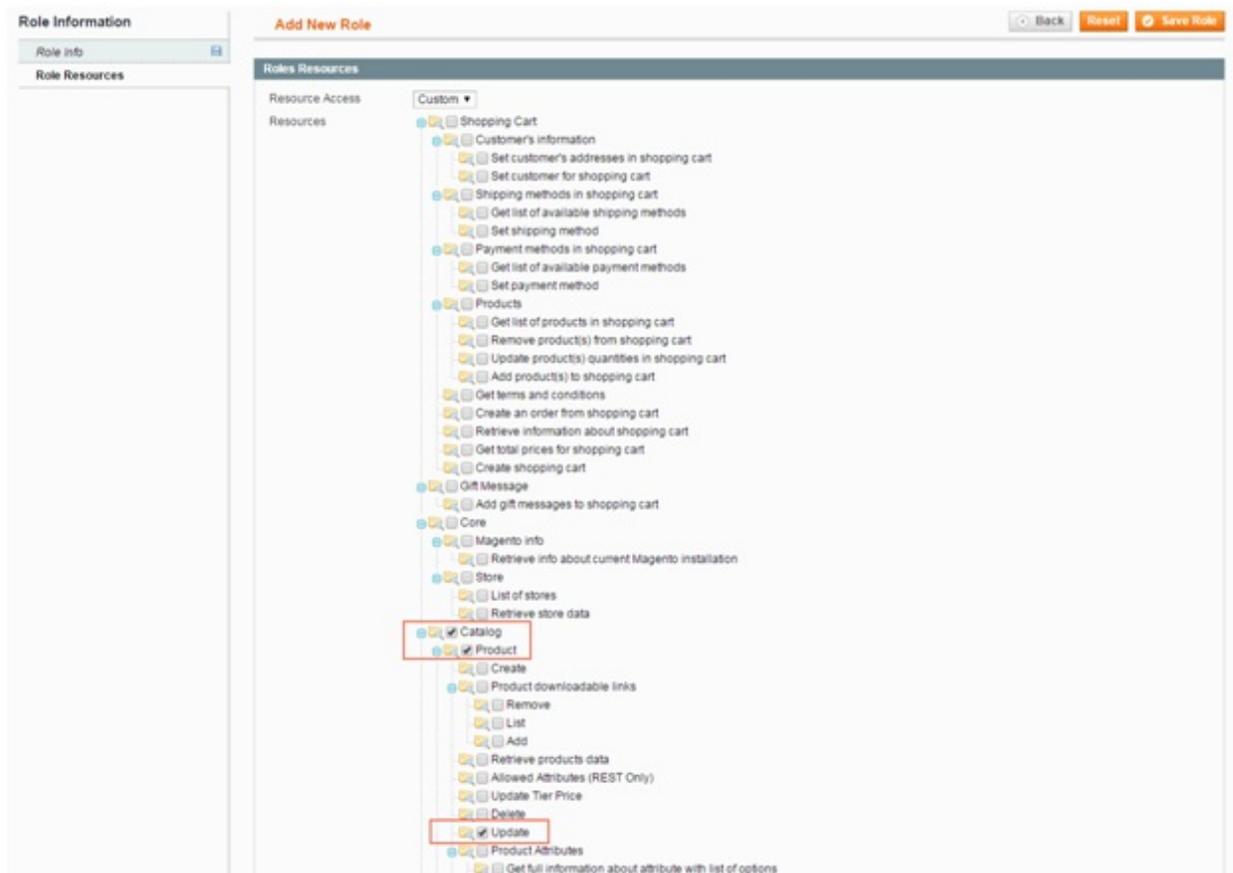


29.9 How to update product price per Magento store view by SOAP API v2

Step 1: Create an an API account to use SOAP

You go to **System -> Web Services -> SOAP/XML-RPC -> Roles** to create Roles

In Role Resources, tick Update (as the following image) to have rights to update products :



Next, you go to **System -> Web Services -> SOAP/XML-RPC -> Users** to create users. In **User Role**, you choose Roles that you have just created.

Step 2: Call API to update product price per store view)

- Assume that the account created in the step 1 has the following information:
 - User name: api
 - Password: api123
- You use this code to run update:

```
// If some stuff requires api authentication,  
// then get a session token  
$session = $client->login('api', 'api123');  
$result = $client->catalogProductUpdate(  
    $session,  
    {product_sku},  
    array(  
        'price' => {price},  
    ),  
    {store}  
);
```

*Note: you need to change some things such as:

- Replace {[magentohost](#)} by the domain of the website that you want to update
- Replace {product_sku} by the SKU of product that you want to update
- Replace {price} by prices that you want to update
- Replace {store} by store code or store idd of store that you want to update product price

30.1 User Guide

30.1.1 Order Delivery Date Extension Overview

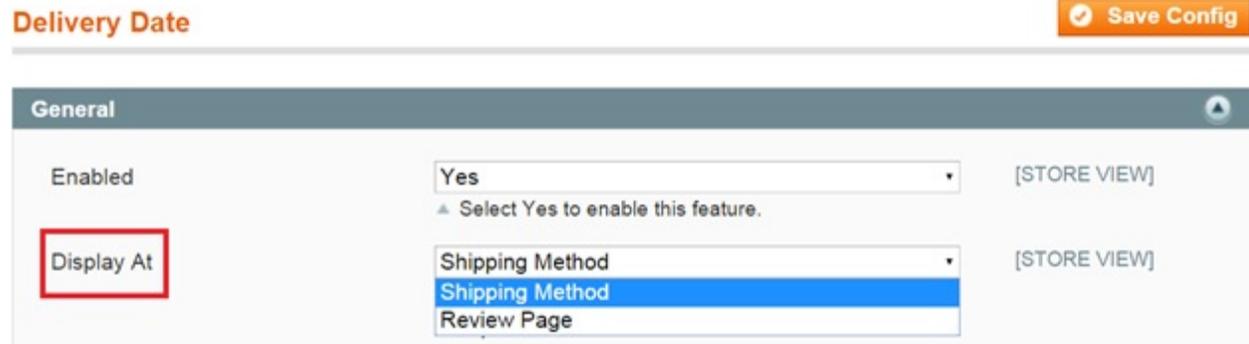
After installing [Order Delivery Date Extension](#), your customers can choose their preferable delivery arrival dates and can leave a message for their postal or delivery person as well. With Order Delivery Date, store owners can set their own regulations including “Cut off Time”, “Processing time”, “Holidays/Exclude Days/Blackout Days” in backend. In specific time and date fixed, customers cannot choose these options and these dates because they will be fader than the others and non-clickable.

30.1.2 How does Order Delivery Date Extension work?

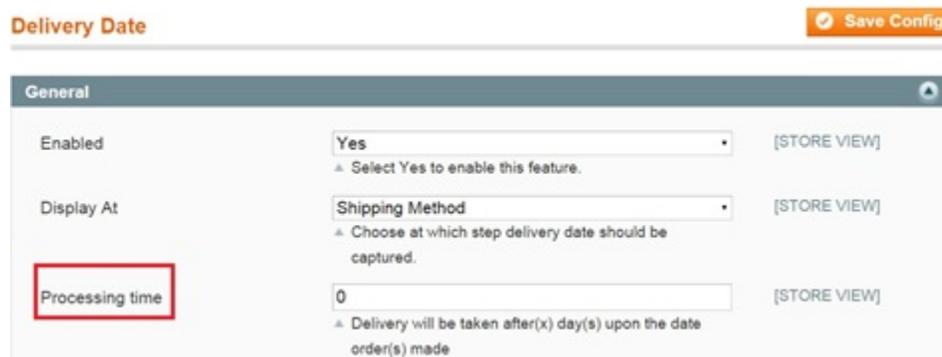
The Order Delivery Date professionally provides an advanced configuration to determine where to place delivery date from customers.

You can set the most convenient delivery schedule for your business and your customers. Check it in **System -> Configuration -> Order Delivery**.

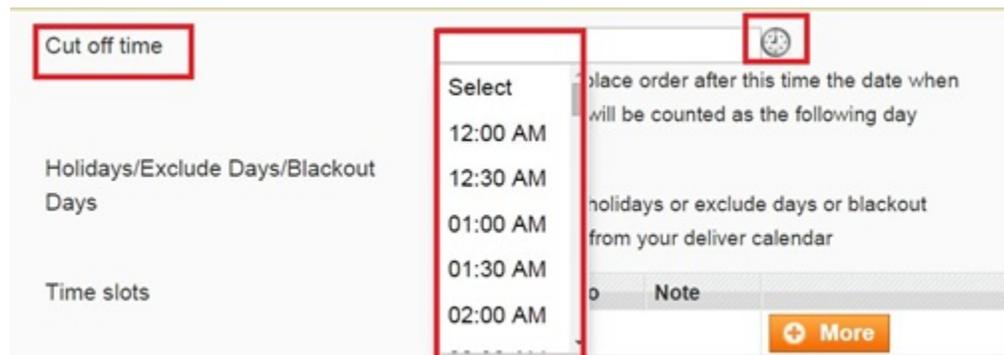
In “**Display at**”, you can set up where the delivery date customization will display. It means the steps in the check-out process at which customers can give their requirements of delivery.



“**Processing time**” is a minimal time that store owner can process purchasing order and start delivering your goods. For instance, admin sets the processing time is 2 days then customers can choose after 3 days processing time.



“**Cut off time**” is defined as the “last hour” they can order goods. If customers place order after this time, the date when orders made will be counted as the following day



With Order Delivery Date, admin can also exclude holidays or blackout days by choosing exactly days from the table “**Holidays/Exclude Days/Blackout Days**”

Holidays/Exclude Days/Blackout Days

Date	Content	
01/30/2015		Delete
01/31/2015		Delete
		Add Match

You can add holidays or exclude days or blackout certain dates from your deliver calendar

Time slots

From	To	Note	
12:00 AM	01:00 PM		Delete
01:00 PM	04:30 PM		Delete
			Add Match

You can add time slots and customer only select one of selections

Disable delivery date

No Day
 Sunday
 Monday
 Tuesday

[STORE VIEW]

These unavailable days will come up as processing days, fader and non-clickable.

Delivery Date:

	February, 2015							
Week	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	
5	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
6	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
7	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	
8	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	

Time: :

Select date Delivery time slot ▼

Beside the days excluded, if a company or store wants to disable any other days which are not suitable for shipping goods for their own reasons or regulations, **“Time Slots”** will be selected as store owners’ wishes. Then customers can choose one of options as below:

Delivery Time Slot: Please select delivery time slot

DO YOU HAVE ANY GIFT ITEM

Add gift options.

Please select delivery time slot

Time slots 1: 12:00 AM - 01:00 AM

Time slots 2: 02:00 AM - 03:00 AM

Time slots 3: 07:00 AM - 10:00 AM

Time slots 4: 01:00 PM - 02:00 PM

CONTINUE

5 PAYMENT INFORMATION

6 ORDER REVIEW

In case, customers find hard to choose one of available slots, they can comment directly in the box “**Delivery comments**”

Delivery Comments:

I want to receive goods out of office hours

Finally, your customer can see all of their requirements including order delivery date info through transactional emails sent out to them

Your order #145000018

Placed on February 25, 2016 1:26:59 AM PST

ITEM IN YOUR ORDER	QTY	PRICE
CHELSEA TEE SKU: mtk000xs	1	\$75.00

Subtotal	\$75.00
Shipping & Handling	\$5.00
Tax	\$6.19
Grand Total	\$86.19

BILL TO:
ckjsc jdjsa
tiuoiw
adsad, Connecticut, 123
United States
T: 123455

SHIP TO:
ckjsc jdjsa
tiuoiw
adsad, Connecticut, 123
United States
T: 123455

SHIPPING METHOD:
Flat Rate - Fixed

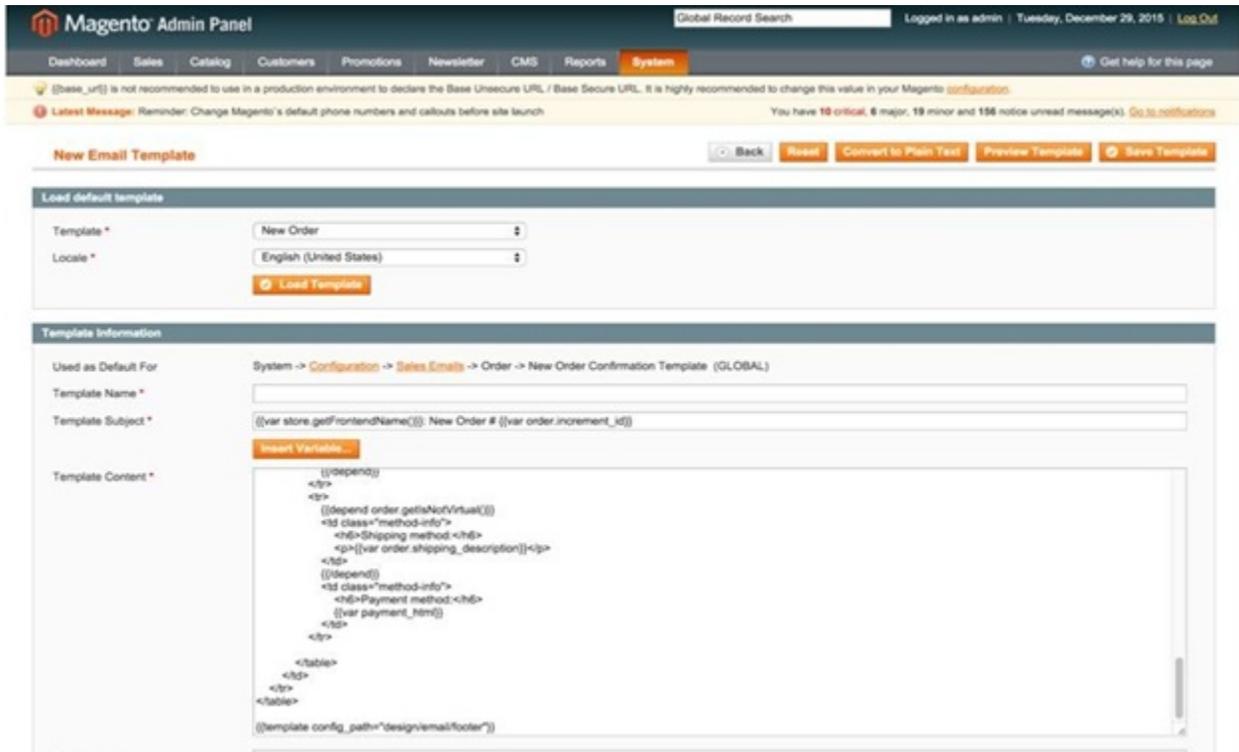
PAYMENT METHOD:
Cash On Delivery

DELIVERY DATE INFORMATION:
Shipping Arrival Date:
29/Feb/2016 in Time slots 4: 01:00 PM - 02:00 PM
Shipping Arrival Comment:
I want to receive products as soon as possible

To add Order Delivery Date info to transactional emails, please check out below example.

We will do an example about inserting delivery date in the New Order Confirmation Template.

Step 1: Go through **System -> Transactional Emails -> Add new template:**



In **Load Default Template:** choose the email template in which you want to add delivery date (New Order in this case) and then click **“Load Template”** button.

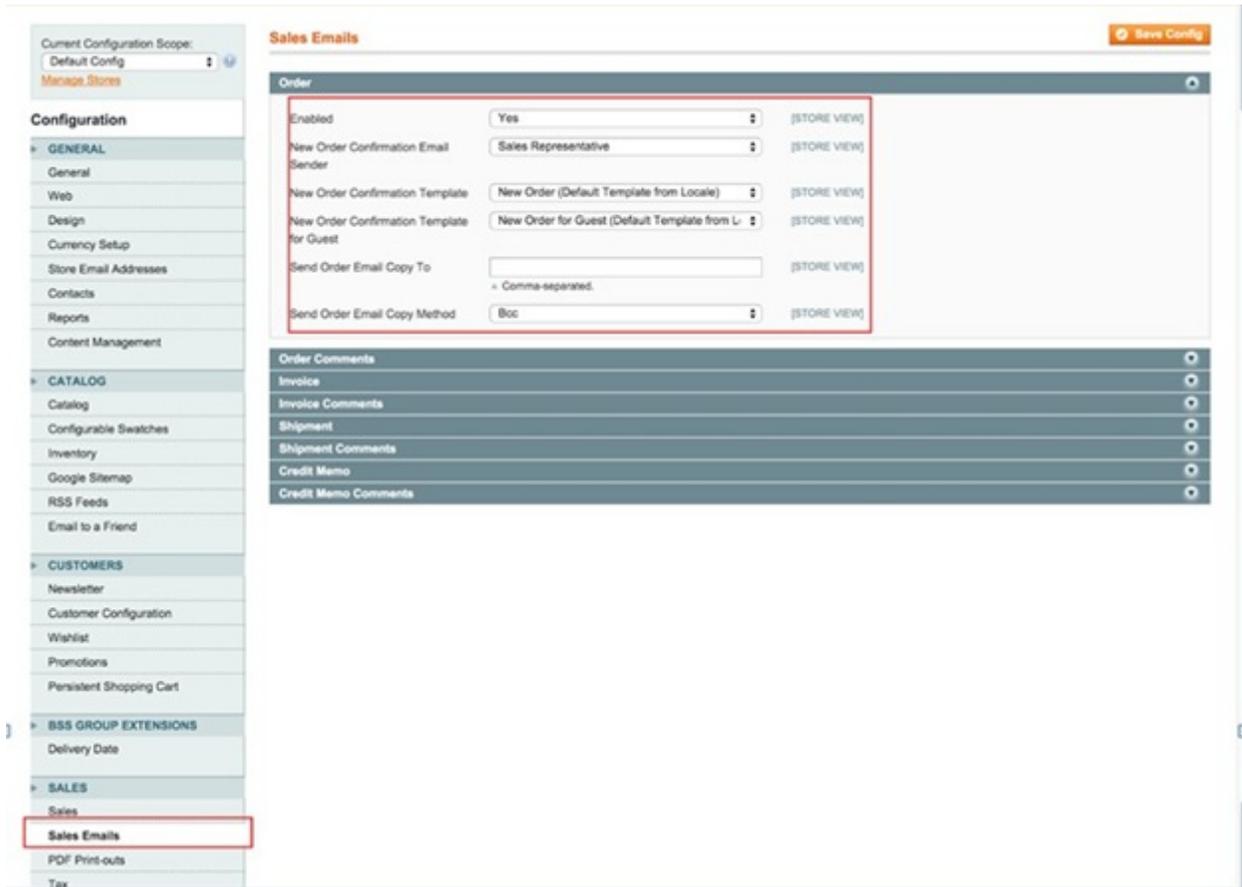
In **Template Information:**

- Firstly, set up Template name (New Order Delivery Date, for example)
- Secondly, set up Delivery Date as your wish in Template Content by adding:
 - + `{{ var deliverydate_arrival_date }}` in corresponding to **Shipping Arrival Date:** xxxx (xxx is the time in each order)
 - + `{{ var deliverydate_comment }}` in corresponding to **Shipping Arrival Comment:** xxxx (xxxx is the comment in each order)
- Finally, click **“Save Template”** button



Step 2: Go through **System -> Configurable -> Sales Emails -> Tab Order**

In **New Order Confirmation Template**, you choose the name of the template created in the previous steps and click “Save Config” button.



As a result, your email to confirm orders sent to customers will be added with delivery date information.

Your order #145000023
Placed on December 29, 2015 4:43:58 AM PST

Item	SKU	Qty	Subtotal
Plaid Cotton Shirt-Royal Blue-L	msj006c-Royal Blue-L	1	\$160.00
		Subtotal	\$160.00
		Shipping & Handling	\$5.00
		Grand Total	\$165.00

BILL TO:
dao duc
test
test, 123
Vatican City
T: 123345

SHIP TO:
dao duc
test
test, 123
Vatican City
T: 123345

SHIPPING METHOD:
Flat Rate - Fixed

PAYMENT METHOD:
Cash On Delivery

DELIVERY DATE INFORMATION
Shipping Arrival Date:
31/Dec/2015 in test1: 12:00 AM - 01:00 AM
Shipping Arrival Comment:
abc

You can do the same when creating/editing other email templates to add delivery date information.

30.2 Compatibility

Our Order Delivery Date is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

30.3 Changelog

Advanced Version 2.0.0:

- Insert delivery date Information in variable tabs: Orders, Invoices, Shipments and Credit Memos
- Embed order delivery information into confirmation email
- Add delivery date information into new order created from backend

- Include order delivery date in pdf files of invoice, shipment and credit memo

Advanced Version 2.0.2:

- Add option to display delivery date on product pages
- Correct time difference issue
- New Feature: Option to show Delivery Date info on Orders Grid View Page

30.4 FAQs

31.1 User Guide

31.1.1 Magento Percentage Tier Price Extension Overview

[Magento Percentage Tier Price extension](#) extends default Magento Tier Price function by allowing admin to define tier prices as a percentage.

- Easily set up tier price based on standard price or group price
- Set tier price in a fixed amount or in percentage
- Automatically update tier price when price is changed

Magento Percentage Tier Price updates the tier prices according to the percentages you have inputted when you update the price of your product. This extension will effectively reduces your time-consuming and optimizes your sale activity.

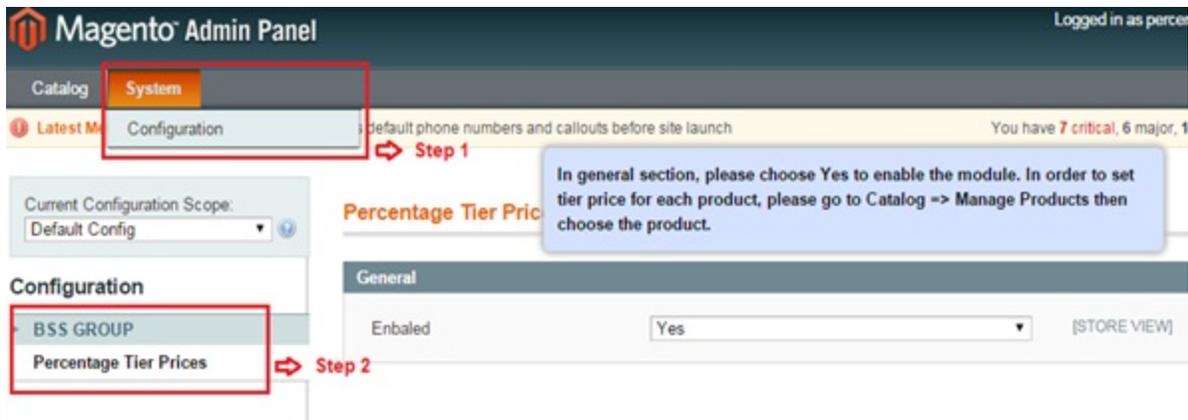
31.1.2 How does Magento Percentage Tier Price work?

1. Instruction Manual

As an admin, you can set up your own store page by the most effective way that supports your trading objective. To polish the website configuration:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel** => **System** => **Configuration**.
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS Commerce** => select **Percentage Tier Price**.

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the following picture:



The **General** tab appears with a box named **“Enabled”** for admin to enable **Percentage Tier Price extension**. There are 2 options in the box: Yes or No. Choose Yes to enable the extension, choose No to not.

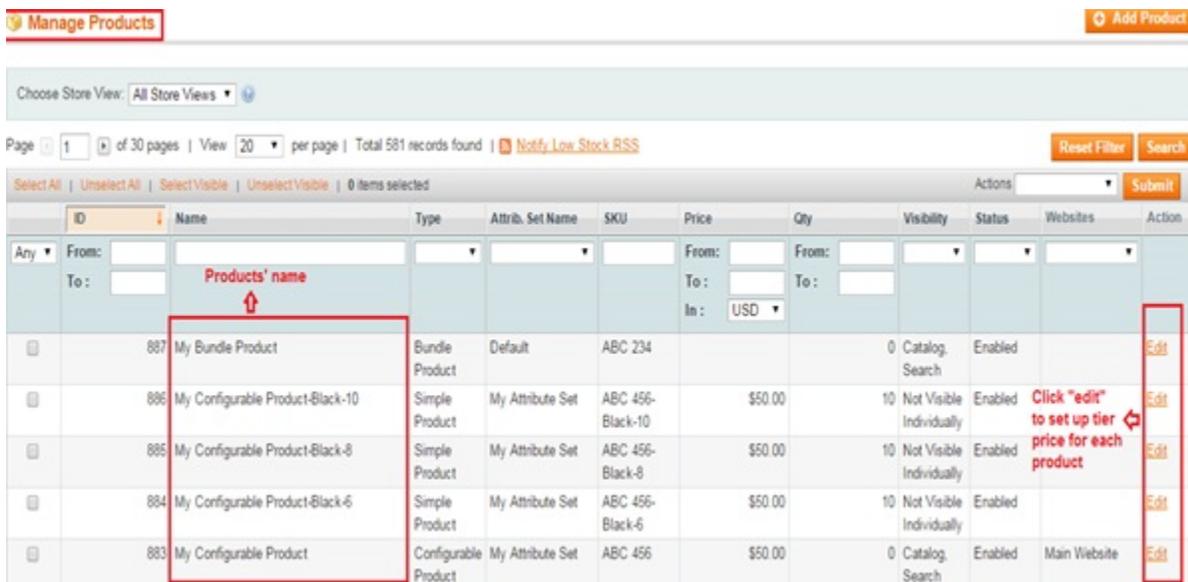
After that, don't forget to click on **Save config** button to continue the configuration.

2. Set up tier price in percentage or a fix amount based on standard price or group price

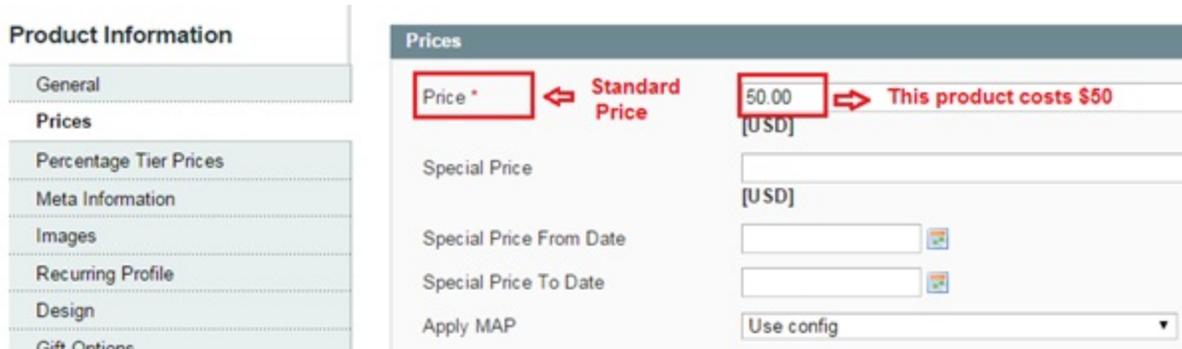
To continue setting up tier price based on standard price or group price for each product, go to **Catalog => Manage Products**.

The list of all products that are available in your own store is shown up.

Click on **Edit** button at right side to set up tier price for each shown-up product on the list.



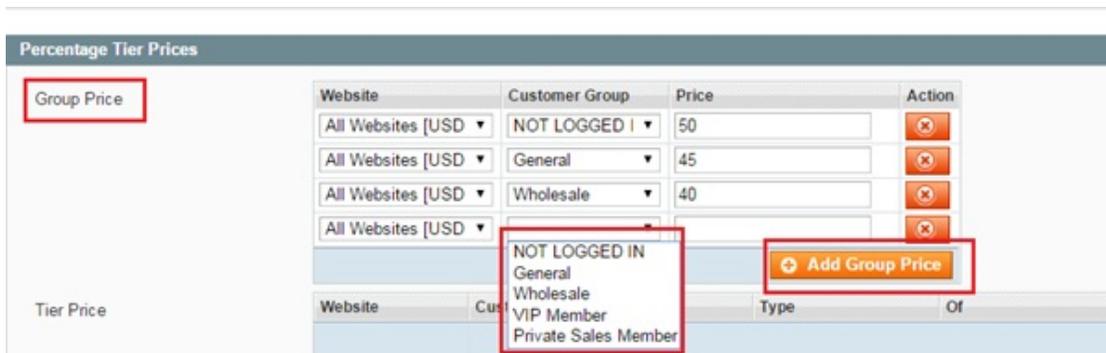
After choose to edit the product price, go to board **Product Information** on the left => choose **Price** to see standard price.



*In this example, standard price of the product which being set up tier price is \$50.

Next, go to **Percentage Tier Price** to set up the tier price as you want. There are 2 sections for admin to configure: **Group Price** and **Tier Price**.

- In **Group Price**, click on **Add Group Price** button to add specific price for each customer group.



*In this example, the group price for “Not logged in” customers is \$50, for “General” customers is \$45, for Wholesalers is \$40.

- In **Tier Price**, click on **Add Tier** button to set up tier price in percentage or a fixed amount for each customer group based on Standard price and Group price.

There are 4 criterias admin need to know and fill in: Customer Group, Quantity, Discount Type, Applied Price, Tier Value.



+In **Customer Group** column, choose each customer group (E.g: Not Logged In, General, Wholesale, VIP Member, Private Sales Member?) you want to set tier price on.

+In **Qty** column, fill minimum quantity of product which each customer group has to buy with to get the tier price.

+In **Type** column, there are 2 types of discount: Fixed and % Discount. Choose one of them to apply on new tier price.

+In **Of** column, choose 1 of 2 options to apply discount on: Standard Price and Group Price. Remember that if admin choose Fixed on Type column, this section is disabled.

+In **Value** column, fill with new value for tier price by a new dollar amount (for fixed discount) or by percentage (for % discount)

*For this example:

-Only when not-logged-in customers buy this product with at least 5 items, they will get the new tier price which is fixed-discount (\$47).

-Only when general customers buy this product with at least 10 items, they will get the new tier price which is 5% discount on the standard price (\$50).

The new tier price = $\$50 - \$50 * 5\% = \$47.5$

-Only when the wholesalers buy this product with at least 15 items, they will get the tier price which is 10% discount on the group price (\$40)

The new tier price = $\$40 - \$40 * 10\% = \$36$

After all, click on **Save** or **Save and continue edit** buttons to save the configuration. All the tier prices will be automatically updated and displayed on frontend.

31.2 Compatibility

Our Percentage Tier Price is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

31.3 Changelog

31.4 FAQs

Pro Configurable Product Grid Table View

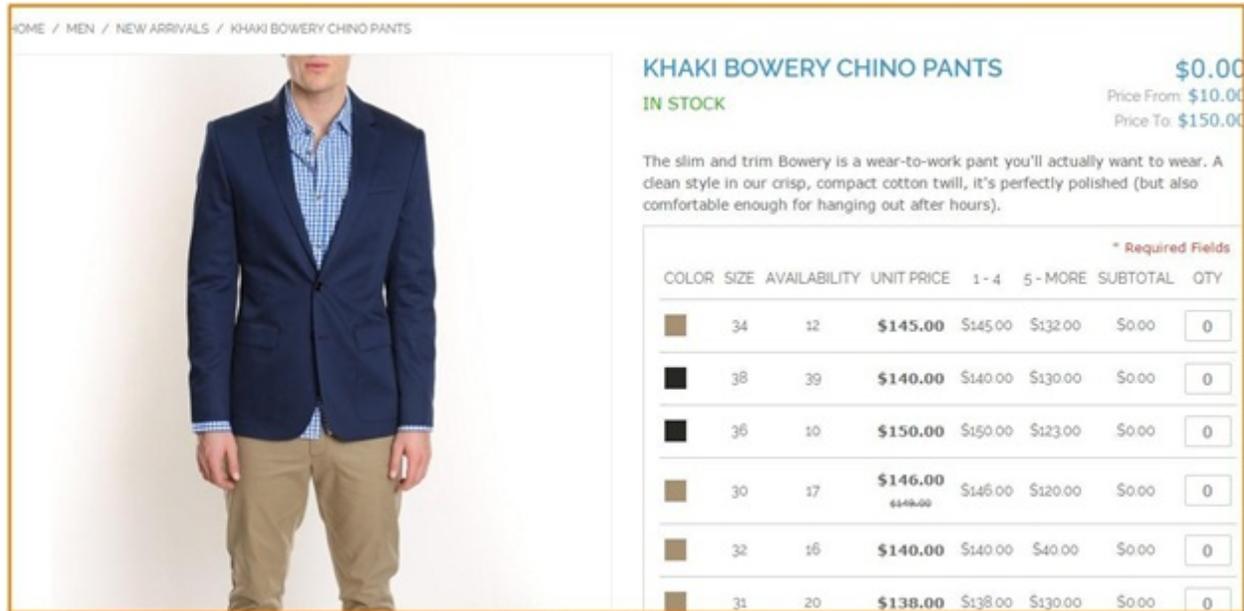
32.1 User Guide

32.1.1 Pro Configurable Product Grid Table View Extension's Overview

Pro Configurable Products Table View enables Magento Shop Owners to display associated products, creating a neat and professional table to show specific features of selected products, especially including color-swatch function built-in and tier price display.

32.1.2 How does Pro Configurable Product Grid Table View Extension work?

1. In the frontend



Detailed explanation

- Professional grid view table for configurable products
- Ability to increase/ decrease product quantity in convenient table and automatically calculate the total payment
- **Built-in Color swatch function**
 - Color swatch displays as label with Magento version 1.4.x to 1.8.x
 - Color swatch displays as picture with Magento version 1.9.x
- Tier price display for configurable product
- Demonstrate in stock/ out of stock status
- Display different price and tier price for each simple product
- Display the price range of configurable product
- Allow customer to add more than one product configuration to cart at a time

* Required Fields

COLOR	SIZE	AVAILABILITY	UNIT PRICE	1 - 4	5 - MORE	SUBTOTAL	QTY
	34	12	\$145.00	\$145.00	\$132.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	38	39	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$130.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	36	10	\$150.00	\$150.00	\$123.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	30	17	\$146.00 \$149.00	\$146.00	\$120.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	32	16	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$40.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	31	20	\$138.00	\$138.00	\$130.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	36	20	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$120.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	38	20	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$10.00	\$0.00	<input type="text" value="0"/>

 **Various prices and tier prices for each simple product**

2. How to configure Pro Configurable Products Grid Table View Extension in the backend

Go through System -> Configuration -> BSS COMMERCE -> Configurable Grid View

Enabled	Yes ▼	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ "Yes" option to enable, "No" option to disable.	
Enabled jQuery Library	Yes ▼	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ "Yes" option to enable, "No" option to disable.	
Display Stock Availability	No ▼	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ If enabled the products qty column will be enabled in configurable grid view table	
Show Subtotal	Yes ▼	[STORE VIEW]
	▲ If enabled, subtotal column will be displayed in the configurable grid view table.	

- In **Enable**: Choose **Yes/ No** to enable or disable the module
- In **Enable jQuery Library**: Choose **Yes/ No** to enable or disable **jQuery Library**. You can also choose to display Stock Availability. When you enable it, you

can see stock availability in the configurable grid table.

- In **Show Subtotal**, you can choose Yes or No to display or hide the subtotal column

Show Tier Price	Yes ▼	[STORE VIEW]
Use Option Swatch	No ▼	[STORE VIEW]
Configurable Product Use Simple Price	No ▼	[STORE VIEW]
Show Unit Price	Yes ▼	[STORE VIEW]

- You can choose to show or hide **Tier Price** by selecting **Yes** or **No**
- In **Use Option Swatch**: Choose **Yes** or **No** to **enable/disable** Swatch
- In **Configurable Product Use Simple Price**:

If you choose Yes, you have to do the two following things:

+You have to set different prices for simple products.

Go through: **Catalog -> Manage Catalog**

You click to each simple product to set price and choose **Price** in **Product Information**:

Black Nolita Cami-Black-XS (Clothing)

Back Reset Delete Duplicate Save Save and Continue Edit

Prices

Price * 150.00 [USD] [GLOBAL]

Group Price

Website	Customer Group	Price	Action
Add Group Price			

Special Price [USD] [GLOBAL]

The Special Price is active only when lower than the Actual Price

Special Price From Date 5/8/2013 [WEBSITE]

Special Price To Date [WEBSITE]

Tier Price

Website	Customer Group	Qty	Price	Action
All Websites [USD]	ALL GROUPS	and above		Add Tier

Apply MAP Use config [WEBSITE]

Display Actual Price Use config [WEBSITE]

Manufacturer's Suggested Retail Price [USD] [GLOBAL]

Tax Class * Taxable Goods [WEBSITE]

Please enable/disable any module functions and test on the [frontend](#).

In **Price**: you set specific price for the product

+Set different tier prices of simple products for ranges of quantities (the quantity ranges of products are the same):

In **Tier Price**, click **Add Tier** to set up specific tier price for each range of quantity and customer group

The pro configurable product grid table view is displayed as below:

KHAKI BOWERY CHINO PANTS \$0.00

IN STOCK Price From: \$10.00
Price To: \$150.00

The slim and trim Bowery is a wear-to-work pant you'll actually want to wear. A clean style in our crisp, compact cotton twill, it's perfectly polished (but also comfortable enough for hanging out after hours).

COLOR	SIZE	AVAILABILITY	UNIT PRICE	1 - 4	5 - MORE	SUBTOTAL	QTY
■	34	12	\$145.00	\$145.00	\$132.00	\$0.00	0
■	38	29	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$130.00	\$0.00	0
■	36	10	\$150.00	\$150.00	\$123.00	\$0.00	0
■	30	17	\$146.00 ***.00	\$146.00	\$120.00	\$0.00	0
■	32	16	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$40.00	\$0.00	0
■	31	20	\$138.00	\$138.00	\$130.00	\$0.00	0
■	36	20	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$120.00	\$0.00	0
■	38	20	\$140.00	\$140.00	\$10.00	\$0.00	0

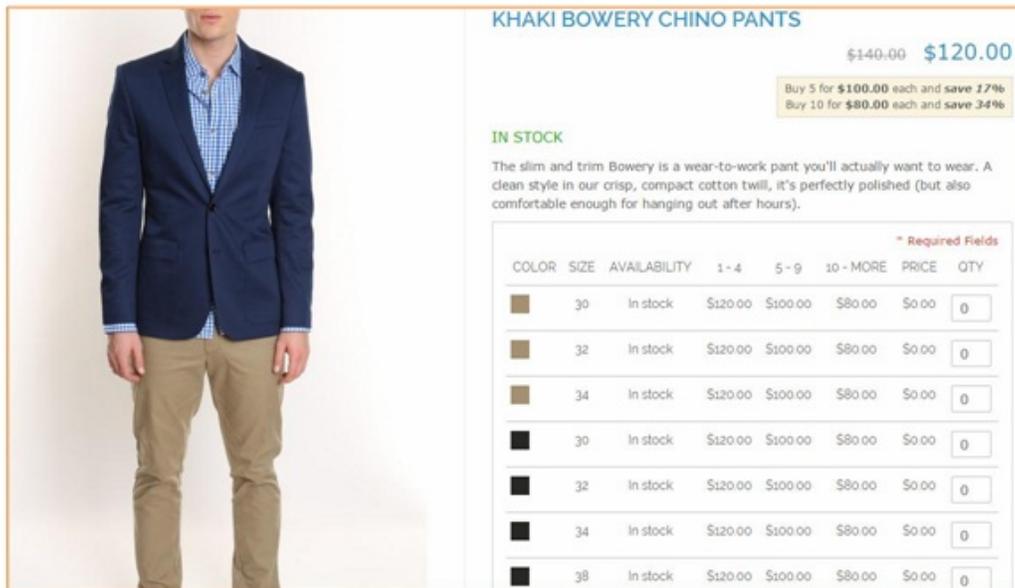
ADD TO CART

Add to Wishlist | Add to Compare

If you choose No, this extension will display the prices of configurable products instead of the different prices of

simple products.

The pro configurable product grid table view is displayed as below:



- In **Show Unit Price**: Choose **Yes** to display unit price column in the grid table view and choose **No** to hide it.

32.2 Compatibility

Our Pro Configurable Grid Table View is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

32.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0:

- Showing table price with product tier price
- Showing color swatch
- Modify product quantity
- Including product attributes

Version 1.0.1:

- Compatible with Magento option of sending the user to the cart or leaving them on the page
- Auto selected quantity on product config page when editing the item from shopping cart
- Using the increment qty control of current theme instead of forcing to use the up down arrow

Version 1.0.8: Stable Version

Version 1.1.1: Update New Feature

- Support Simple Product Pricing

32.4 Common Problems

How to fix “Please specify the product’s option(s)” error?

Common error with [Pro configurable product grid table view extension](#) is conflict with ajax add to cart extension. The conflict is shown with error message “Please specify the product’s option(s)”

Please find below some ways to fix this issue with some ajax add to cart extension from various extension’s provider.

1. Conflict with Smartwave_Ajaxcart

Edit file : Smartwave/Ajaxcart/controller/IndexController.php

- Edit function addAction();
- Edit extends => Bss_Configurablegridview_CartController

Sample file: <https://www.dropbox.com/s/1xzfpaqoftlk3t/IndexController.php?dl=0>

2. Conflict with PT_Ajax

edit file: PT/Ajax/controllers/Checkout/CartController.php

- Edit extends Bss_Configurablegridview_CartController
- Edit function addAction();
- Edit function updateItemOptionsAction();

Sample file: https://www.dropbox.com/s/qvlfx1jg2z6743r/PT_Ajax_CartController.php?dl=0

3. Conflict with Amasty Ajax add to cart

In the file: app/code/local/Amasty/Cart/controllers/AjaxController.php

Add function: _initProduct();

Edit function indexAction() into:

```
public function indexAction()
{
    $idProduct = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParam('product_id');
    $idProduct = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParam('product') ? Mage::app()->
->getRequest()->getParam('product') : $idProduct;
    $IsProductView = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParam('IsProductView');
    $params = Mage::app()->getRequest()->getParams();
    $related = $this->getRequest()->getParam('related_product');
    unset($params['product_id']);
    unset($params['IsProductView']);

    if($this->getRequest()->getParam('configurable_grid_table') == 'Yes') {
        $params = $this->getRequest()->getParams();
        $config_super_attributes = $params['super_attribute_quickshop'];
        $cart = Mage::getSingleton('checkout/cart');
        $config_table_qty = $params['config_table_qty'];
        $options = isset($params['options']) ? $params['options'] : null;

        $qty_config = array();

        foreach($config_table_qty as $sup_qty => $_super_qty) {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        $qty_config[$sup_qty] = $_super_qty;
        $required += $_super_qty;
    }

    if($required == 0) {
        $this->_getSession()->addError($this->__('Cannot add the item to shopping_
↪cart. '));
        $this->_goBack();
        return;
    }

    $config_table_qty = $qty_config;

    foreach($config_super_attributes as $sId => $config_attribute) {
        if(!isset($config_table_qty[$sId]) || $config_table_qty[$sId]==' ' || !is_
↪numeric($config_table_qty[$sId])){
            if($config_table_qty[$sId] != '0'){
                $config_table_qty[$sId] = 1;
            }
        }
    }

    if(isset($config_table_qty[$sId]) && $config_table_qty[$sId]!=' ' && $config_
↪table_qty[$sId] > 0) {
        $product= $this->_initProduct();
        $related= $this->getRequest()->getParam('related_product');

        if (!$product) {
            $this->_goBack();
            return;
        }

        if(isset($config_table_qty[$sId])) {
            $params = array();
            $params['qty'] = $config_table_qty[$sId];
            $params['super_attribute'] = $config_attribute;

            if($options != null) $params['options'] = $options;

            try {
                if($params['qty'] > 0 && $params['qty']!='') {
                    $cart->addProduct($product, $params);
                    if (!empty($related)) {
                        $cart->addProductsByIds(explode(',', $related));
                    }
                    $cart->save();
                    Mage::getSingleton('checkout/session')->setCartWasUpdated(true);
                    if (!$cart->getQuote()->getHasError()){
                        $responseText = $this->addToCartResponse($product, $cart,
↪$IsProductView, $params,0);
                    }
                } else {
                    $responseText = $this->showOptionsResponse($product,
↪$IsProductView);
                }
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $responseText = $this->addToCartResponse($product, $cart,
↪$IsProductView, $params, $e->getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        Mage::logException($e);
    }
}
}
} else {
    if($related) unset($params['related_product']);
    $product = Mage::getModel('catalog/product')
        ->setStoreId(Mage::app()->getStore()->getId())
        ->load($idProduct);
    $responseText = '';
    if ($product->getId())
    {
        if(!array_key_exists('qty', $params)) {
            $params['qty'] = $product->getStockItem()->getMinSaleQty();
        }
        try{
            if(($product->getTypeId() == 'simple' && !($product->
↪getRequiredOptions() || (Mage::getStoreConfig('amcart/general/display_options') &&
↪$product->getHasOptions()))
                || count($params) > 2
                || ($product->getTypeId() == 'virtual' && !($product->
↪getRequiredOptions() || (Mage::getStoreConfig('amcart/general/display_options') &&
↪$product->getHasOptions()))))
            {
                $cart = Mage::getSingleton('checkout/cart');
                $cart->addProduct($product, $params);
                if (!empty($related)) {
                    $cart->addProductsByIds(explode(',', $related));
                }
                $cart->save();
                Mage::getSingleton('checkout/session')->setCartWasUpdated(true);
                if (!$cart->getQuote()->getHasError()) {
                    $responseText = $this->addToCartResponse($product, $cart,
↪$IsProductView, $params, 0);
                }
            }
            else{
                $responseText = $this->showOptionsResponse($product,
↪$IsProductView);
            }
        }
        catch (Exception $e) {
            $responseText = $this->addToCartResponse($product, $cart,
↪$IsProductView, $params, $e->getMessage());
            Mage::logException($e);
        }
    }
}
$this->getResponse()->setBody($responseText);
}

```

Sample file: <https://www.dropbox.com/s/vz9bjgx9rd2ue97/AjaxController.php?dl=0>

4. Conflict with Magentothem_Ajaxcartsuper

Edit file: /app/code/local/Magentothem/Ajaxcartsuper/controllers/AjaxcartController.php

Edit function addAction() to:

```

{quote}public function addAction()
{
    header("Content-type: application/json");

    if($this->getRequest()->getParam('callback')) {
        $cart = $this->_getCart();
        $ajaxData = array();
        $productInfo = array();
        $params = $this->getRequest()->getParams();

        try {
            if($this->getRequest()->getParam('configurable_grid_table') == 'Yes')
↳{
                $params = $this->getRequest()->getParams();
                $config_super_attributes = $params['super_attribute_quickshop'];
                $cart = $this->_getCart();
                $config_table_qty = $params['config_table_qty'];
                $options = isset($params['options']) ? $params['options'] : null;
                $qty_config = array();
                foreach($config_table_qty as $sup_qty => $_super_qty) {
                    $qty_config[$sup_qty] = $_super_qty;
                    $required += $_super_qty;
                }
                if($required == 0) {
                    $this->_getSession()->addError($this->__('Cannot add the item_
↳to shopping cart.));
                    $this->_goBack();
                    return;
                }
                $config_table_qty = $qty_config;
                foreach($config_super_attributes as $sId => $config_attribute) {
                    if(isset($config_table_qty[$sId]) && $config_table_qty[$sId] !=
↳' && $config_table_qty[$sId] > 0) {
                        $product= $this->_initProduct();
                        $related= $this->getRequest()->getParam('related_product');
                        if (!$product) {
                            $this->_goBack();
                            return;
                        }
                        if(isset($config_table_qty[$sId])) {
                            $params2 = array();
                            $params2['qty'] = $config_table_qty[$sId];
                            $params2['super_attribute'] = $config_attribute;
                            if($options != null) $params2['options'] = $options;
                            if($params2['qty'] > 0 && $params2['qty'] != '') {
                                $cart->addProduct($product, $params2);
                                if (!empty($related)) {
                                    $cart->addProductsByIds(explode(',', $related));
                                }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            } else {
                if (isset($params['qty'])) {
                    $filter = new Zend_Filter_LocalizedToNormalized(

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        array('locale' => Mage::app()->getLocale()->
↳getLocaleCode())
        );

        $params['qty'] = $filter->filter($params['qty']);
    }

    $product = $this->_initProduct();
    if($params['type_product']==1) {
        $productInfo['type_product'] = $product->getTypeId();
        $this->getResponse()->setBody(Mage::helper('core')->
↳jsonEncode($productInfo));
        return ;
    }

    $related = $this->getRequest()->getParam('related_product');

    /**
     * Check product availability
     */
    if (!$product) {
        $ajaxData['status'] = 0;
        $ajaxData['message'] = $this->__('Unable to find Product_
↳ID');
    }

    $cart->addProduct($product, $params);

    if (!empty($related)) {
        $cart->addProductsByIds(explode(',', $related));
    }

    $cart->save();
    $this->_getSession()->setCartWasUpdated(true);

    /**
     * @todo remove wishlist observer processAddToCart
     */

    Mage::dispatchEvent('checkout_cart_add_product_complete',
        array('product' => $product, 'request' => $this->getRequest(),
↳'response' => $this->getResponse())
    );

    if (!$this->_getSession()->getNoCartRedirect(true)) {
        if (!$cart->getQuote()->getHasError()){
            $message = $this->__('%s was added to your shopping cart.',
↳Mage::helper('core')->escapeHtml($product->getName()));
↳Mage::helper('core')->escapeHtml($product->getName()));
            // $this->_getSession()->addSuccess($message);

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        $ajaxData['status'] = 1;
        $this->loadLayout();
        $sidebarCart = "";
        $mini_cart = "";
        $toplink = "";

        if ($this->getLayout()->getBlock('cart_sidebar')) {
            $sidebarCart = $this->getLayout()->getBlock('cart_sidebar
↵')->toHtml();
        }

        if ($this->getLayout()->getBlock('cart_sidebar_mini')) {
            $mini_cart = $this->getLayout()->getBlock('cart_sidebar_
↵mini')->toHtml();
        }

        if ($this->getLayout()->getBlock('top.links')) {
            $toplink = $this->getLayout()->getBlock('top.links')->
↵toHtml();
        }

        $pimage = Mage::helper('catalog/image')->init($product,
↵'small_image')->resize(55);
        $ajaxData['sidebar_cart'] = $sidebarCart;
        $ajaxData['top_link'] = $toplink;
        $ajaxData['mini_cart'] = $mini_cart;
        //show or hide cofirmbox when add product to cart

        if (Mage::getStoreConfig('ajaxcartsuper/ajaxcartsuper_config/
↵show_confirm')) {
            $ajaxData['product_info'] = Mage::helper('ajaxcartsuper/
↵data')->productHtml($product->getName(), $product->getProductUrl(), $pimage);
        }

    }

} catch (Mage_Core_Exception $e) {
    $msg = "";

    if ($this->_getSession()->getUseNotice(true)) {
        $msg = $e->getMessage();
    } else {
        $messages = array_unique(explode("\n", $e->getMessage()));
        foreach ($messages as $message) {
            $msg .= $message . '<br/>';
        }
    }

    $ajaxData['status'] = 0;
    $ajaxData['message'] = $msg;
    $ajaxData['type_product_ajax'] = 1;

} catch (Exception $e) {
    $ajaxData['status'] = 0;
    $ajaxData['message'] = $this->__('Cannot add the this product to_
↵shopping cart.');
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        }
        $this->getResponse()->setBody($this->getRequest()->getParam('callback').'('
↪'.Mage::helper('core')->jsonEncode($ajaxData).')');
        return;

    } else {
        parent::addAction();
    }
} {quote}

```

Sample file: <https://www.dropbox.com/s/frkidfqdke3p5kp/AjaxcartController.php?dl=0>

32.5 FAQs

32.5.1 Features

What is the difference between Configurable product grid table view and Pro configurable product grid table view?

The differences are mainly concentrated on some advanced features of Pro configurable product grid table view compared with normal version:

- Support tier prices: specific price for each range of quantity
- Support Color Swatch
- Support Simple product pricing

What is Color Swatch function?

Color swatch is the function that helps customers to show configurable products with different colors and designs when they click to each attribute such as color, fabric or size (attributes depend on your configurable products)

What is the function of simple product pricing?

Simple product pricing means that the module will display different prices and tier prices of simple products instead of configurable products in the table

Can I add multiple products to cart at once?

Yes, of course. You absolutely add a lot of products to cart at one time just by choosing your desired quantities.

In what cases does color swatch display as a label or as a picture?

- Color swatch displays as label with Magento version 1.4.x to 1.8.x
- Color swatch displays as picture with Magento version 1.9.x

Can I show price ranges in the category page?

Yes, you can. Price ranges of configurable products are displayed in the category page under both grid list and product list.

How is the price range of a configurable product shown in the category page determined?

The price range of configurable product is determined by the lowest price (or tier prices) and the highest price (or tier prices) of children products

32.5.2 Guide

Can I enable JQuery Library in your extension?

Yes, it supports you to enable JQuery Library.

If I set Yes for Configurable products use simple price, what will I have to do next?

When you use simple product pricing for your configurable products, you have to set up prices and tier prices for children product by going through **Catalog-> Manage Product** and choose each simple product to set up these prices in the Price section.

If I do not choose to use Simple product pricing, so what are the prices of children products displayed in the table and May I make any configuration in the Price section of children products?

In case you do not want to use simple product pricing, prices of children products are prices of your configurable products. It means that these prices (or tier prices) of simple products are the same in the table.

So you needn't configure anything in the price section of each simple product other than set No for Configurable products use simple price

How to disable Color Swatch for my configurable products?

You go through System->Configuration->Configurable Grid View

In Use Option Swatch, you set No to disable this function

Redirect Cart to Checkout Page

33.1 User Guide

33.2 Compatibility

Our Magento Redirect Cart to Checkout Page is compatible with:

- Community: 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x

33.3 Changelog

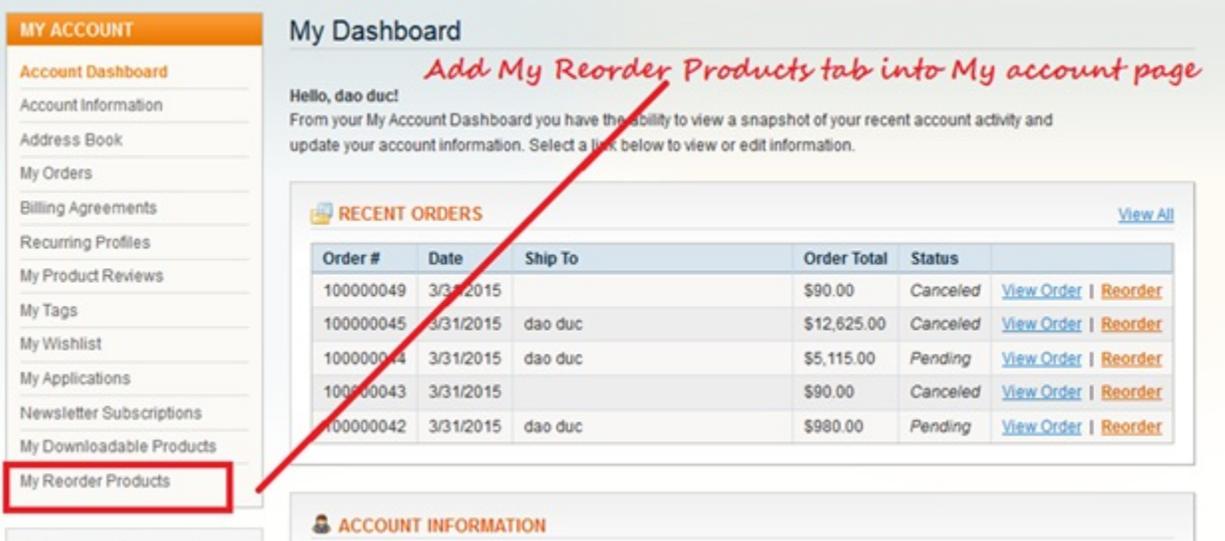
33.4 FAQs

34.1 User Guide

34.1.1 Magento Reorder Extension Overview

Magento Reorder Products is an excellent extension that facilitates customers to reorder products on their dashboard. Your customers can rearrange product positions as they wish, which increases their satisfaction with your services. Magento Reorder Product Extension allows customers to quickly reorder their previously chosen products and make any necessary changes as they wish!

This extension enables to separate reorder product section on customer account page to a board named **My reorder product** which helps customers reorder any products they want instantly and easily add them back to cart as fastest as possible for checkout.



Add My Reorder Products tab into My account page

Hello, dao duc!

From your My Account Dashboard you have the ability to view a snapshot of your recent account activity and update your account information. Select a link below to view or edit information.

RECENT ORDERS [View All](#)

Order #	Date	Ship To	Order Total	Status	View Order	Reorder
100000049	3/31/2015		\$90.00	Canceled	View Order	Reorder
100000045	3/31/2015	dao duc	\$12,625.00	Canceled	View Order	Reorder
100000044	3/31/2015	dao duc	\$5,115.00	Pending	View Order	Reorder
100000043	3/31/2015		\$90.00	Canceled	View Order	Reorder
100000042	3/31/2015	dao duc	\$980.00	Pending	View Order	Reorder

MY ACCOUNT

- Account Dashboard
- Account Information
- Address Book
- My Orders
- Billing Agreements
- Recurring Profiles
- My Product Reviews
- My Tags
- My Wishlist
- My Applications
- Newsletter Subscriptions
- My Downloadable Products
- My Reorder Products**

ACCOUNT INFORMATION

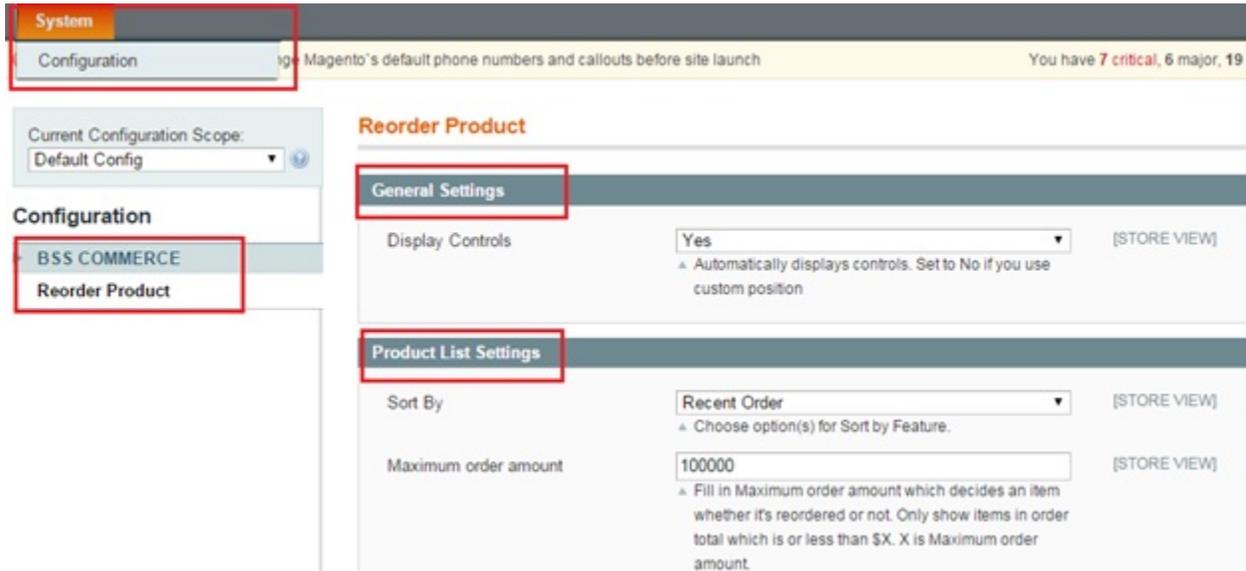
34.1.2 How Magento Reorder Extension works

In order to configure BSS Reorder extension,

Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel => System => Configuration**

Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS Commerce => select Reorder Products**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the following picture:



There are two sections for admin to continue configuration: **General Settings** and **Products List Settings**.

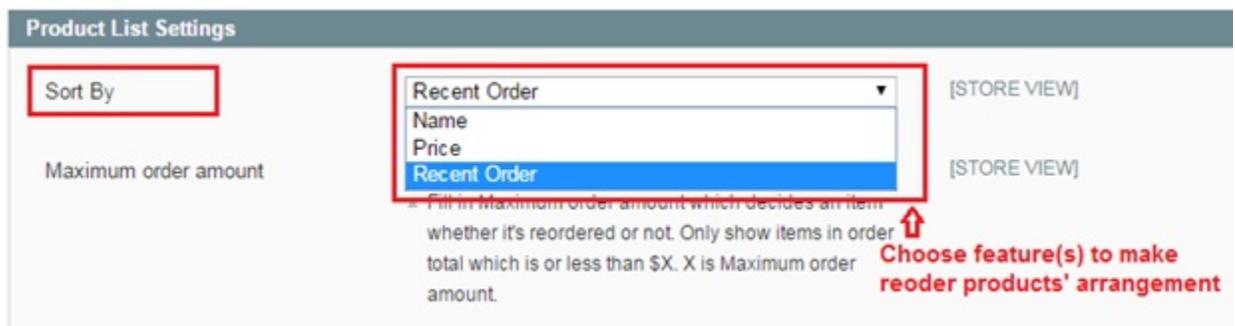
- First section: **General Settings**

In **Display Controls** box, choose Yes to enable the extension. To disable all functions of this extension, choose No.

- Second section: **Product List settings**

Sort By box allows admin to choose from listed options for setting the arrangement of reorder products in “My Reorder Products” board of customer account page.

Admin can set customer’s reoder products by 3 following features: Name, Price, Recent Order.



In **Maximum Order amount** box, type the maximum amount of orders that can be reordered.

For all orders with total amount is more than this typed amount will not be able to be reordered and will not be displayed in “My reorder products” board of customer account page.

Product List Settings

Sort By: Recent Order [STORE VIEW]
▲ Choose option(s) for Sort by Feature.

Maximum order amount: 100000 [STORE VIEW] ⇨ type maximum order amount
▲ Fill in Maximum order amount which decides an item whether it's reordered or not. Only show items in order total which is or less than \$X. X is Maximum order amount.

After all above configuration is done, you save the configuration by clicking on **Save config** button to the right of the backend. To see the change, go to frontend and reload the page.

34.2 Compatibility

Our Reorder Product is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

34.3 Changelog

Version 1.2.2:

- Allow reorder cancelled orders

34.4 FAQs

35.1 User Guide

35.2 Compatibility

Our Magento Rich Snippet is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

35.3 Changelog

35.4 FAQs

36.1 User Guide

36.1.1 SEO Layered Navigation Extension Overview

Filtering product with layered navigation is a very useful tool that Magento supports users. However, it still has a lot of disadvantages: selecting only one option at once; inflexible price filter; unfriendly URLs? It will take much valuable time as well as be inconvenient for users. With the aim of providing best experience in filtering product by layered navigation, BSSCommerce launched [Magento SEO Layered Navigation Extension](#) to improve all above drawbacks of Magento default.

[SEO Layered Navigation Extension](#) provides powerful functions that help users to filter products in the most effective way. Thus, your site will become more professional and user- friendlier, which is an important factor that keeps loyal customers as well as enhance business performance.

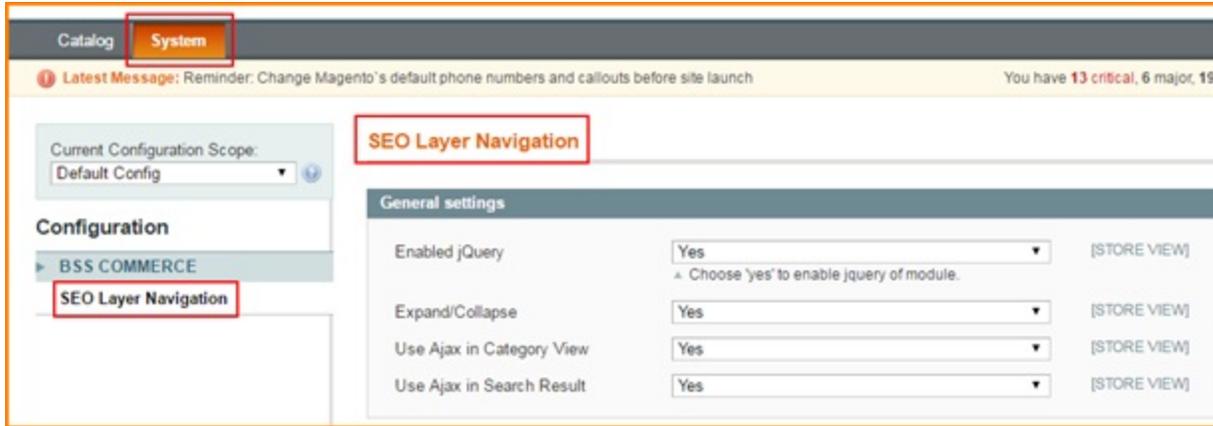
36.1.2 How does SEO Layered Navigation Extension work?

1. SEO Layered Navigation Setting

To make configuration of this module, follow these below instruction:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel =>System => Configuration**
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS Commerce => select SEO Layered Navigation**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the below picture:

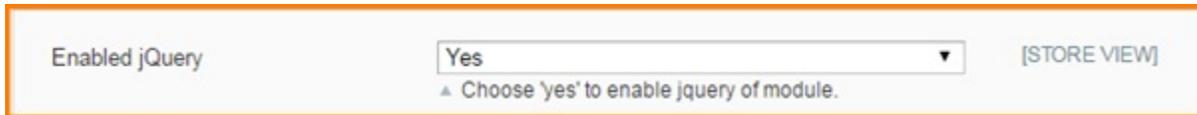


There are 4 main parts you can fix as your wishes: General settings, Price Filter, Decimal Filter, SEO Filter

1.1 General settings

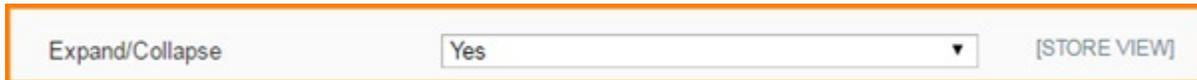
- **Enable jQuery**

When setting up SEO Layered Navigation, you can also control JQuery Library in your website. You can select “Yes” in Enable JQuery to allow JQuery Library combining with SEO Layered Navigation Extension when it runs on your website.

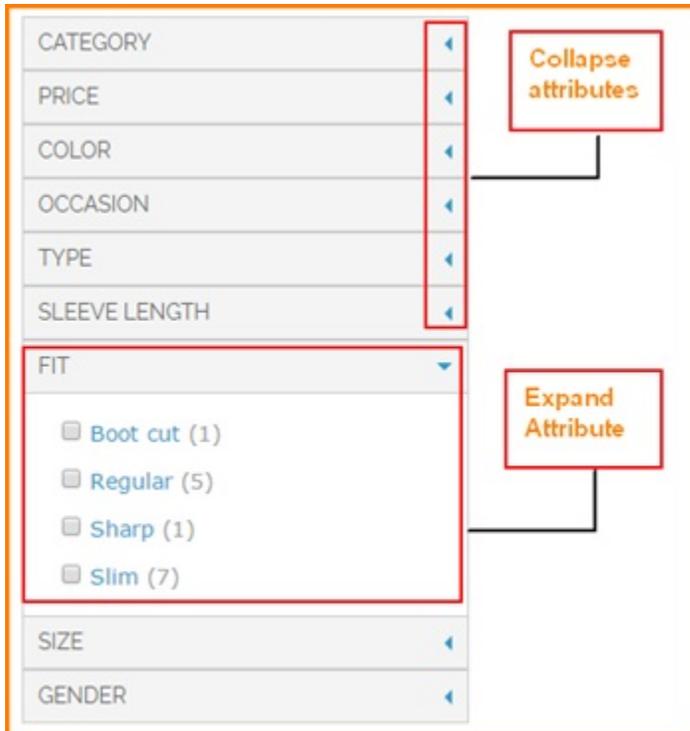


- **Expand/Collapse**

In Expand/ Collapse, choose Yes/No to enable/ disable expand/ collapse function.



When this function is enabled, in frontend, users will have choice of expanding or collapsing an attribute as wish.



- **Use Ajax in Category View/ Search Result**

You can manage whether to use Ajax to load product or not. Using Ajax will help you to load product only with changed part instead of the whole page.

Select Yes/No to enable/disable Ajax loading for category view and search result separately.

Use Ajax in Category View	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Use Ajax in Search Result	Yes	[STORE VIEW]

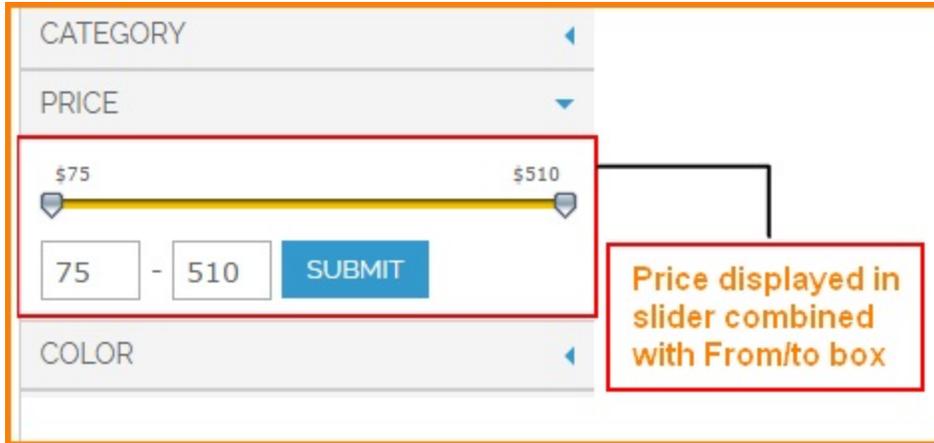
1.2 Price Filter

- **Display**

In Display box, you can choose how to display price filter from 4 forms: Default, Slider, From/to, and finally combination of Slider and From/to

- Default: price will be displayed in fixed ranges as default of Magento
- Slider: price will be displayed in a slider which allows users to slide leftward and rightward to choose a suitable price range
- From/to: users can add specific values into 2 input boxes and click Submit to select a suitable price range
- Slider and From/to: users can use both slider and input box to filter price

This is an example of Slider and From/to displaying:



- **Slider Step**

In this field, you can decide how many price units will be added/ subtracted each time users slide rightward/ leftward. For example, if you set up Slider Price = 3, users only can slider from \$1 to \$4 to \$7 and so on.

- **Show Currency in Slider**

If you choose Yes, the currency will be displayed beside price in slider. If you choose No, it will be hidden.

- **Slider Skin**

In this field, you can choose the appearance of slider with 4 forms: Classic/ Round/ Plastic/ Round Plastic

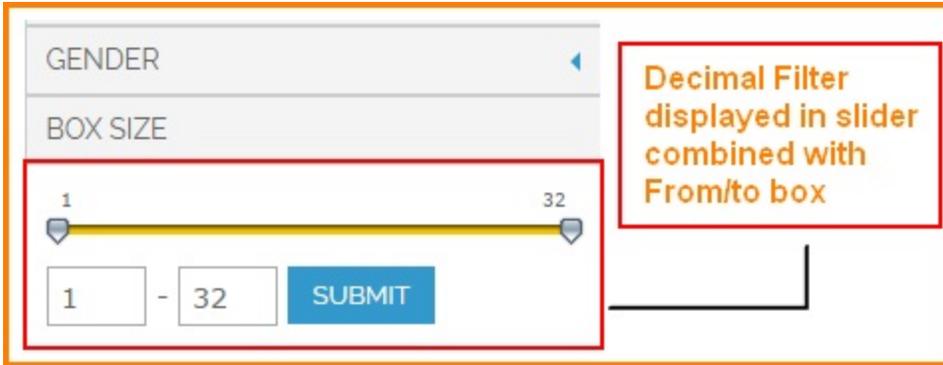
Price Filter		
Display	Slider and From/to	[STORE VIEW]
Slider Step	1	[STORE VIEW]
Show Currency In Slider	Yes	[STORE VIEW]
Slider Skin	Classic	[STORE VIEW]

1.3 Decimal Filter

In this field, you can set up how to display attributes which are in decimal forms such as size, weight, height, age?

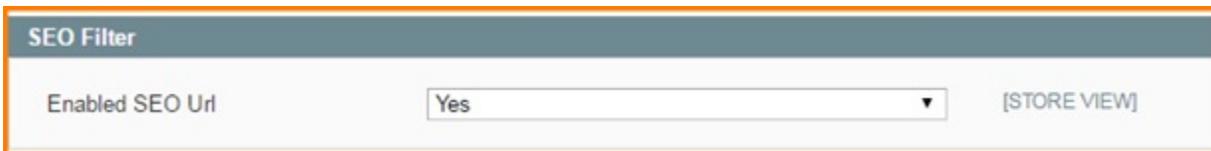
Decimal Filter		
Display	Slider	[STORE VIEW]
Slider Step	1	[STORE VIEW]
Slider Skin	Round Plastic	[STORE VIEW]

Similar to Price Filter, you can decide how to display, slider step and slider skin for decimal filter.



1.4 SEO Filter

If you enable SEO URLs, all URLs created after filtering will follow a logical rule. It will contain the product name and selected attribute's options.



For example, this is the URL created after user select pants and denim category, price from \$75 to \$510 and size 32 for a kind of men shirt:



2. Attribute Configuration

- **Use in Layered Navigation**

You can set up whether to show an attribute in layer navigation or not by going to Catalog -> Attributes -> Manage Attributes

Select one attribute -> Attribute Property -> Frontend Properties, select from 3 options: No/ Filterable (with results)/ Filterable (with results)/ Filterable (no results) in field **Use In Layered Navigation**

- No: not show this attribute in layered navigation
- Filterable (with results): attribute will be shown in layered navigation only when result > 0
- Filterable (no results): attribute will be shown in layered navigation even when result = 0

- **Use In Search Results Layered Navigation**

Select Yes/No to set up whether to show attribute in search results layered navigation or not

Frontend Properties

Use in Quick Search	No
Use in Advanced Search	No
Comparable on Front-end	No
Use In Layered Navigation	Filterable (with results) <small>▲ Can be used only with catalog input type Dropdown, Multiple Select and Price</small>
Use In Search Results Layered Navigation	Yes <small>▲ Can be used only with catalog input type Dropdown, Multiple Select and Price</small>
Use for Promo Rule Conditions	No
Position	<input type="text"/> <small>▲ Position of attribute in layered navigation block</small>

Set up whether to show an attribute in layered navigation or not

After finishing all of these set-up steps, you can click on **Save Config** button and go to frontend to see how **SEO Layered Navigation Extension** makes change to your site.

36.2 Compatibility

Our SEO Layered Navigation is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

36.3 Changelog

v1.0.0

- First Release

36.4 FAQs

Shipping Method for Category

37.1 User Guide

37.1.1 Magento Shipping Method for Category Extension Overview

Have you ever wished to disable one shipping method in some categories in Magento platform? As you know, in Magento default, whenever admin sets up a shipping method in backend, this method will be applied for every product in all categories. Therefore, it is difficult to set up some special Magento shipping methods by category. For instance, your website sells both fresh and dried fishes. You can ship dried ones to customers via air highway, however, you cannot do the same method with fresh fish, in this situation; you can have some troubles when setting **up this method in the backend**.

With [Magento Shipping Method for Category](#) , managers do not need to worry about this problem anymore. This extension allows admin to enable a shipping method based on category. As in the above example, admin can disable airline shipping method of all fishes in 'Fresh' category in the backend.

37.1.2 How does Magento Shipping Method for Category extension work?

To make configuration of this module, follow these below instruction:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel => System => Configuration**
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **Sales => Shipping Methods => select Bss Shipping Method for Category**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the below picture:

The screenshot shows the Magento Admin Panel interface. At the top, the 'System' menu item is highlighted with a red box and labeled 'Step 1'. An arrow points from this box to the 'Configuration' sub-menu. In the left sidebar, the 'Shipping Methods' menu item is highlighted with a red box and labeled 'Step 2'. An arrow points from this box to the 'Bss Shipping Method For Category' configuration form. The form includes fields for 'Enabled', 'Title', 'Ship to Applicable Countries', 'Ship to Specific Countries', 'Sort Order', 'Express Weight Threshold', 'Price', and 'Disable for category'.

There are 8 parts you can fix as your wishes: Enabled, Title, Ship to Applicable Countries, Ship to Specific Countries, Sort Order, Express Weight Threshold, Price, Disable for Category

1. Enabled

After opening this part in Shipping methods, you can enable the method by selecting “Yes” status in **Enabled** box.

The screenshot shows a close-up of the 'Enabled' field in the 'Bss Shipping Method For Category' configuration form. The 'Yes' option in the dropdown menu is highlighted with a red box.

2. Title

You can easily change the title name displayed on the frontend as a name of shipping method in **Title** box. As in the example, the name of method is “BSS shipping method”, and then in the frontend page, this shipping method will also appear in this name.

Backend

Title [STORE VIEW]

Frontend

4 SHIPPING METHOD

Flat Rate

Fixed \$5.00

BSS shipping method

Standard \$10.00

CONTINUE

< Back

3. Ship to Applicable Countries

You can choose which countries this shipping method could be applied in the **Ship to Applicable Countries** box.

Ship to Applicable Countries [WEBSITE]
 [WEBSITE]
 [WEBSITE]

4. Ship to Specific Countries

If you decide the shipping method can only be used in some specific countries, you can select “Specific countries” in **Ship to Applicable Countries** box.

Then you can select your wished countries in the table in the box **Ship to Specific Countries**.

Ship to Applicable Countries [WEBSITE]
 Ship to Specific Countries

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Afghanistan	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Åland Islands	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Albania	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Algeria	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	American Samoa	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Andorra	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Angola	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Anguilla	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Antarctica	[WEBSITE]
<input type="checkbox"/>	Antigua and Barbuda	[WEBSITE]

5. Sort Order

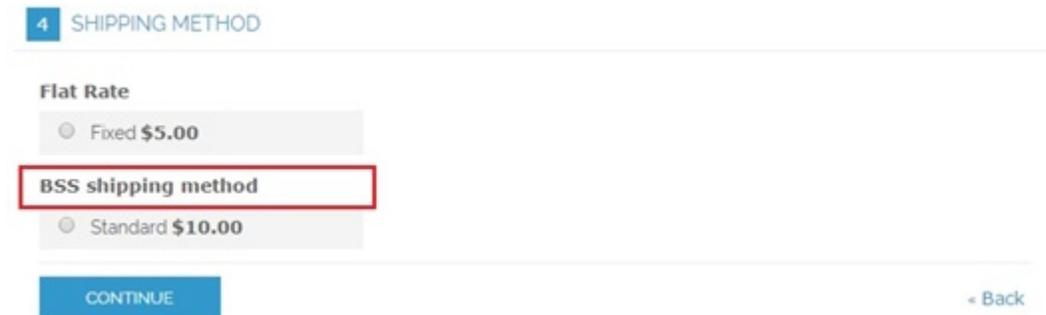
In the Sort Order box, you can decide the position of the Shipping method. For example you set in the **Sort Order** box number 2, then in the front end the Bss shipping method will appear in the no.2 position.

Backend



A form with a label 'Sort Order' on the left and a text input field on the right containing the number '2'. To the right of the input field is a button labeled '[WEBSITE]'. The entire input field and button area are enclosed in a red rectangular box.

Frontend



A screenshot of a frontend shipping method selection screen. At the top, there is a blue header with the number '4' and the text 'SHIPPING METHOD'. Below this, under the heading 'Flat Rate', there are three radio button options: 'Fixed \$5.00', 'BSS shipping method', and 'Standard \$10.00'. The 'BSS shipping method' option is selected and highlighted with a red rectangular box. At the bottom, there is a blue 'CONTINUE' button on the left and a '< Back' link on the right.

6. Express Weight Threshold

You also can set the maximum-allowed weight in this shipping method by filling the value in **Express Weight Threshold** box.



A form with a label 'Express Weight Threshold' on the left and a text input field on the right containing the number '100'. To the right of the input field is a button labeled '[WEBSITE]'. The entire input field and button area are enclosed in a red rectangular box.

7. Price



A form with a label 'Price' on the left and a text input field on the right containing the number '10'. The entire input field area is enclosed in a red rectangular box.

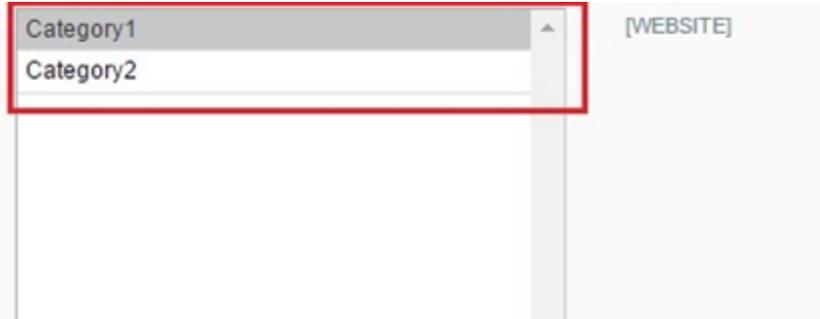
As another shipping method, to set the price for each method, you can fill the number in the **Price** box

8. Disable for Category

Finally part is also the most important part, which creates the difference from other Shipping method function.

You can control which product category can apply this shipping method or cannot apply. You can decide which category will be not applied Bss Shipping Method by **Disable for Category** box. For example, if you choose Category 1, then when customer buys any products in category 1, Bss Shipping Method will not appear in customers' shipping options.

Disable for category



The image shows a configuration interface for a shipping method. On the left, the text 'Disable for category' is followed by a dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is highlighted with a red border and contains two options: 'Category1' and 'Category2'. To the right of the dropdown, there is a placeholder text '[WEBSITE]'.

After finishing all of these set-up steps, you can click on **Save Config** button to start using Shipping Method for Category extension.

37.2 Compatibility

Our Shipping Method for Category is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

37.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0:

- Compatible with all Magento 1 versions
- Allow disabling shipping method in some selected categories

37.4 FAQs

Shipping & Payment Methods Per Customer Group

38.1 User Guide

38.1.1 Magento Shipping and Payment Per Customer Group overview

Magento Shipping and Payment Per Customer Group enables admin to set up different shipping and payment methods for various groups of customers. Once set up in the backend, only chosen methods display for particular customer groups in the shipping and payment process in the frontend.

This extension permits admin to satisfy their customers by providing their customers the most suitable products in the neatest organization.

38.1.2 How Magento Shipping and Payment per Customer Group works

After installing **Magento Shipping and Payment Per Customer Group** into your website, a new tab named **Advanced Shipping/Payment** methods will appear in your backend page allowing admin to set up advanced shipping and payment methods for each specific customer group.

1. Set up Payment Methods for customer groups

To customize shipping methods for each specific customer group, follow steps below:

Go to **Admin Panel => Advanced Shipping/Payment Methods => Payment methods**

After that, a screen appears showing many payment methods for admin to make configuration.

NOTE: Before making configuration, you must firstly consider the Current scope for your configuration. Right in the top, there is a “current scope” box, in which there have two options.

- Admin: *If you choose the current scope to be Admin, the configuration runs in all of your websites.*
- Main website: *The configuration is only applied in the main website.*

Here, all payment methods which are set up by admin in payment section will be listed with various options of customer groups.

In order to set up any **payment method** for customer group(s),

Choose the **Payment method**

Choose your desired customer group(s)

Save your configuration

For instance, if you wish to set up Payment by cards or by PayPal account for NOT LOGGED IN CUSTOMERS

Go to **Payment by cards or by PayPal account**

Click on NOT LOGGED IN

Click on “save Visibility settings” to save your configuration

The process is the same as other payment methods with any other customer groups.

2. Set up Shipping Methods for customer groups

Go to **Admin Panel => Advanced Shipping/Payment Methods => Shipping methods**

After that, a screen appears showing many payment methods for admin to make configuration.

NOTE: Before making configuration, you must firstly consider the Current scope for your configuration. Right in the top, there is a “current scope” box, in which there have two options.

- Admin: *If you choose the current scope to be Admin, the configuration runs in all of your websites.*
- Main store: *The configuration is only applied in the main website.*

Shipping Methods Visibility

Current Scope

Admin ▼

Shipping Methods

Flat Rate	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">NOT LOGGED IN</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">General</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Wholesale</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Retailer</div>
Free Shipping	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">NOT LOGGED IN</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">General</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Wholesale</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Retailer</div>
Best Way	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">NOT LOGGED IN</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">General</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Wholesale</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Retailer</div>
DHL	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">NOT LOGGED IN</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">General</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Wholesale</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Retailer</div>
Federal Express	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">NOT LOGGED IN</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">General</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Wholesale</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Retailer</div>
United Parcel Service	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">NOT LOGGED IN</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">General</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Wholesale</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Retailer</div>
United States Postal Service	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">NOT LOGGED IN</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">General</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Wholesale</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Retailer</div>

Just the same as payment methods, all shipping methods which are set up by admin in shipping section will be listed with various options of customer groups.

You can entirely configure the shipping methods for specific customer group:

Choose the **Shipping method**

Choose your desired customer group(s)

Save your configuration.

For example: *you would like to set flat rate, Federal express, United Parcel Service for General customers, In Flat rate, Federal express, United Parcel Service, you click on General.*

As a result, these shipping methods will be shown for general customers.

Shipping Methods Visibility

Current Scope

Admin ▼

Shipping Methods

Flat Rate	NOT LOGGED IN General Wholesale Retailer
Free Shipping	NOT LOGGED IN General Wholesale Retailer
Best Way	General Wholesale Retailer QAAAA
DHL	NOT LOGGED IN General Wholesale Retailer
Federal Express	NOT LOGGED IN General Wholesale Retailer
United Parcel Service	NOT LOGGED IN General Wholesale Retailer

38.2 Compatibility

Our Shipping & Payment Per Customer Group is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x

- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

38.3 Changelog

Version 2.1.4:

- Stable version

38.4 Common Problems

1. Solve conflicts between BSS Shipping and Payment Method per Customer Group and another module (IG_FlatShipping5)

Step 1:

Edit file: /app/code/community/IG/FlatShipping5/Block/Available.php

Step 2:

Add function

```
public function getShippingRates()
{
    $modules = Mage::getConfig()->getNode('modules')->children();
    $modulesArray = (array)$modules;
    if(isset($modulesArray['Bss_Methods']) && Mage::helper('core')->
    isModuleEnabled('Bss_Methods')) {
        if (empty($this->_rates)) {
            $this->getAddress()->collectShippingRates()->save();
            $groups = $this->getAddress()->getGroupedAllShippingRates();
            // checking methods visibility for customer groups
            foreach ($groups as $methodCode => $method){
                if (!Mage::helper('bssmethods')->canUseMethod($methodCode, 'shipping
                ')){
                    unset($groups[$methodCode]);
                }
            }
            return $this->_rates = $groups;
        }
        return $this->_rates;
    }
    return parent::getShippingRates();
}
```

38.5 FAQs

Shopping Cart Rule per Store View

39.1 User Guide

39.1.1 Magento Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View Extension Overview

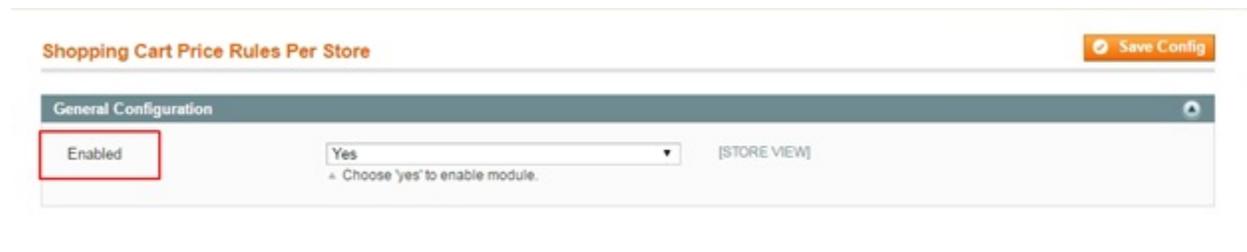
If you are using multiple store views function to do business on your Magento site, have you ever had a demand of creating different shopping cart rules for each store view? Do you want to offer different promotional prices for each target customer group in each store view?

[Magento Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View Extension](#) is developed to optimize the multiple store view function by enabling admin to set up different price rules in shopping cart of different store views. With this powerful extension, you can manage your promotional price strategy effectively, leading to boosting up sale and completing multiple store view system.

39.1.2 How does Magento Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View Extension work?

1. Enable Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View Extension

You go to **System -> Configuration -> Shopping Cart Price Rules Per Store**

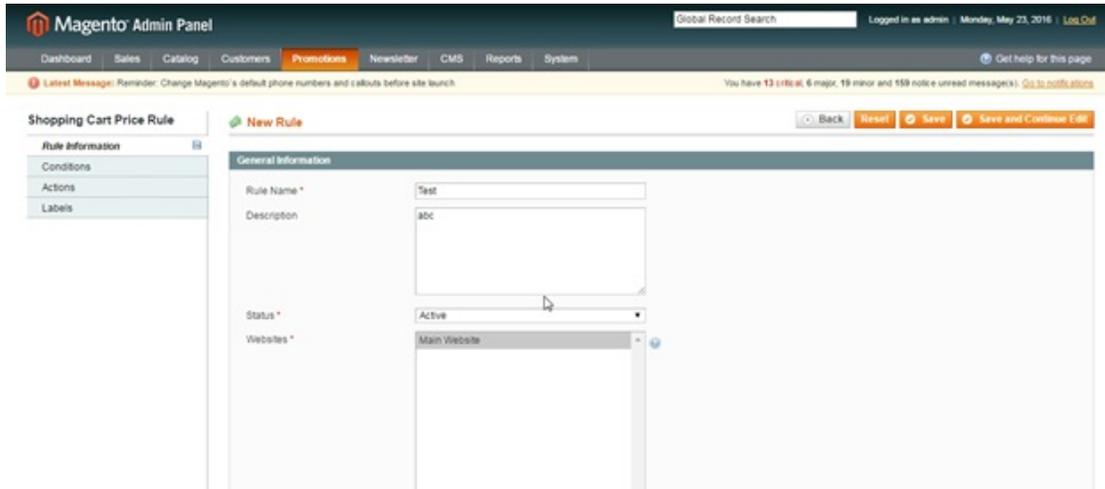


After choosing Yes to enable the extension, click Save Config to start set up shopping cart price rules per store as wish.

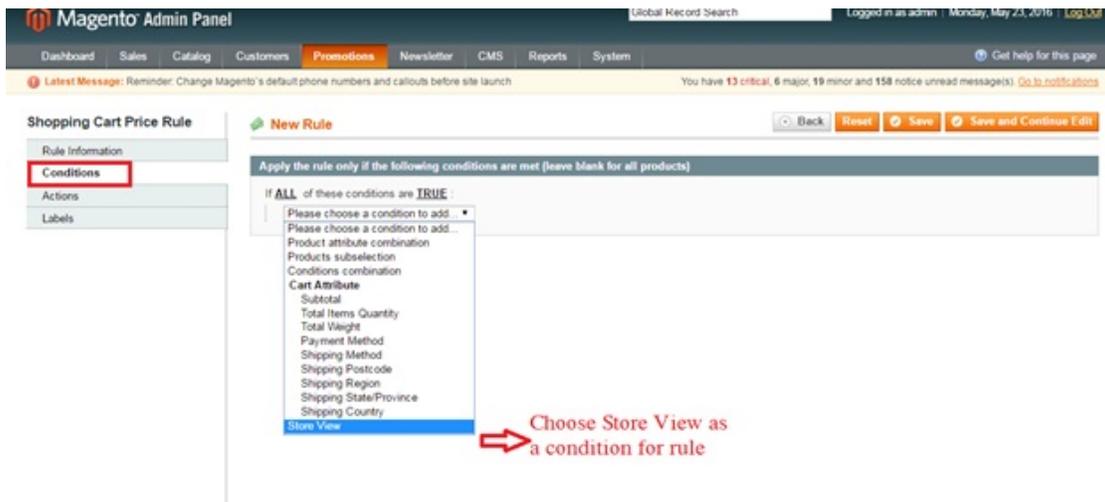
2. Set up different shopping cart price rules for products in each store view

Go to **Promotions** -> **Shopping Cart Price Rules Manage Products** and click Add New Rule to customize rules for shopping cart in each store view.

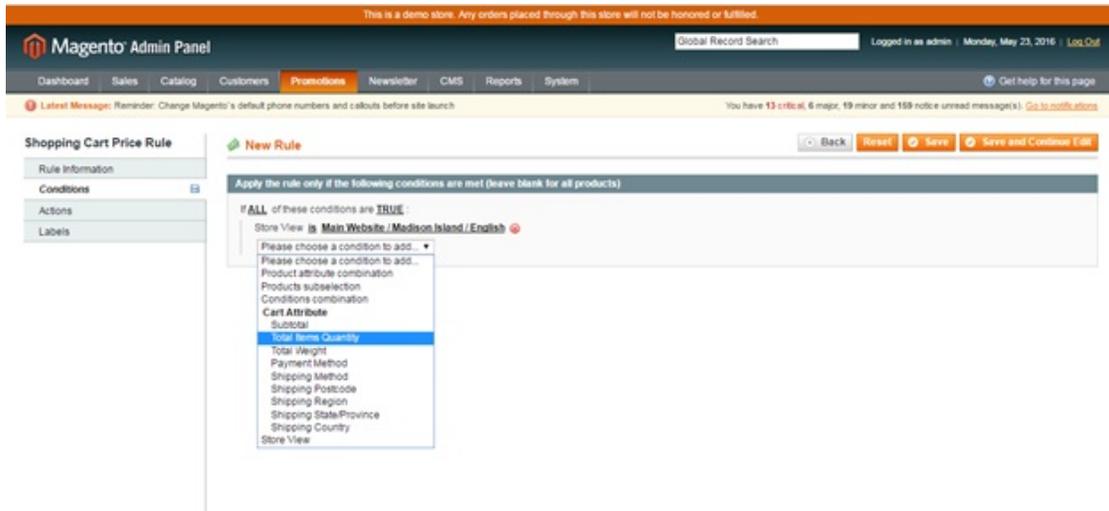
- In **Rule Information**, fill in Rule Name, Description, Status and other fields with needed information as usual.



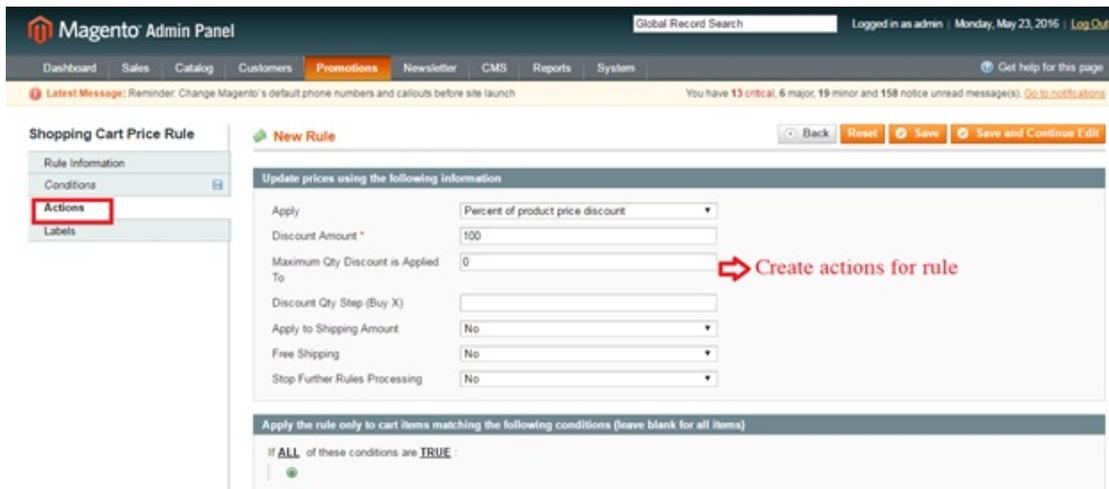
- In **Conditions**, choose Store View as an option in condition for rule



Then choose one Store View in the list of Website/ store/ store view that you want to set up rule for it



- In **Actions**, set up detail rules for the chosen store view



- Save configuration, then come back to **Conditions** and choose other store view to continue to set up

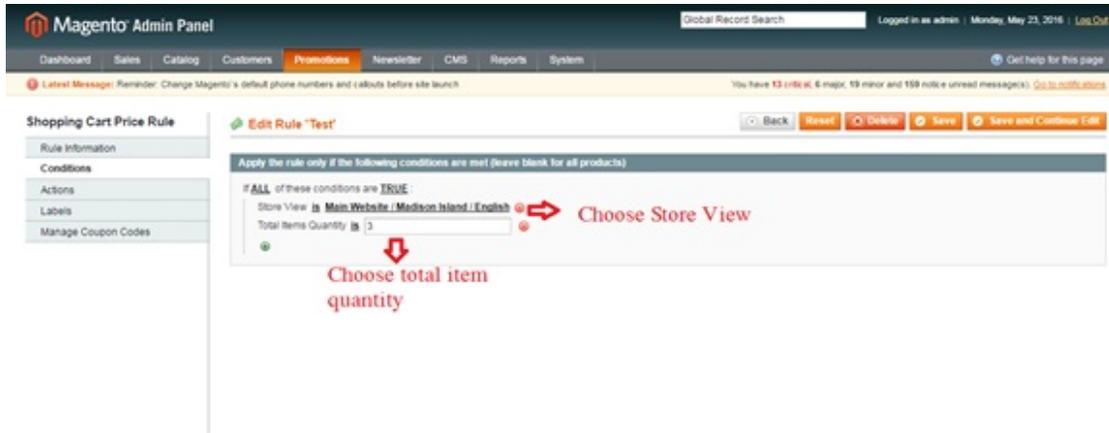
Example

Set up \$ 100 discount rule for orders which have 3 items in English store view

Step 1: Creating Conditions

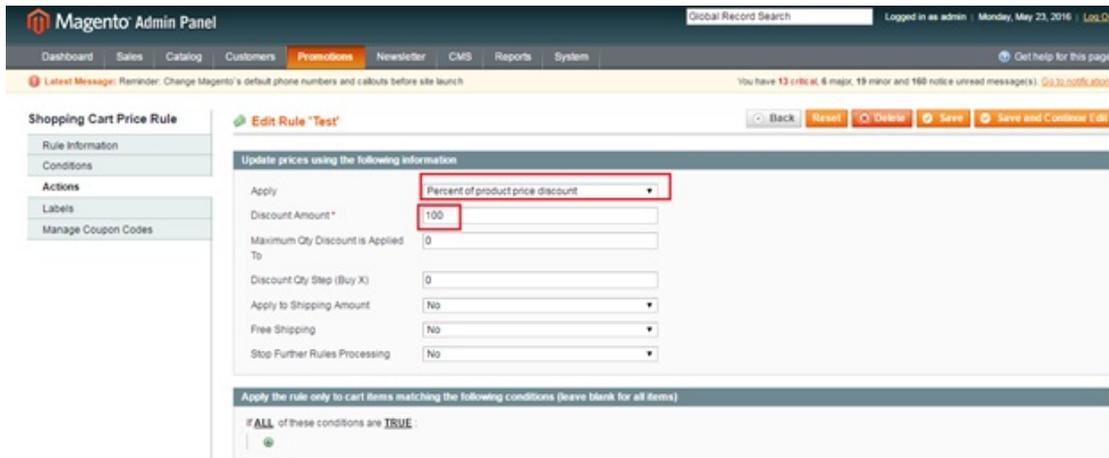
-Choose **Store View** as a condition and select **English** store view (Main Website/ Madison Island Store)

-Choose **Total Items Quantity** as a condition and fill in “3” in the box



Step 2: Creating Rules

Go to **Actions**, choose Fixed amount discount for the whole cart as a rule to apply and fill in “100” in **Discount Amount** box



Finally, save configuration and go to the frontend to see the changes:

- **Shopping Cart in the English store view:**

YOUR LANGUAGE: English

WELCOME

MADISON ISLAND

ACCOUNT CART (3)

Search entire store here...

WOMEN MEN ACCESSORIES HOME & DECOR SALE VIP

SHOPPING CART [PROCEED TO CHECKOUT](#)

PRODUCT	PRICE	QTY	SUBTOTAL
 CHELSEA TEE <small>SKU: mdk00g</small> Color: Black Size: L	\$75.00	3	\$225.00

[EMPTY CART](#) [UPDATE SHOPPING CART](#) [CONTINUE SHOPPING](#)

DISCOUNT CODES [APPLY](#)

ESTIMATE SHIPPING AND TAX

COUNTRY * STATE/PROVINCE *
 United States * Please select region, s *

CITY ZIP *

[ESTIMATE](#)

SUBTOTAL	\$225.00
DISCOUNT	-\$100.00
TAX	\$10.31
GRAND TOTAL	\$135.31

- Shopping Cart in the French store view:

YOUR LANGUAGE: French

WELCOME

MADISON ISLAND

ACCOUNT CART (3)

Search entire store here...

WOMEN MEN ACCESSORIES HOME & DECOR SALE VIP

SHOPPING CART [PROCEED TO CHECKOUT](#)

PRODUCT	PRICE	QTY	SUBTOTAL
 CHELSEA TEE <small>SKU: mdk00g</small> Color: Black Size: L	75,00 \$US	3	225,00 \$US

[EMPTY CART](#) [UPDATE SHOPPING CART](#) [CONTINUE SHOPPING](#)

DISCOUNT CODES [APPLY](#)

ESTIMATE SHIPPING AND TAX

COUNTRY * STATE/PROVINCE *
 États-Unis * Please select region, s *

CITY ZIP *

[ESTIMATE](#)

SUBTOTAL	225,00 \$US
TAX	18,56 \$US
GRAND TOTAL	243,56 \$US

No discount applied ←

[PROCEED TO CHECKOUT](#)

39.2 Compatibility

Our Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

39.3 Changelog

39.4 FAQs

40.1 User Guide

40.1.1 BSS Store Locator Overview

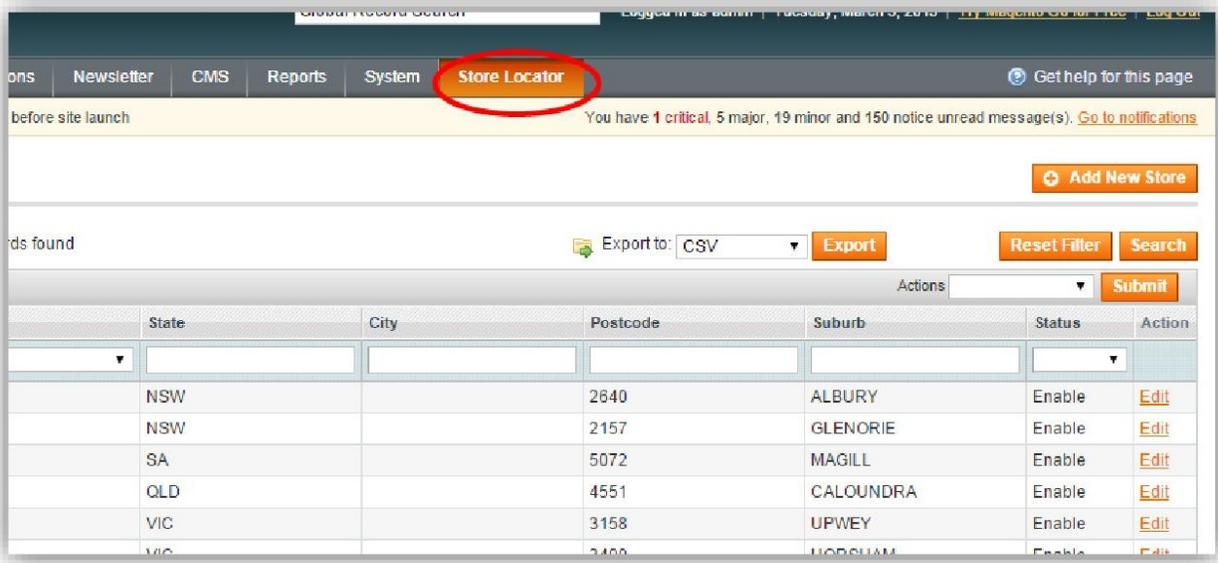
Magento Store Locator is an effective extension that efficiently supports your customers to search for store locations in any eligible positions by using Google Map API. Equipped with various searching tools, this extension allows customers to find stores by nation, state, zip code, suburb, their current location or a specific address in n-km radius. Magento Store Locator is also designed to display the overview of stores so that customers can see and link to these stores right when they find out them. As for admins, Magento Store Locator allows them to operate it as they wish in the backend. By and large, this searching tool is an efficient extension that can surely motivate your trading in the way that it supports customers to find your stores without difficulty.

40.1.2 How BSS Store Locator works?

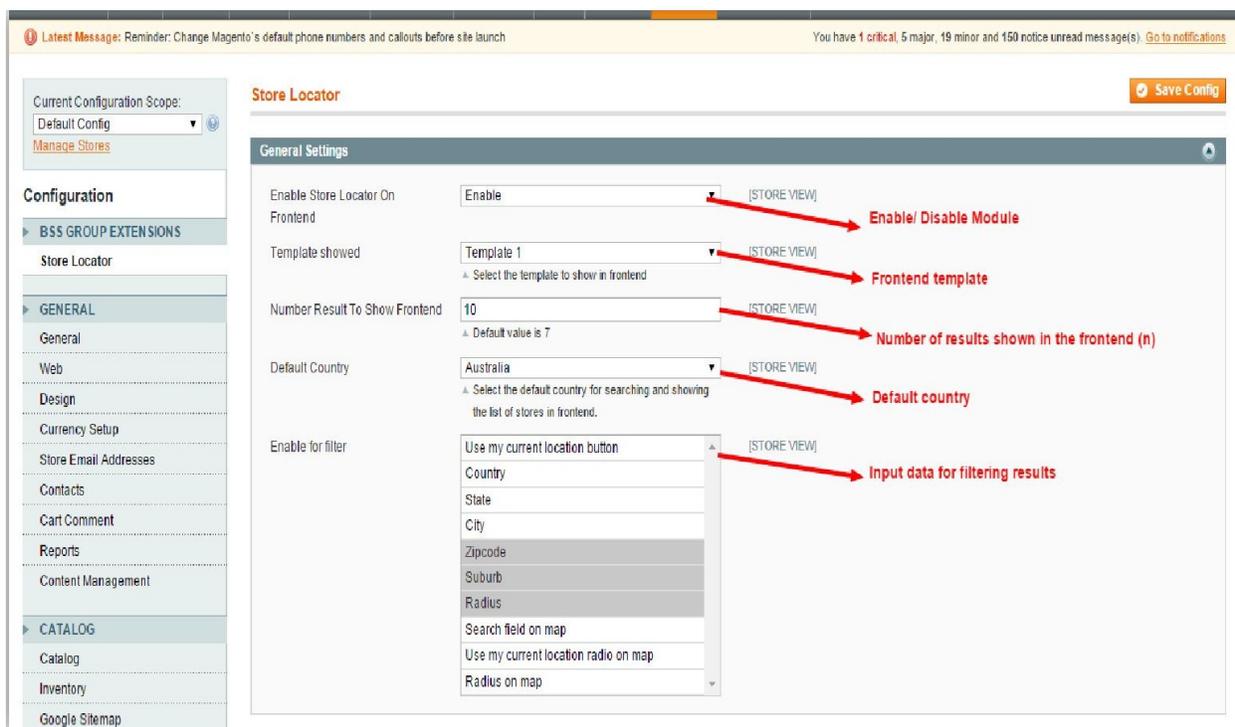
1. Instruction Manual

1.1. Store Setting

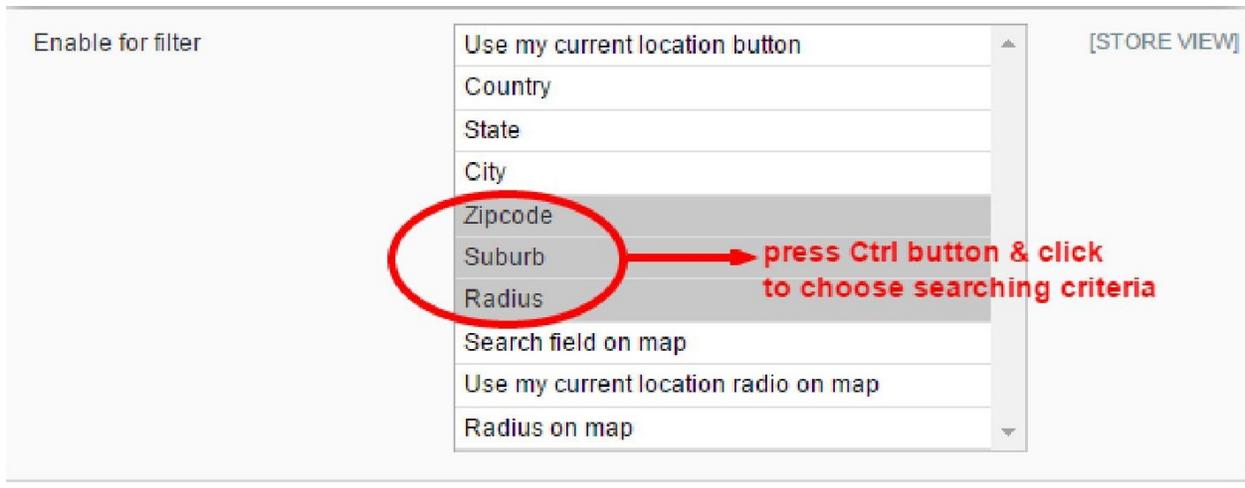
As an admin, you can set up your own store in the way that it can most effectively support your trading aim. To set up your store, go to **“Store Locator -> Store Setting”**



A screen will appear like as follow:

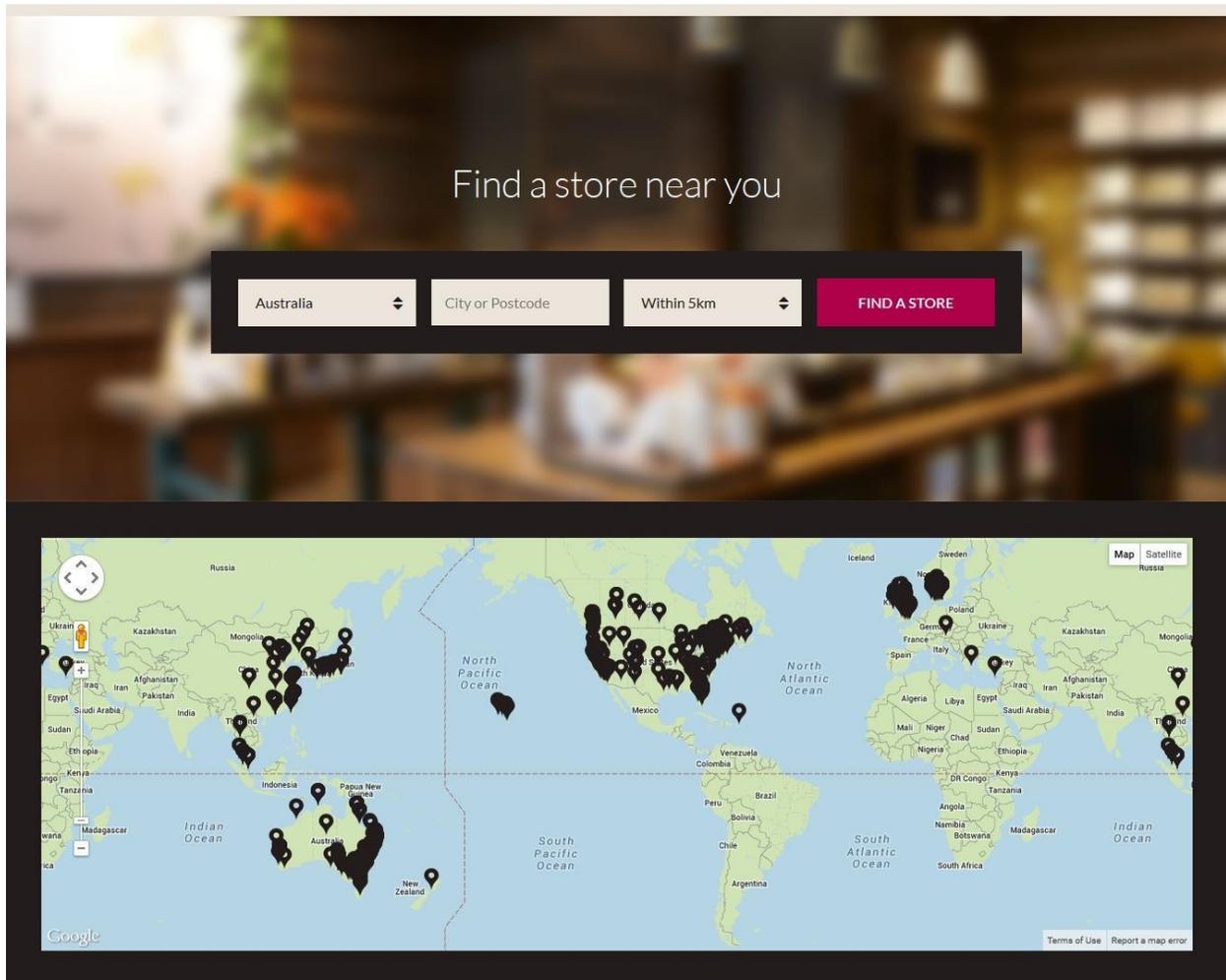


- In "Enable for Filter" box, you can choose more than one criterion by pressing "Ctrl" and click on criteria you want.



- In “template” box, there are two templates for the frontend. The admins can choose between template 1 and template 2 freely.

Template 1: Art template



Template 2: There are 2 types of interface: two-column & one-column

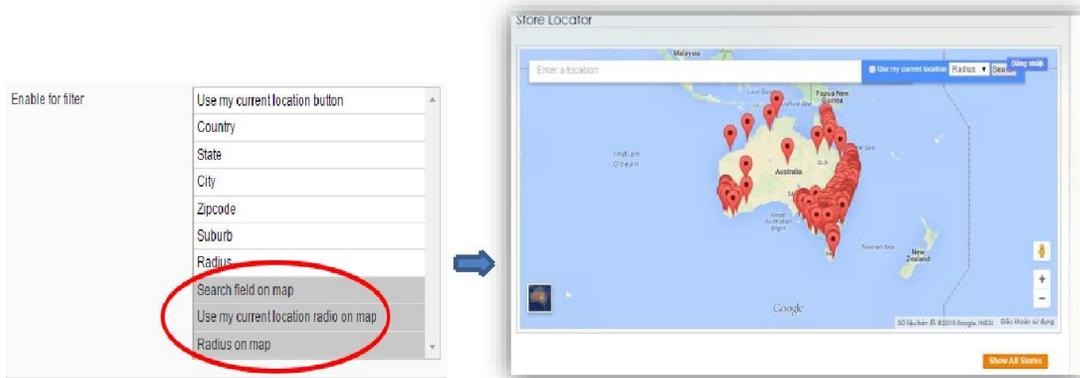
- Two-column interface

The screenshot displays the Magento store locator interface. At the top, there is a blue navigation bar with the Magento logo, 'ACCOUNT', and 'CART' links. Below this is a search bar with the text 'Search entire store here...'. The main heading is 'FIND STORE NEAR YOU'. On the left, there are input fields for 'Country' (set to Australia), 'State', 'City', 'Postcode', 'Suburb', and 'Radius'. A 'USE MY CURRENT LOCATION' button is also present. To the right is a map of Australia with several red location pins. Below the map is a 'SHOW ALL STORES' button. The store list is organized into a two-column grid. Each store entry includes the store name, location (Country, State), and phone number, with 'VIEW DETAILS' and 'VIEW MAP' buttons.

Byron Bay Candle Co Australia NSW Phone:02 6685 8077 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP	Cachets Australia VIC Phone:03 9755 3100 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP
Butterflies Gallery Australia NSW Phone:02 4998 7724 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP	Buds & Branches Australia VIC Phone:0419 005 291 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP
Brown's of Burnside Australia SA Phone:08 8379 7578 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP	Buderim Pharmacy Australia QLD Phone:07 5445 1230 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP
Broome Lottery Centre News Australia WA Phone:08 9192 3535 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP	Broadway Newsagency Australia NSW Phone:02 9281 7350 VIEW DETAILS VIEW MAP

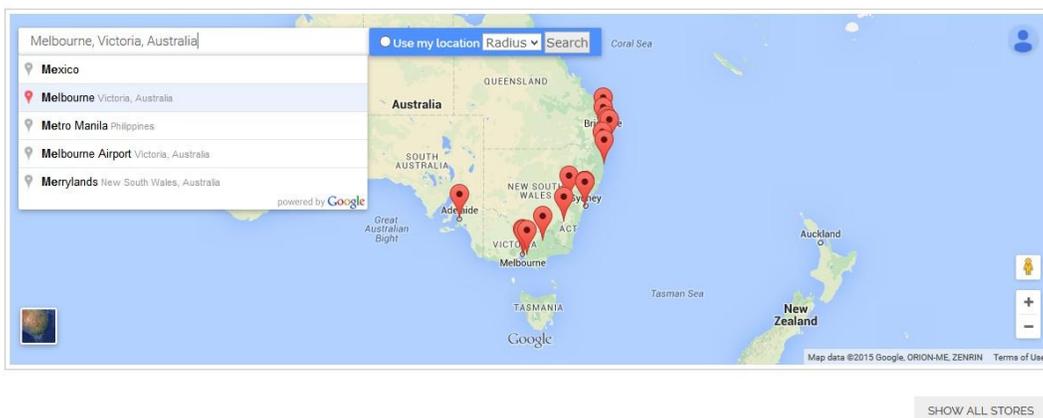
Two-column interface on the front end

- One-column interface: In case the first seven criteria of “Enable for filter” box are not chosen, the store will be automatically changed into one-column interface one

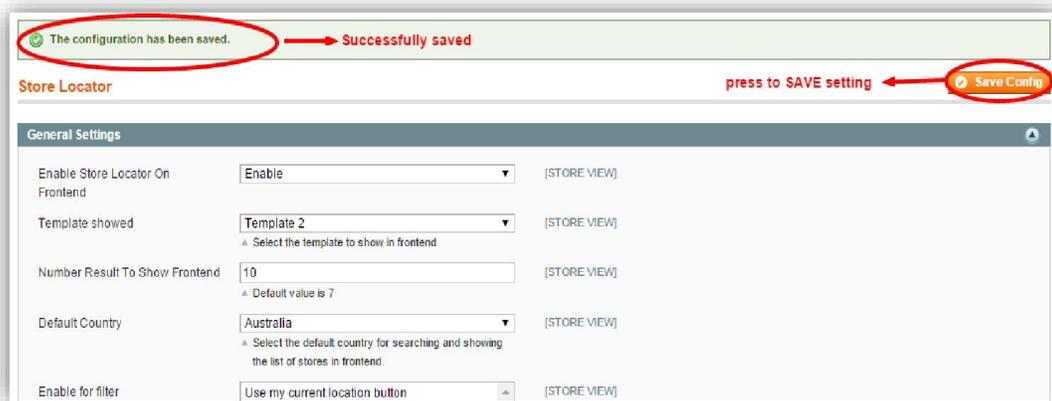


Backend: choose **3 final criteria** -> Frontend: **One-column Interface**

FIND STORE NEAR YOU



- Remember to save your setting by pressing **“Save Configuration”** button in the right top of the screen, and wait until the green line **“The configuration has been saved”** appears.



- To see the change in the frontend, **reload** the frontend.

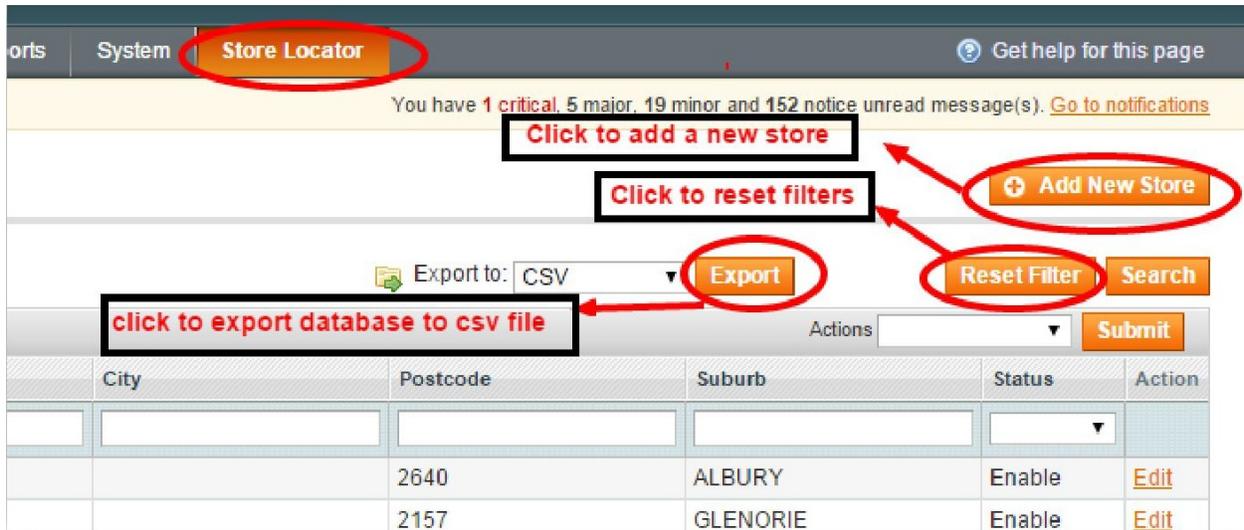
1.2. Store Management

This mode enables you to:

- Add new stores

- Reset stores
- Export store's database to csv file

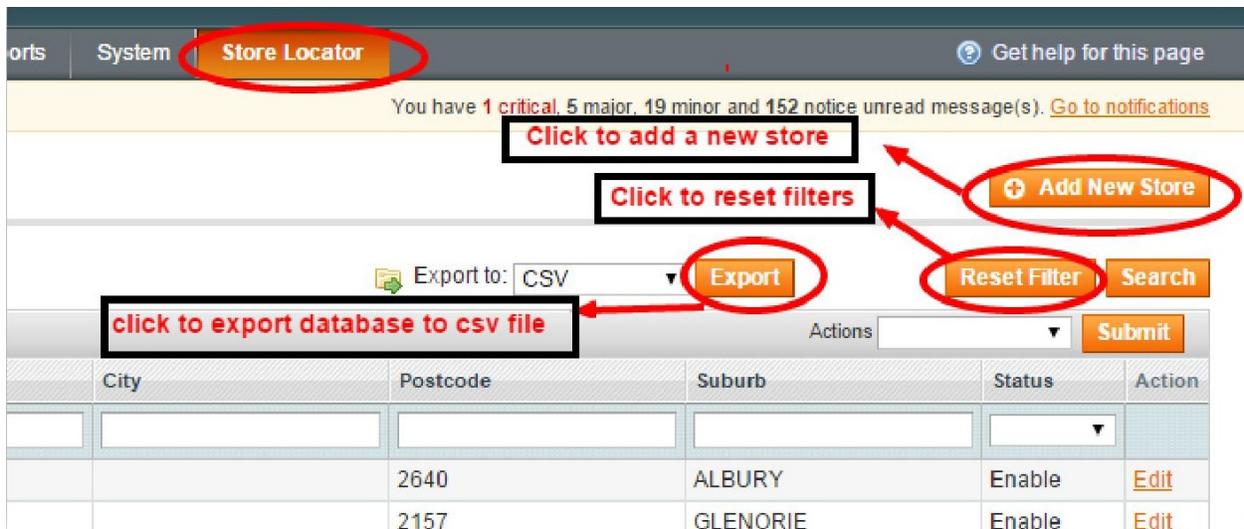
To use this function, go through “Store Locator -> Manage Stores”



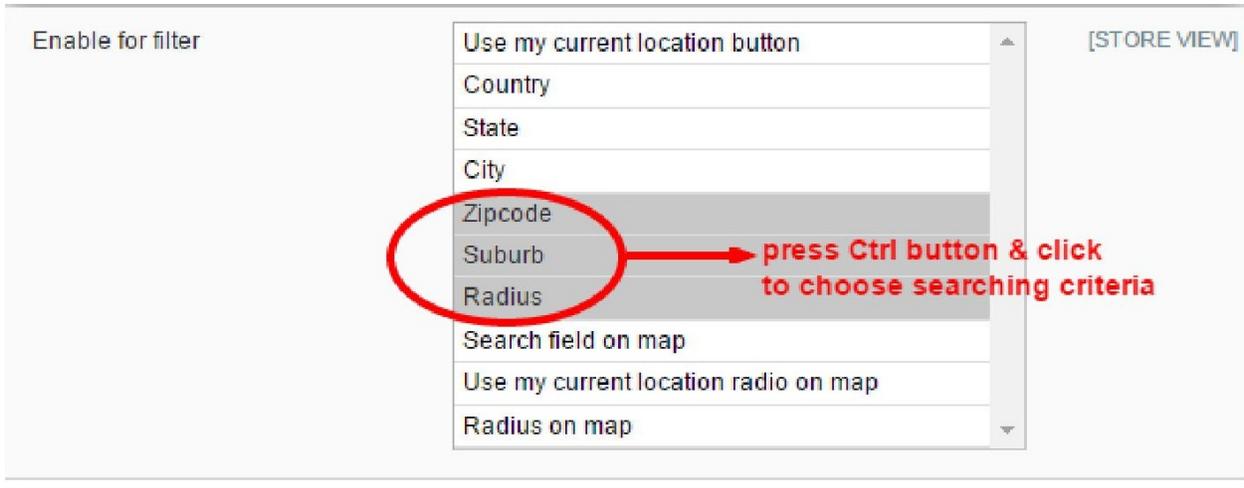
• Add A New Store:

There are two ways to add stores: add a new store manually or import stores using csv file when you want to add stores in mass.

To add stores manually, please go to Store Locator ? Manage stores



then Choose Add New Store button



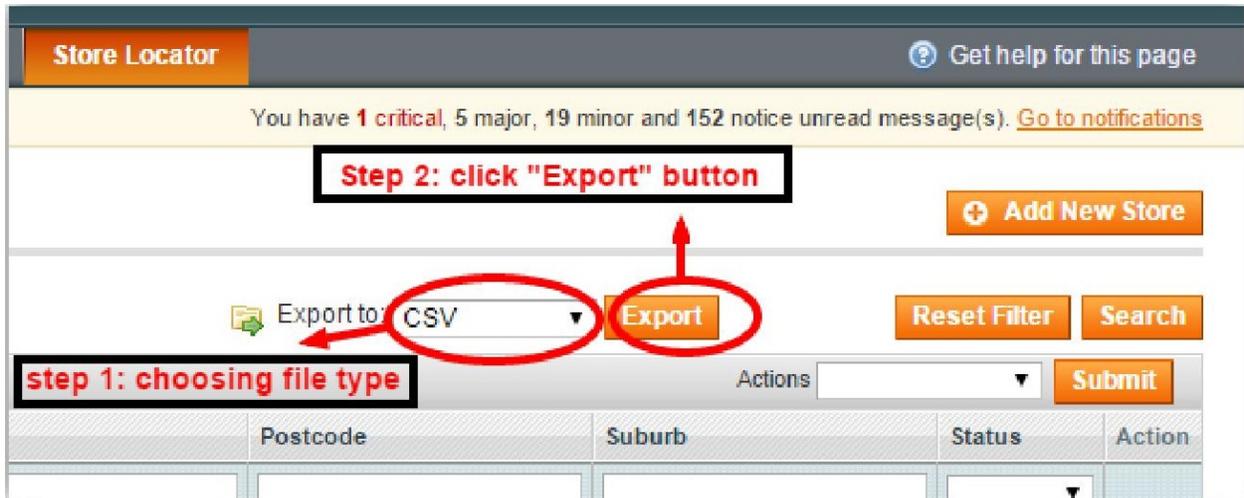
Then, fill in required fields such as Business, Country, State, Postcode, Suburb and Address

NOTE: If admin does not provide longitude and latitude, BSS Store Locator will automatically search store locations by Google map based on address. Thus, remember to check this carefully as Google may misunderstand your address.

1.3. Export and Import:

1.3.1. Export: **BSS Store Locator** allows admins to export database from store to csv file or XML file.

- To export database to csv file, go through “Store Locator -> Manage Store”. In “Export to” box, choose “csv file -> Export”.



- After exporting, a csv file will be created and you can save it on your computer. When the file is opened, it appear like this:

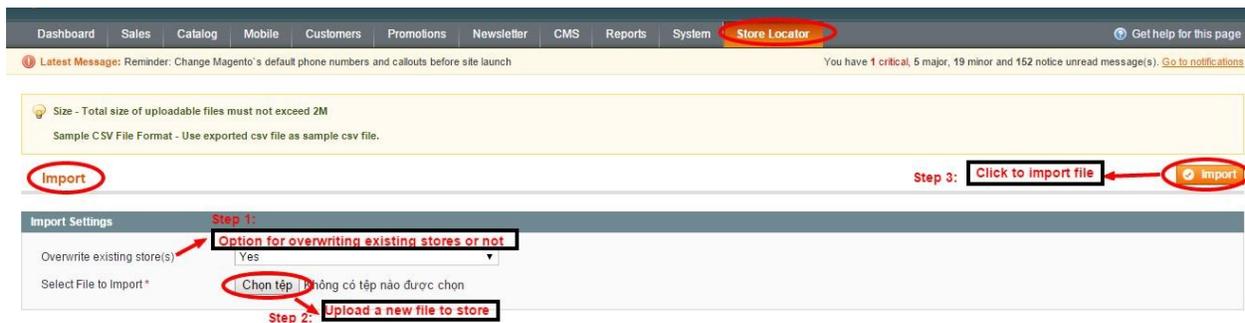
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
	Business	Country	State	City	Postcode	Suburb	Status	Phone	Email	Website	Address	Latitude	Longitude
1	2 Grey Bin	Australia	NSW		2640	ALBURY	Enable	02 6021 4426			Dean Stre	-37.7011	145.089
2	2157 Fine	Australia	NSW		2157	GLENORIE	Enable	02 9652 2157			Old North	-37.8852	145.2298
3	A Life Abu	Australia	SA		5072	MAGILL	Enable	08 8333 3144			Magill Roa	-35.5264	144.963
4	A Perfect	Australia	QLD		4551	CALOUND	Enable	07 5438 0688			Bulcock St	-37.7992	144.9018
5	Abitza	Australia	VIC		3158	UPWEY	Enable	0416 145 476			Main Stre	-31.989	115.7849
6	Abode Liv	Australia	VIC		3400	HORSHAM	Enable	03 5382 4600			Firebrace	-32.0416	115.8045
7	Acorn Nur	Australia	VIC		3127	SURREY HI	Enable	03 9890 3162			Canterbur	-33.7963	151.1832
8	Adore Livi	Australia	NSW		2227	GYMEA	Enable	02 9524 8222			Gymea Ba	-37.7699	144.9988
9	Adventist	Australia	NSW		2076	WAHROO	Enable	02 9487 9111			185 Fox V	-27.9008	153.327
10	Ahinah	Australia	NSW		2529	BLACKBUT	Enable	0449 608 868			Lake Entra	-37.9567	145.0438
11	Amcal Ph	Australia	QLD		4566	NOOSAVI	Enable	07 5449 9049			Gibson Ro	-33.9197	151.0319
12	Amo La Vi	Australia	VIC		3146	GLEN IRIS	Enable	03 9008 5577			Toorak Ro	-37.807	145.0315

Example of Exporting Database To csv File

1.3.2. Import:

- Firstly, **export** to see the file structure
- Secondly, **add database** into appropriate cells on file exported.
- Import into the system by going through: **“Store Locator -> Import/Export -> Import”**

You can choose freely overwriting existing files or not -> select file from your computer, then, press “Import”.



Unless you input co-ordinates, the system will automatically search through Google Map. However, if customers use the system too many times **on a daily basis**, the system may be **locked for one day**. Unless you input longitude and latitude of your stores, the system should be use **less than 100 times per day**.

2. Algorithms for finding stores

Once users choose input cells, the system will work out all the results that perfectly match the information users wish to filter (country, state, city, postcode, or suburb).

- If no stores in the target location can be found, the BSS Store Locator will automatically find information about the location in Google Maps and work out **n nearest stores** (in case the system can find the store in Google Maps. If not, **“0 Store Found”** will be displayed).
- If customers use module “Use My Location”, the system will find **n nearest stores** in the vicinity of their location.
- If users **input the radius**, the system will automatically search for locations of store within the provided radius (via filter or location).

NOTE: n is the number of results to be shown in the frontend set by admins in the Store setting.

40.2 Compatibility

Our Store Locator is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

40.3 Changelog

40.4 FAQs

41.1 User Guide

41.1.1 BSS Unboxed extension overview

Magento Unboxed Extension creatively uses customer unboxed product images as effective social proofs to attribute on marketing efforts. The extension shows customer product images of your products they have JUST purchased in a particular area and indirectly uses those images to attract more customers and make the higher conversion rate. There is beyond two facts that: “when buying new items, whether in direct or indirect ways, clients are likely to show them off and want to receive compliments from others.”

Not a few people are influenced by mob mentality. People are easily impacted by their peers to ratify assertive behaviors, follow trends to buy items. There is also no deny that the power of visual content marketing can become magical: “Use a picture. It’s worth a thousand words.”

41.1.2 How Magento Unboxed extension works

1. Manual instruction

As an admin, you can set up your own store page by the most effective way that supports your trading objective. To make the configuration:

- Step 1: Go to **System -> Configuration**.
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSSCOMMERCE -> select Unboxed**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the following picture:

Unboxed

General Settings		
Enable	Yes <input type="button" value="v"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	<small>▲ Enable/Disable</small>	
Logo	 <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen <input type="checkbox"/> Delete Image	[STORE VIEW]
	<small>▲ Allowed file types: jpeg, gif, png. 300 x 107 pixels</small>	
Enable Map	Yes <input type="button" value="v"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	<small>▲ Enable/Disable Map</small>	
Name	Unboxed	[STORE VIEW]
Info	Unboxed is gallery page displayed real pictures of	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Name 1	Contact us	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Link 1	#	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Name 2	Unboxed.com	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Link 2	#	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Name 3	Terms & Conditions	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Link 3	#	[STORE VIEW]
Facebook Link		[STORE VIEW]
Pinterest Link		[STORE VIEW]
Instagram Link		[STORE VIEW]
Twitter Link		[STORE VIEW]
Page Title		[STORE VIEW]
Facebook App Id	1419483401679408	[STORE VIEW]

There are many boxes displaying on the page for shop owners to configure as they want.

1.1. Enable module

In box **Enable**, there are 2 options for admin to choose: **Yes** or **No**. Choose **Yes** to enable the module, choose **No** to disable it.

General Settings		
Enable	Yes <input type="button" value="v"/> Yes No	[STORE VIEW]

Save the configuration by clicking on **Save config** button on the right of the page.

1.2. Header displaying

To set up the display of header of your unboxed page on frontend, please follow these instructions.

- In box **Logo**, click on the button **Choose File** to browse from your computer a picture to display as your logo on the frontend. Remember that there are 3 file types are allowed including ***.jpg**, ***.png** and ***.gif**. The picture

uploaded from your computer will be resized to fixed size (300 x107 pixels).

Logo  No file chosen No file chosen
 Allowed file types: jpeg, gif, png, 300 x 107 pixels

- In box **Enable Map**, there are 2 options for admin to choose: **Yes** or **No**. Choose **Yes** to enable the map on frontend, otherwise choose **No**.

Enable Map
 Enable/Disable Map

- In box **Name**, type a name for the page as you desire (e.g: Unboxed)
- In box **Info**, type the text to describe the page to your customers

(e.g: Unboxed is gallery page displayed real pictures of products uploaded by real customers who have purchased those products on our main website)

Name
 Info

Save the configuration by clicking on **Save config** button on the right of the page. Then go to frontend, reload the page and see the change.

That is an example for the page header displaying on frontend:



Unboxed is gallery page displayed real pictures of products uploaded by real customers who have purchased those products on our main website



1.3. Footer displaying

The module allows admin to configure footer of the page with place special links and social media links.

Footer Name 1	<input type="text" value="Contact us"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Link 1	<input type="text" value="#"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Name 2	<input type="text" value="Unboxed.com"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Link 2	<input type="text" value="#"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Name 3	<input type="text" value="Terms & Conditions"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Footer Link 3	<input type="text" value="#"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Facebook Link	<input type="text"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Pinterest Link	<input type="text"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Instagram Link	<input type="text"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Twitter Link	<input type="text"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Page Title	<input type="text"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Facebook App Id	<input type="text" value="1419483401679408"/>	[STORE VIEW]

In all boxes named **Footer Name 1**, **Footer Name 2**, **Footer Name 3**, type in the boxes names of the footer links that you want to show on frontend.

(e.g: Term & Conditions; Contact us)

In all boxes named **Footer Link 1**, **Footer Link 2**, **Footer Link 3**, copy and paste in the boxes the links you want to redirect customer to.

Note: the footer names must be corresponding with the footer links

In box named **Facebook Link**, copy and paste in the box link of your facebook page

Do the same with other boxes named **Pinterest Link**, **Instagram Link**, **Twitter Link**

After that, save the configuration by clicking on **Save config** button on the right of the page. Then go to frontend, reload the page and see the change.

That is an example for the page footer displaying on frontend:



2. Manage/Edit/Upload image by admin

2.1. Manage image

As an admin, you can manage all pictures uploaded. To find and manage all pictures, go to tab **Unboxed** on the top (beside tab System), then click on **Unboxed -> Manage**

After that, pictures uploaded by all users will appear in a page like this:

Manage Images Add New

Page 1 of 1 pages | View 20 per page | Total 15 records found Reset Filter Search

Select All | Unselect All | Select Visible | Unselect Visible | 0 items selected Actions Submit

ID	Name	Email	Location	Image	Created	Status	Action
11	Milo Vitti	milo@example.com	South Korea		Dec 9, 2015 11:02:45 PM	Enabled	Edit
13	Jessica LJ	truongminhhang94@gmail.com	Osaka Prefecture, ...		Dec 9, 2015 11:34:07 PM	Enabled	Edit
15	Jessica LJ	truongminhhang94@gmail.com	United Kingdom		Dec 11, 2015 12:32:33 AM	Enabled	Edit
16	test test	daoduc1990@gmail.com	United States		Dec 11, 2015 1:05:33 AM	Enabled	Edit

From this page, you can find customer's basic information (customer name, customer email), pictures are uploaded by which customers, picture uploading time and picture status. You also can filter picture by uploading time, picture ID, customer name, customer email?

2.2. Edit image

- Step 1:** To edit pictures from admin, find the picture you want to edit on the list and then click on Edit button:

Email	Location	Image	Created	Status	Action
milo@example.com	South Korea		Dec 9, 2015 11:02:45 PM	Enabled	Edit  click here to edit pictures

After choosing edit the picture, a screen will appear for you to edit like this:

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Image' interface. On the left, there is a sidebar with 'Unboxed Information' containing 'Information', 'Products Tag', and 'Comments'. Below it is a 'Tab to edit' button with a downward arrow. The main area is titled 'Edit Image' and has a top navigation bar with 'Back', 'Reset', 'Delete', 'Save', and 'Save And Continue Edit' buttons. The 'General information' section contains the following fields:

- Status: Enable (dropdown)
- Title *: Clothes (text input)
- Description *: Test (text input)
- Location *: Osaka Prefecture, ... (text input)
- Upload Images: Choose File | No file chosen (button)

Below the 'Upload Images' section, it says 'Supported formats: jpg, jpeg, gif, png' and 'Max file size: 2M'. To the right is a large image of a woman taking a selfie. A blue arrow points to the image with the text 'the picture being edited'.

- **Step 2:** In tab **Information**, you can edit the picture information and change the image as you want:

This is a close-up of the 'General information' form. The 'Status' field is highlighted with a blue box and an arrow pointing to the text 'picture information'. The 'Upload Images' section is also highlighted with a blue box and an arrow pointing to the text 'change image'. The other fields (Title, Description, Location) are also visible.

- In box **Status**, you can set for this picture enabled or disabled
- In box **Title**, type the title for the picture uploaded
- In box **Description**, type the text describing the picture uploaded
- In box **Location**, choose the location for the picture uploaded (auto-complete location searching)
- In box **Upload Images**, you can change the current image to other image by click on **Choose File** button, then you will be able to browse image from your computer to upload.

After that, click on **Save and Continue Edit** button to save the configuration and continue editing.

- **Step 3:** In tab **Product Tag**, you can tag any product to the picture being edited. Here, a list of product will be shown like this:

Tag new product

Page 1 of 7 pages | View 20 per page | Total 133 records found

Reset Filter Search

Select	ID	Name	Type	Attrib. Set Name	SKU	Price	Qty	Websites
				asc		From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/> In: USD	From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	337	Aviator Sunglasses	Simple Product	Accessories	ace000	\$295.00	5	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	338	Jackie O Round Sunglasses	Simple Product	Accessories	ace001	\$295.00	19	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	339	Retro Chic Eyeglasses	Simple Product	Accessories	ace002	\$295.00	25	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	370	Isla Crossbody Handbag	Simple Product	Accessories	abl000	\$290.00	13	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	372	Flatiron Tablet Sleeve	Simple Product	Accessories	abl002	\$150.00	23	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	373	Broad St. Flapover Briefcase	Simple Product	Accessories	abl003	\$570.00	24	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	374	Houston Travel Wallet	Simple Product	Accessories	abl004	\$210.00	18	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	375	Roller Suitcase	Simple Product	Accessories	abl005	\$650.00	15	Main Website

You can tag one or more products on the list by clicking on the checkbox of column Select in each product line.

You also can filter product by name, SKU, attribute, product type, price?to find out the product you want to tag on the picture.

Click on **Save and Continue Edit** button to save the configuration and continue editing.

- **Step 4:** In tab **Comments**, you can add comments for the picture being edited with any user account shown on the list.

Find one user to give comment to the picture, then click on the checkbox on column **Select** like this following example:

Note: you can also filter user by name, email? to find out the relevant user who you want her/him to give comment on the picture being edited.

Add new comment

Page 1 of 1 pages | View 100 per page | Total 60 records found

Reset Filter Search

Select	ID	Name	Email	Group	Telephone	ZIP	Country	State/Province	Customer Since	Wei
							All Cou		From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	
<input type="radio"/>	146	Phung Thong	thongpd207@gmail.com	General					Jan 11, 2016 3:06:11 AM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	145	fdfsd sfdfsd	nhanquy.ytbg@gmail.com	General					Jan 8, 2016 4:00:52 AM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	144	fhfh fhfh	fhfh@y.com	General					Jan 5, 2016 9:56:56 AM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	143	Minh Đức Đào	dao_duc410@yahoo.com	General					Dec 24, 2015 2:36:04 AM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	142	dad dasd	danghieu14@gmail.com	General					Dec 19, 2015 6:27:30 AM	I W
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	141	Jessica LJ	truongminhhang94@gmail.com	General					Dec 10, 2015 7:28:37 AM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	140	test test	daoduc1990@gmail.com	General	123345	123	Vietnam		Dec 10, 2015 7:12:53 AM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	136	Jane Doe	janedoe@example.com	General	888-888-8888	90232	United States	California	May 15, 2013 9:20:45 PM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	135	John Doe	johndoe@example.com	General	888-888-8888	90232	United States	California	May 15, 2013 9:16:11 PM	I W
<input type="radio"/>	127	John Smith	johnsmith@example.com	VIP Member	424-555-0000	90210	United States	California	May 15, 2013 9:45:10 AM	I W

After choosing user, scroll down to the bottom of the page to write a comment under the name of the chosen user:

Write Comment

Your dress is very nice and it fits you perfectly. I'm gonna buy the same oh i like it so much!!

Click on **Add** button to add the comment you have already written on the picture. After adding comment, you will receive a success notification, scroll up to the top to see the all comments added to the picture:

Comments

Page 1 of 1 pages | View 20 per page | Total 2 records found

Select All | Unselect All | Select Visible | Unselect Visible | 0 items selected Actions

	ID	Name	Created At	Comment	Update
Any ▾					
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	Erich Forbes	2016-01-13 03:29:46	abcjbjknk,;	<input type="button" value="Update"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	Jessica LJ	2016-01-13 04:25:13	Your dress is very nice and it fits you perfectly. I'm gonna buy	<input type="button" value="Update"/>

After all these steps, you have done picture edits. Click on **Save** button to save the result after editing. Go to front end, reload the page and see the change.

2.3. Upload new image

- **Step1:** To upload new image by admin, click on **Add new** button on the right of the page.

click here to add new picture by admin 

	Location	Image	Created	Status	Action
			From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>		
	South Korea		Dec 9, 2015 11:02:45 PM	Enabled	Edit

- **Step 2:** After that, you will be redirected to a page to choose user who will own the new picture first. Click on checkbox in column **Select** to choose customer as you want:

Add New Back Reset Save Save And Continue Edit

Page 1 of 3 pages | View 20 per page | Total 60 records found Reset Filter Search

Select	ID	Name	Email	Group	Telephone	ZIP	Country	State/Province	Customer Since	Website
							All Coi		From: To:	
<input type="radio"/>	146	Phung Thong	thongpd207@gmail.com	General					Jan 11, 2016 3:06:11 AM	Main Website
<input type="radio"/>	145	fdfsd sdfsfsd	nhanquy.ytb@gmail.com	General					Jan 8, 2016 4:00:52 AM	Main Website
<input type="radio"/>	144	fhhf fhhf	fhhf@y.com	General					Jan 5, 2016 9:56:56 AM	Main Website
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	143	Minh Đức Đào	dao_duc410@yahoo.com	General					Dec 24, 2015 2:36:04 AM	Main Website
<input type="radio"/>	142	dad dasd	danghieu14@gmail.com	General					Dec 19, 2015 6:27:30 AM	Main Website
<input type="radio"/>	141	Jessica LJ	truongminhhang94@gmail.com	General					Dec 10, 2015 7:28:37 AM	Main Website
<input type="radio"/>	140	test test	daoduc1990@gmail.com	General	123345	123	Vietnam		Dec 10, 2015 7:12:53 AM	Main Website
<input type="radio"/>	136	Jane Doe	janedoe@example.com	General	888-888-8888	90232	United States	California	May 15, 2013 9:20:45 PM	Main Website
<input type="radio"/>	135	John	johndoe@example.com	General	888-888-8888	90232	United	California	May 15, 2013 9:16:11	Main

*Note: you can create a new user as you want and upload image under this new customer yourself by going to **Admin Panel => Customer => Manage Customer => Add New Customer**. After creating new customer, the new customer information will appear on this list as an user of Unboxed page.*

Click on **Save and Continue Edit** button to go to the next step.

- **Step 3:** Now you are in tab **Information**. In this tab, you fill all the boxes with image information and upload your image from your computer as desired.

Add New

General information

Status	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
Title *	<input type="text"/> ↑ This is a required field.
Description *	<input type="text"/> ↑ This is a required field.
Location *	<input type="text" value="Enter a location"/> ↑ This is a required field.
Upload Images *	<input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen ▲ Supported formats: jpg, jpeg, gif, png Max file size: 2M ↑ This is a required field.

↑ This is a required field.

- In box **Status**, you can set for this picture enabled or disabled
- In box **Title**, type the title for the picture uploaded
- In box **Description**, type the text describing the picture uploaded
- In box **Location**, choose the location for the picture uploaded (auto-complete location searching)
- In box **Upload Images**, upload new image by click on **Choose File** button, then you will be able to browse image from your computer to upload.

After that, click on **Save and Continue Edit** button to save the configuration to go to the next step.

- **Step4:** In this last step, you are in tab Product Tag. In this tab, you can tag any product to the picture already uploaded.

Here, a list of product will be shown like this:

Tag new product

Page 1 of 7 pages | View 20 per page | Total 133 records found

[Reset Filter](#) [Search](#)

Select	ID	Name	Type	Attrib. Set Name	SKU	Price	Qty	Websites
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="asc"/>	<input type="text"/>	From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/> In: <input type="text" value="USD"/>	From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	337	Aviator Sunglasses	Simple Product	Accessories	ace000	\$295.00	5	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	338	Jackie O Round Sunglasses	Simple Product	Accessories	ace001	\$295.00	19	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	339	Retro Chic Eyeglasses	Simple Product	Accessories	ace002	\$295.00	25	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	370	Isla Crossbody Handbag	Simple Product	Accessories	abl000	\$290.00	13	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	372	Flatiron Tablet Sleeve	Simple Product	Accessories	abl002	\$150.00	23	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	373	Broad St. Flapover Briefcase	Simple Product	Accessories	abl003	\$570.00	24	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	374	Houston Travel Wallet	Simple Product	Accessories	abl004	\$210.00	18	Main Website
<input type="checkbox"/>	375	Roller Suitcase	Simple Product	Accessories	abl005	\$650.00	15	Main Website

You can tag one or more products on the list by clicking on the checkbox of column Select in each product line.

You also can filter product by name, SKU, attribute, product type, price?to find out the product you want to tag on the picture.

After all these steps, you have done uploading picture under a specific user name. Click on Save button to save the result. Go to front end, reload the page and see the change.

41.2 Compatibility

Our Unboxed Extension is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

41.3 Changelog

Version 2.0.1 :

- Compatible with all Magento1 versions
- Compatible with Rwd responsive theme

41.4 FAQs

42.1 User Guide

42.1.1 Wholesale Fast Order Extension Overview

Recently many researches have proved that even one second delay in buying process can engage your loyal customers in abandoning your online store. Therefore, you can enhance your online store performance and encourage customers to start searching and selecting products by using **Wholesale Fast Order** by BSS Commerce right now.

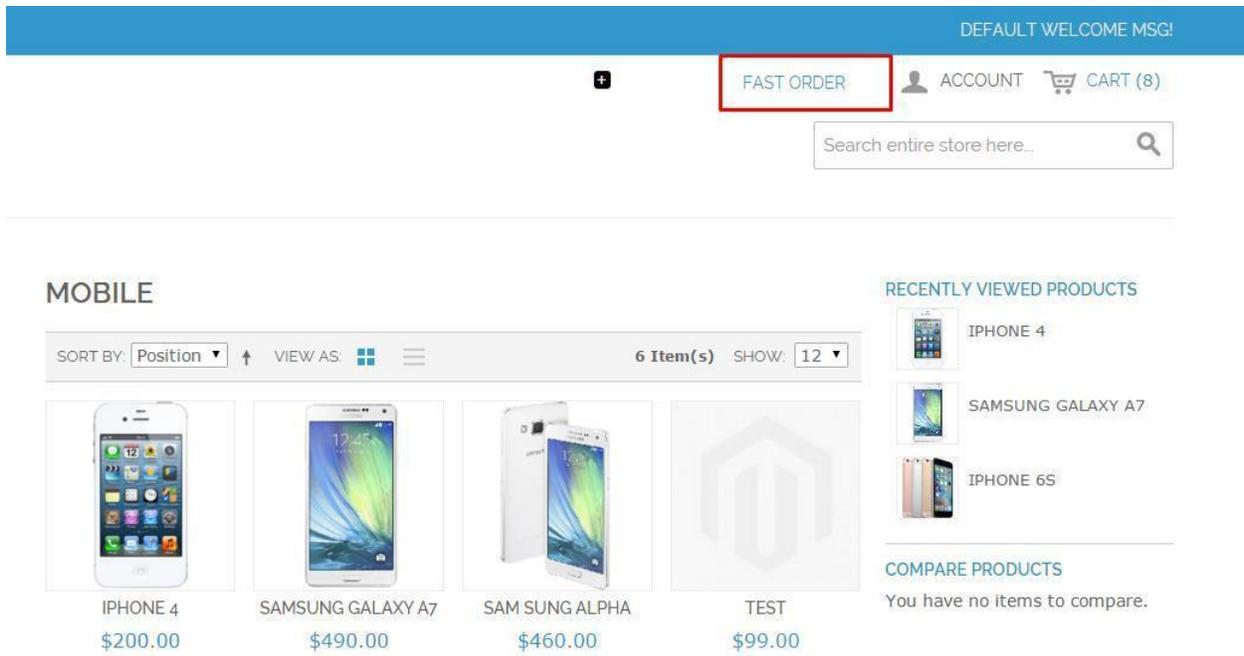
42.1.2 How does Wholesale Fast Order Extension work?

1. How to use functions of Wholesale Fast Order Extension

Wholesale Fast Order is a very useful extension that allows selecting multiple products at the same time and then adding them to shopping cart without spending too much time purchasing one by one. By this way, Wholesale Fast Order can optimize order process and decrease buying time by following these steps:

Step 1: Click **“Fast Order”** shortcut

When you install Wholesale Fast Order Extension, Fast Order shortcut will appear in the right side of your website. Customers click to Fast Order shortcut and there is a Fast Order pop up for them to search.



Step 2: Search products by typing names or SKU in the search boxes of the Fast Order pop up

There will be some suggestions for customers to choose and both names and SKU are included in the search results with the highlighted search keyword.

FAST ORDER

Search	Photo	Product	Qty	Total Price	Edit	Action
<input type="text" value="sam"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>		IPHONE6S SILVER 16GB \$600.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$600.00	<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text" value="sam"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>		SAMSUNG GALAXY A7 \$490.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$490.00	<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text" value="sam"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>		SUNG ALPHA \$500.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$500.00	<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>

Step 3: Select your wanted products with quantity and add them to cart

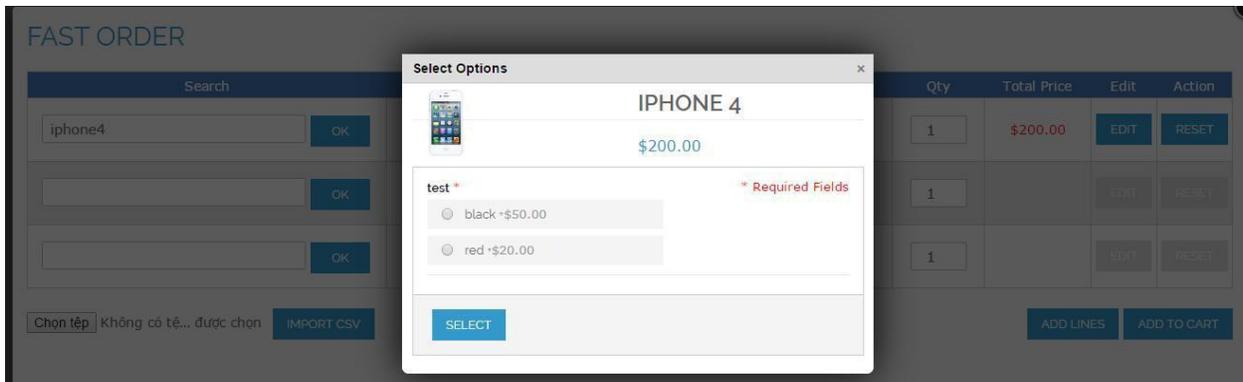
FAST ORDER

Search	Photo	Product	Qty	Total Price	Edit	Action
<input type="text" value="iPhone6s-silver-16"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>		IPHONE6S SILVER 16GB \$600.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$600.00	<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text" value="samsunga7"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>		SAMSUNG GALAXY A7 \$490.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$490.00	<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text" value="iphone5-white"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>		IPHONE 5 \$500.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$500.00	<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>

Không có ...được chọn

In addition, customers also import a CSV file of products (just require product name and SKU) to carry out the buying process faster without spending much time

If customers search for a configurable product, Wholesale Fast Order displays attributes in a pop up to choose. Moreover, you can edit product attributes and other custom options by clicking **“EDIT”** button.



Step 4: Customers can also view your shopping cart page to see chosen products. In the shopping cart page, there may be Fast Order Section to help customers continue their searching process.

FAST ORDER

Search	Photo	Product	Qty	Total Price	Edit	Action
<input type="text"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>

Không có t...được chọn

SHOPPING CART

PRODUCT	PRICE	QTY	SUBTOTAL	
SAMSUNG GALAXY A7 <i>SKU: samsunga7</i>	\$490.00	<input type="text" value="5"/> Edit	\$2,450.00	
IPHONE6S SILVER 16GB <i>SKU: iphone6s-silver-16</i>	\$600.00	<input type="text" value="5"/> Edit	\$3,000.00	

DISCOUNT CODES [APPLY](#)

ESTIMATE SHIPPING AND TAX

COUNTRY * STATE/PROVINCE * ZIP *

[ESTIMATE](#)

Flat Rate

Step 5: Process to checkout right after adding products into cart. The grand total will be automatically calculated as you add multiple desired items to cart at a time.

SHOPPING CART

PRODUCT	PRICE	QTY	SUBTOTAL	
SAMSUNG GALAXY A7 <i>SKU: samsunga7</i>	\$490.00	<input type="text" value="4"/> Edit	\$1,960.00	
IPHONE6S SILVER 16GB <i>SKU: iPhone6s-silver-16</i>	\$600.00	<input type="text" value="3"/> Edit	\$1,800.00	
IPHONE 5 <i>SKU: iphone5-white</i>	\$500.00	<input type="text" value="1"/> Edit	\$500.00	

DISCOUNT CODES [APPLY](#)

ESTIMATE SHIPPING AND TAX

COUNTRY * STATE/PROVINCE * ZIP *

[ESTIMATE](#)

Flat Rate

Fixed -\$40.00

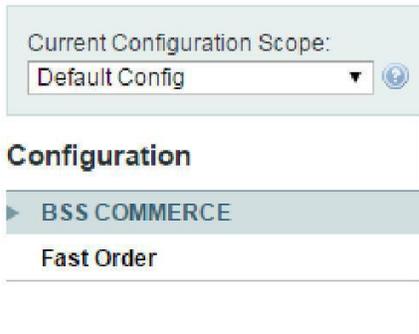
SUBTOTAL \$4,260.00

GRAND TOTAL \$4,260.00

[EMPTY CART](#) [UPDATE SHOPPING CART](#) -OR- [CONTINUE SHOPPING](#)

2. How to configure Wholesale Fast in the backend

For Admin Configuration, go through “System > Configuration > BSS Commerce > Fast Order”.



Fast Order

General settings	
Enabled	Yes
Fast Order Display	Popup
Enabled jQuery Library	No
Autocomplete minimum characters	2

▲ Minimum number of characters before displaying the autocomplete results

Choose how to display Fast Order.

In **Enabled**: You can switch on/switch off Whole Sale Fast Order by choosing **Yes** or **No** it in the backend.

In **Fast Order Display**: Choose **Popup** to display Fast order function in a Popup. It will display a Fast Order shortcut in Magento default toplink. If the site does not have toplink or toplink has been edited this setting does not take effect. To put Fast Order shortcut to your wanted position please insert this html into the file you want the shortcut will display:

```
<a href="domain/fastorder/ajax/loadform/" title="Fast Order" class="bss-fastorder" data-featherlight="ajax">Fast Order</a>
```

Select CMS Page if you want to show Fast Order in a CMS Page. It's required to create a CMS Page from Admin panel and add this code below into its content.

```
{{block type="core/template" template="bss/fastorder/form.phtml}}
```

In **Enabled jQuery Library**:

- Choose Yes to enable jQuery Library to run things related to jQuery.
- Choose No if your site already has jQuery Library already because it will cause some conflicts.

With Wholesale Fast Order, you can easily set up the number of lines shown in the pop up and the shopping cart page.

Number of lines (Shopping Cart)	1	To remove Fast Order section from Shopping Cart page, please leave this blank or 0.
<small>▲ Default lines showed in.</small>		
Enable search by SKU	Yes	
<small>▲ The autocomplete feature will search by NAME for default</small>		
Show Not Visible Products	No	
<small>▲ Choose 'yes' to enable search simple product not visible.</small>		
Number of lines (Popup)	3	If you leave this blank or 0 Fast Order popup will disappear.
<small>▲ Default lines showed in.</small>		

In **Number of lines (Shopping Cart)**: you set the number of lines of Fast Order shown in the Shopping cart. For example, you set equal to 1 and the number of lines in the shopping cart is 1 as follows:

FAST ORDER

Search	Photo	Product	Qty	Total Price	Edit	Action
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>

Chon tệp | Không có tệp... được chọn

SHOPPING CART

In **Number of lines (Pop up)**: you set the number of lines of Fast Order shown in the pop up. For example, you set equal to 3 and Fast order pop up contains 3 lines as follows:

FAST ORDER

Search	Photo	Product	Qty	Total Price	Edit	Action
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>
<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/>			<input type="text" value="1"/>		<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>	<input type="button" value="RESET"/>

Chon tệp | Không có tệp... được chọn

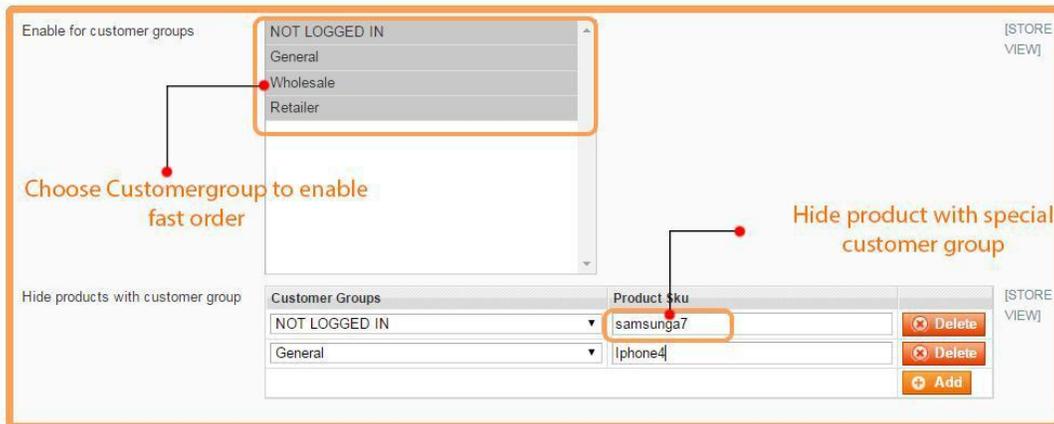
If you set these numbers of lines equal to 0, there is not any fast order shown in the pop up and the shopping cart page.

<input type="text" value="Autocomplete minimum characters"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> ▲ Minimum number of characters before displaying the autocomplete results.
<input type="text" value="Max results to show"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/> ▲ Number of results in the autocomplete box.

In **Autocomplete minimum characters**: you set the minimum characters customers have to type in the search box so that the result can appear.

In **Max results to show**: you set the number of results displayed in the autocomplete box

One of the differences of Wholesale Fast Order by BSS is the function of allowing admin to hide specific products with certain customer groups in fast order's searching box.



In **Enable for customer groups**: you choose group for whom you do not want to enable Wholesale Fast Order

In **Hide products with customer group**: You click “Add” to choose customer group and add product names or SKU that will be hidden from this group.

In **XML of update blocks**:

XML of update blocks	ID/Class selector of block to be updated	Layout Update Block name(should be same as in XML)	
	<input type="text" value=".block.block-cart"/>	<input type="text" value="cart_sidebar"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
	<input type="text" value=".header .links"/>	<input type="text" value="top.links"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
	<input type="text" value=".checkout-cart-index .cart"/>	<input type="text" value="checkout.cart"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
	<input type="text" value="#header-cart"/>	<input type="text" value="minicart_content"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
	<input type="button" value="Add Layout Update Block"/>		
	▲ insert HTML parent tag ID of block to be updated		

42.2 Compatibility

Our Wholesale Fast Order is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x, 1.5.x.x, 1.6.x.x, 1.7.x.x, 1.8.x.x, 1.9.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x, 1.13.x.x, 1.14.x.x

42.3 Changelog

Version 2.0.2:

- Show shortcut to fast order popup on all web layouts
- Show popup of product attributes and custom options for customers when input configurable product in fast order
- Allow customer to change product attributes and other custom options of configurable product by clicking on EDIT button
- Automatically calculate total price when customers increase or decrease product quantity

- Allow customers to import product in fast order with CSV file
- Showing success message after products are successfully added to cart
- Allow admin to hide specific products with certain customer groups in fast order's seaching box

Version 2.0.3:

- Switch on/ off fast order shortcut on web layouts

Version 2.0.9:

- New Feature: Allow display Fast Order in CMS Page
- Fix form key issue for Magento 1.9.2.3

Version 2.1.0:

42.4 Common Problems

1. Having problems with Currency Decimal separator?

In some countries Currency separator is ” , ” while ” . ” is used in US or UK. To fix problem when installing [Wholesale Fast Order](#) on the store using Decimal separator as ” , ” please follow below changes:

Edit file: /skin/frontend/base/default/js/bss/fastorder.js

Change:

```
finalprice = Number(finalprice.replace(/^[^0-9\.]+/g, ""));
```

Into:

```
finalprice = Number(finalprice.replace(", " , "."));
```

Change:

```
function convertPrice(price) {  
    price = parseFloat(price).toFixed(2).replace(/(\d)(?=(\d{3})+\.  
↪)/g, "$1,");  
    return price;  
}
```

Into:

```
function convertPrice(price) {  
    price = parseFloat(price).toFixed(2);  
    price = price.replace(".", ",");  
    price = price.replace(/(\d)(?=(\d{3})+\,)/g, "$1.")  
    return price;  
}
```

42.5 FAQs

42.5.1 General

Is this extension compatible with Magento rwd theme?

Yes, it is compatible with rwd theme of Magento

How can I get user guide of Wholesale Fast Order?

You can get user guide in the PDF file right on the product page of [Wholesale Fast Order](#) or user guide in this [wiki](#)

Do you provide free support and free installation for Wholesale Fast Order?

Yes, we will install and support you for free. When you request for installation, we will contact you for your credential information (admin information, FTP account). However, free installation offer for Wholesale Fast Order is just valid for 3 weeks since the purchase date, so after this period, you will pay an extra fee (\$40) for installation request.

How can I install this module by myself?

You can follow Installation guide and carry out as instructed to install on your own.

42.5.2 Features

What types of products does your Magento extension support?

Magento Wholesale Fast Order extension by BSSCommerce can be applied to not only simple products but also configurable products with custom options and virtual products.

Can I apply Magento Wholesale Fast Order for some certain customer groups?

Yes, you can. You configure it in “Enable for customer group” in the Magento admin panel and you select groups as your wish.

I want to hide some products from retailer group but they still appear on Magento Wholesale Product list. Can the extension do this? And how?

Yes. The extension supports the feature. You can hide some products from particular customer group. To do this, click “Add” button on “Hide products with customer group” and complete information there.

Do I need to complete the product names when searching them?

No, you don’t. The only thing you need to do is typing the configured number of initial letters configured from the backend of product names or SKUs, the AJAX search equipped shall automatically find the product as your needs.

For example, when you set “2” on “Autocomplete minimum characters” on the backend, AJAX search will find the product when your customers type 2 initial letters of the product name or SKU on the frontend.

Can I search products by category, price or by description?

No, you cannot. Our extension allows you to search products by name and SKU.

Can I enable JQuery Library in your extension?

Yes, it supports you to enable JQuery Library.

42.5.3 Guide

I want Magento Fast Order to display as a page instead of Popup. What should I do?

You may go to the Magento backend, create a “Fast Order” page on CMS page. Then, complete page information including page information, content, design and meta data. It is important for inserting the code string: “” on “Content” bar of the page and complete page layout and custom design on “Design” bar. Afterward, click “Save and Continue Edit”.

The next step, please go to Configuration. On Fast Order Display choose CMS Page and save. After that, go to frontend and scroll down the page, you can click “QUICK ORDER” shortcut in your Magento site footer and see the result.

How are the configurable products set on Magento Wholesale Fast Order popup?

When a configurable product is searched and chosen, the popup showing different variants of the products with different attributes will appear.

I do not want Fast Order to be shown in Shopping Cart, what should I do?

You just configure the setting from backend

Go through System-> Configuration-> BSSCommerce-> Fast Order

In Number of lines (Shopping cart), you set it to 0 or leave it blank and Fast Order Function will disappear in your shopping cart page.

I do not want Magento Fast Order Popup shortcut to be displayed in Homepage, what should I do?

Please go to the backend, you can set 0 or leave it blank on “Number of lines (Popup)” to make Fast Order shortcut disappear from Magento Homepage.

I have a list of products that I want to buy, how can I use Fast Order to buy all listed products without typing each name or SKU one by one?

Magento Wholesale Fast Order Extension supports importing a CSV file containing product SKU and quantity for a faster buying process. With this function, there is no need for you to insert product information one by one, which save time.

You only need to save your list into a CSV file and upload this file in the Fast order pop up and then all listed products are processed. Remember that products’ SKU and quantity are required in the CSV file.

How to manage the number of results shown in Fast Order popup?

In “Max results to show” from the Magento admin, you choose the number of results shown.

42.6 Translation

42.6.1 Instruction to translate text in BSS Wholesale Fast Order extension

Step 1. Go to folder app/locale/en_US/Bss_FastOrder.csv

- en_US: language folder. Depending on each site it has language folder according to the site’s language. In the module, it already have US language folder.

According to the site’s language you have to copy file Bss_FastOrder.csv in to the language folder. For example, if the site is in Japanese it’s required to copy Bss_FastOrder.csv into folder ja_JP.

- Bss_FastOrder.csv is csv file of the module

Step 2. Enable file Bss_FastOrder.csv

In this csv file it stores all text of the module which is divided into 2 columns

<https://gyazo.com/6980baccff367eb9ba15f9a590cf0737>

You need to add translation into second column.

Add Multiple Products To Cart

43.1 User Guide

43.1.1 Add Multiple Products To Cart for Magento 2 Overview

For customers who want to buy a variety of products in default Magento store, they would have to spend more time on the purchasing process as the default setting does not allow buyers to add many products to cart at once. It is a real challenge for store owners especially those targeting for wholesalers. And BSSCommerce has come up with an effective and useful solution to this problem by developing [Add Multiple Products To Cart for Magento 2](#). The extension helps customers to add multiple items to cart in different quantities at once on the homepage, category pages and search result pages. Moreover, they can select custom options for the products without visiting the product pages separately.

43.1.2 How does Add Multiple Products To Cart For Magento 2 work?

You go to **Admin -> Store -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Ajax Add Multiple Products Cart** and start configuration

Enabled
[store view] Yes

Choose 'yes' to enable module.

Enable for customer group
[store view]

ALL GROUPS

NOT LOGGED IN

General

Wholesale

Retailer

Apply addmultiple
[store view] .products-grid,.products-list,.table-comparison

Use class or id html (example : .products-grid,.products-list)

Default qty
[store view] 1

In **Enabled**: Choose **Yes** to enable the module or choose **No** to disable it. The module can be enable/disable on Store view level.

In **Customer group**: Choose customer group which you want to apply this module. Only customers in selected one are allowed to add multiple products to cart.

In **Apply addmultiple**: Use class or id html to apply the module. For example, use “.products-grid,.products-list” for the module to be applied in all pages with that class.

In **Default qty**: Select default quantity displaying in quantity box.

Success Popup Setting

Image Size (px)
[store view] 200

For single add

Image Size (px)
[store view] 200

For multiple add list error

Image Size (px)
[store view] 200

For multiple add

Number of Items
[store view] 4

Number of items to show at a time

Slide Speed
[store view] 400

Transition duration (in ms). // ex = speed:400;

In Image size (px) - For single add: Choose the image size of the product displaying in the success pop-up in case of adding only one product to cart.

In Image size (px) - For multiple add list error: Choose the image size of the product displaying in the pop-up in case of having error in adding multiple products to cart (unselected custom options, error in quantity).

In Image size (px) - For multiple add: Choose the image size of the products displaying in the success pop-up in case of adding multiple products to cart.

In Number of Items: Choose the number of item displaying in one success pop-up slide at a time.

In Slide Speed: Choose the transition duration of the slide in a millisecond.

Auto slide <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show "Continue" Button <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show Product Price <small>[store view]</small>	No	▼
Show Product Image <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Countdown time for Button <small>[store view]</small>	View Cart button	▼
Countdown time: ...(s) <small>[store view]</small>	300	
Show mini cart <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Checkout link in mini cart <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼

In Auto Slide: Choose Yes for the slide in the success pop-up to be moved automatically.

In Show "Continue" Button: Choose Yes to show the continue shopping button at the success pop-up.

In Show Product Price: Choose Yes show product price in success pop-up in case of adding only one product to cart.

In Show Product Image: Choose Yes to show the products' images in the success pop-up.

In Countdown time for Button:

- Choose either **View cart Button** or **Continue Button** to show the countdown time.
- Choose **No** to not display the countdown time.

In Countdown time:...(s): Choose the period of time to countdown until redirecting to either View cart or Continue shopping.

In Show mini cart: Choose Yes to display the mini cart on the success pop-up.

In Checkout link in mini cart: Choose Yes to show checkout link in the mini cart.

Success Popup Design

Text button add multiple to cart [store view]	Add all product to Cart
Button text color [store view]	FFFFFF
Continue button text [store view]	Continue Shopping
Continue button color [store view]	1979C3
Continue button color on hover [store view]	006BB4
View Cart button text [store view]	View Cart
View Cart button color [store view]	1979C3
View Cart button color on hover [store view]	006BB4

In **Text button add multiple to cart**: Choose the text to be displayed in the Add multiple to cart button.

In **Button text color**: Choose the text color in the buttons.

In **Continue button text**: Choose the text to be displayed in the Continue button.

In **Continue button color**: Choose the color of the Continue button.

In **Continue button color on hover**: Choose the color of the Continue button when hovering.

In **View cart button text**: Choose the text to be displayed in the View cart button.

In **View cart button color**: Choose the color of the View cart button.

In **View cart button color on hover**: Choose the color of the View cart button when hovering.

43.2 Compatibility

Our Add Multiple Products To Cart for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

43.3 Changelog

43.4 FAQs

Admin Product Preview Plus

44.1 User Guide

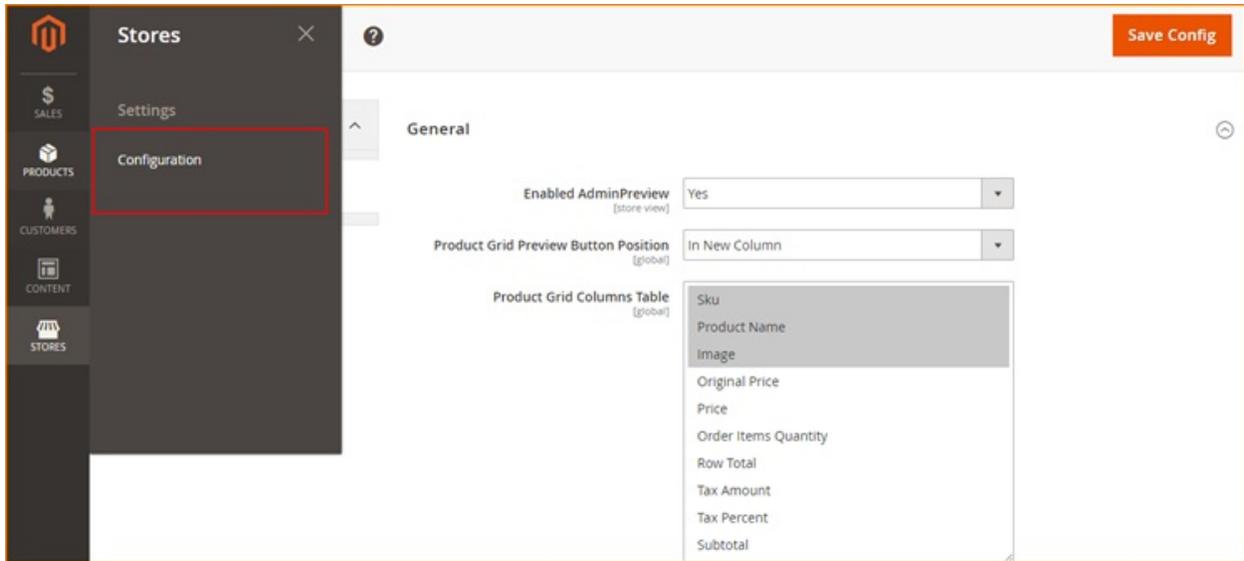
44.1.1 Admin Product Preview Plus for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Admin Product Preview Plus for Magento 2 is an excellent tool that allows administrators to check preview of products/Category Pages/CMS Pages/customer information in the frontend while setting up in the backend panel. This extension offers great flexibility to add preview link of product and customer in order grid view, permission to log in customer account in the frontend with full display of account information; besides, it allows to edit frontend page by navigating to backend Edit Page, and offers backend data linked for both product and customer information.

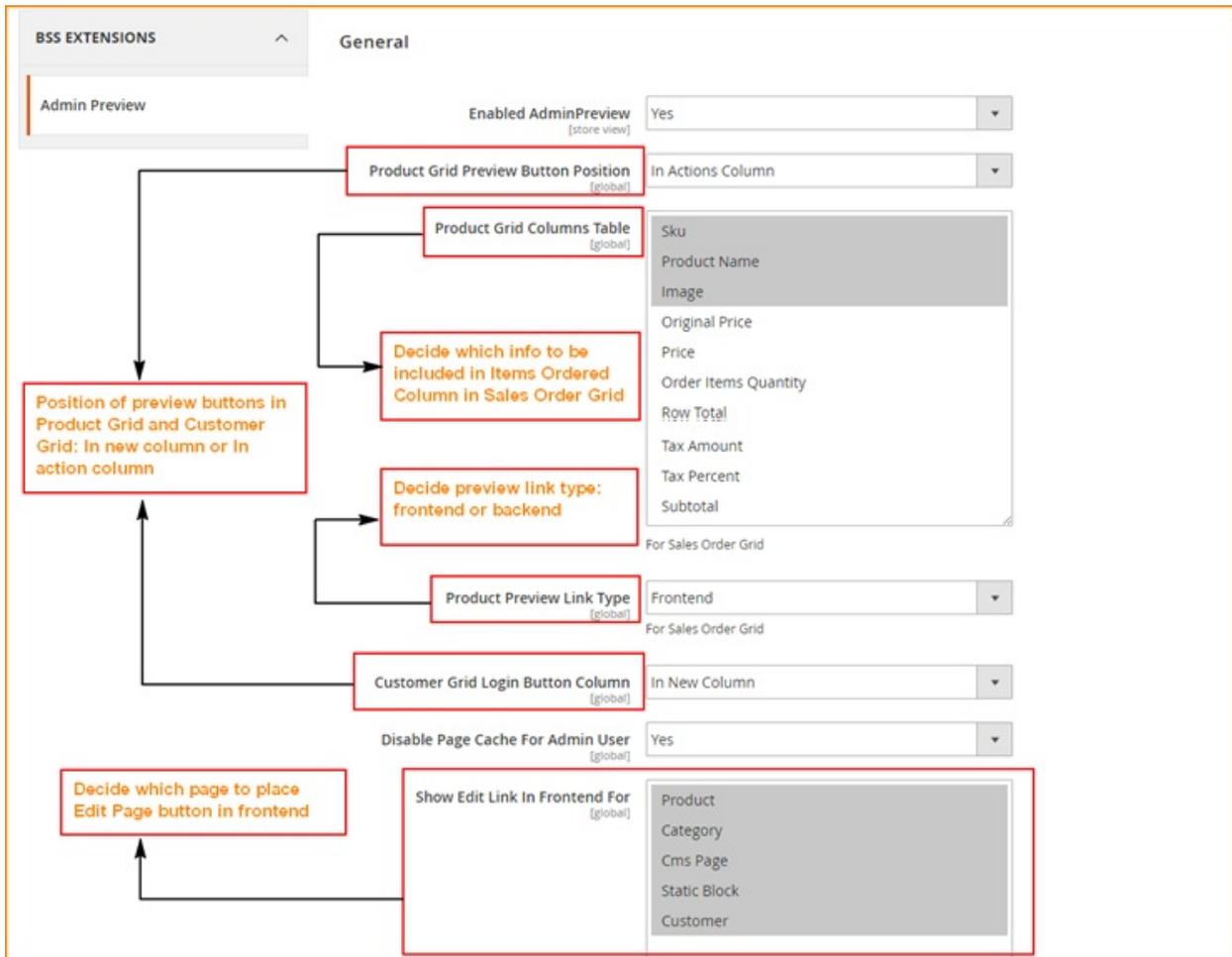
44.1.2 How does Admin Product Preview Plus for Magento 2 Extension work?

1. In Stores

Please navigate to **Stores -> Settings -> Configuration**



In General Configuration



In **Enabled Admin Preview**, choose Yes to enable module or choose No to disable module

In **Product Grid Preview Button Position**, set position of product grid preview button by choosing In New Column

or In Action Column

In **Customer Grid Login Button Column**, set position of column of customer Log-in button by choosing In New Column or In Action Column

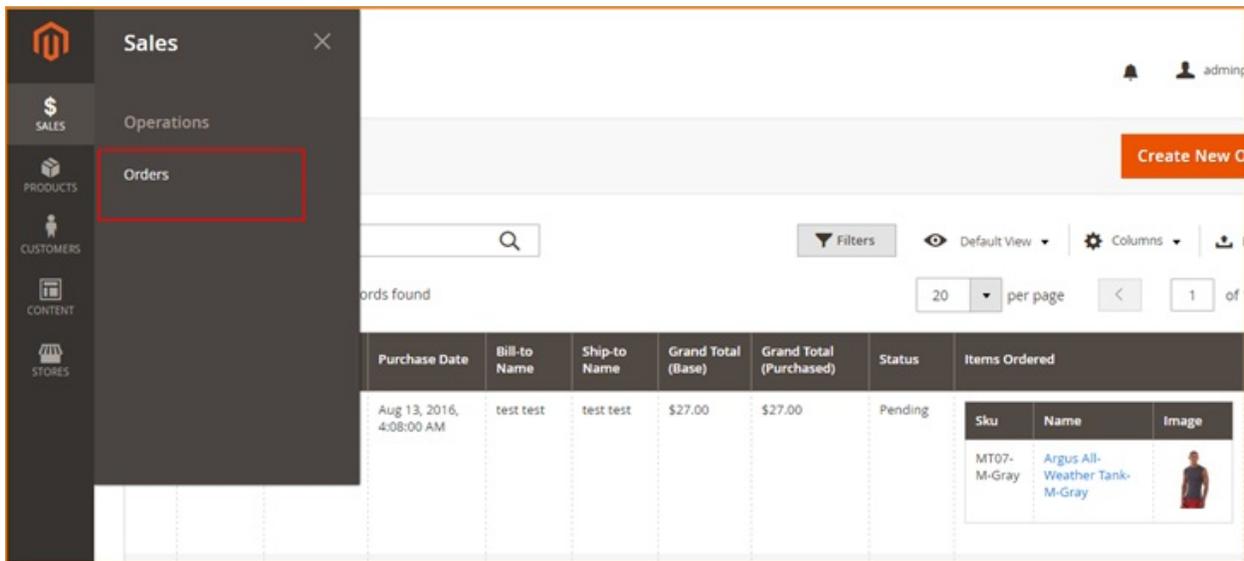
In **Product Preview Link Type**, choose Frontend or Backend to decide the navigation of preview links

In **Disable Page Cache For Admin User**, choose Yes to activate automatic cache flush before admin log in as customer and set show **Product Preview Link Type** to Frontend, otherwise choose No.

In **Show Edit Link In Frontend For**, choose one or multiple pages to place **Edit Page buttons** which directs admin to backend Edit Page from the frontend.

2. In Sales

Please go to **Sales -> Operations -> Orders**



Then check the **Sales Order Grid table** consisting of various columns, in which **Bill-to-name column** presenting name of customers who have placed orders on site, and **Item Ordered column** displaying brief information of ordered product (SKU, name, image?)

Orders Create New Order

ID	Purchase Point	Purchase Date	Bill-to Name	Ship-to Name	Grand Total (Base)	Grand Total (Purchased)	Status	Action	Items Ordered																				
000000006	Main Website Main Website Store Default Store View	Aug 19, 2016, 3:08:00 AM	Nguyễn Nhân Quý Test	Nguyễn Nhân Quý Test	\$76.00	\$76.00	Pending	View	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Sku</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Image</th> <th>Price</th> <th>Qty Ordered</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>WSH12</td> <td>Erika Running Short</td> <td></td> <td>\$45.00</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>24-WG085</td> <td>Sprite Yoga Strap 6 foot</td> <td></td> <td>\$14.00</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>24-WG086</td> <td>Sprite Yoga Strap 8 foot</td> <td></td> <td>\$17.00</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Sku	Name	Image	Price	Qty Ordered	WSH12	Erika Running Short		\$45.00		24-WG085	Sprite Yoga Strap 6 foot		\$14.00	1	24-WG086	Sprite Yoga Strap 8 foot		\$17.00	1
Sku	Name	Image	Price	Qty Ordered																									
WSH12	Erika Running Short		\$45.00																										
24-WG085	Sprite Yoga Strap 6 foot		\$14.00	1																									
24-WG086	Sprite Yoga Strap 8 foot		\$17.00	1																									
000000005	Main Website Main Website Store Default Store View	Aug 19, 2016, 3:08:00 AM	Nguyễn Nhân Quý Test	Nguyễn Nhân Quý Test	\$150.00	\$150.00	Pending	View	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Sku</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Image</th> <th>Price</th> <th>Qty Ordered</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>24-WG080</td> <td>Sprite Yoga Companion Kit</td> <td></td> <td>\$61.00</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WJ01</td> <td>Stellar Solar Jacket</td> <td></td> <td>\$75.00</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Sku	Name	Image	Price	Qty Ordered	24-WG080	Sprite Yoga Companion Kit		\$61.00		WJ01	Stellar Solar Jacket		\$75.00						
Sku	Name	Image	Price	Qty Ordered																									
24-WG080	Sprite Yoga Companion Kit		\$61.00																										
WJ01	Stellar Solar Jacket		\$75.00																										

Click name of customer to navigate to **Customer Information** section in the backend to check or make changes if needed.

Nguyễn Nhân Quý Test adminpreview

[Back](#)
[Delete Customer](#)
[Reset](#)
[Create Order](#)
[Reset Password](#)
[Force Sign-In](#)
[Login As Customer](#)
[Save and Continue Edit](#)
[Save Customer](#)

CUSTOMER INFORMATION

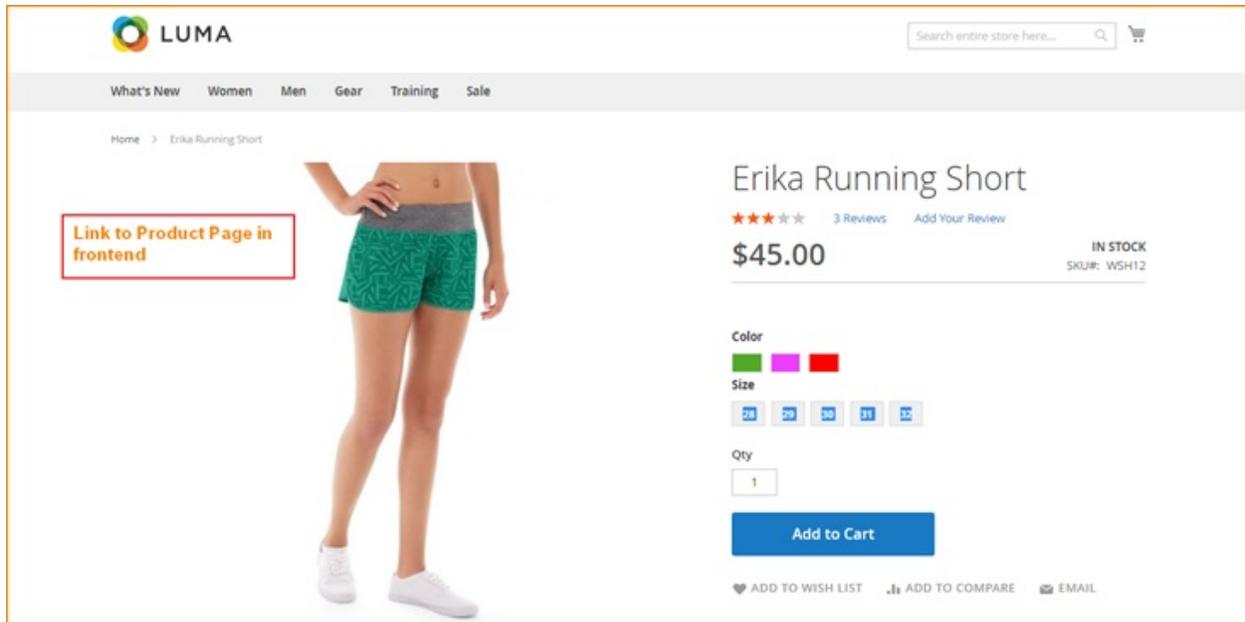
- Customer View
- Account Information
- Addresses
- Orders
- Billing Agreements
- Wish List

Personal Information

Last Logged In:	Aug 31, 2016, 8:57:25 AM (Offline)
Account Lock:	Unlocked
Confirmed email:	Confirmation Not Required
Account Created:	Aug 19, 2016, 3:28:47 AM
Account Created in:	Default Store View
Customer Group:	General

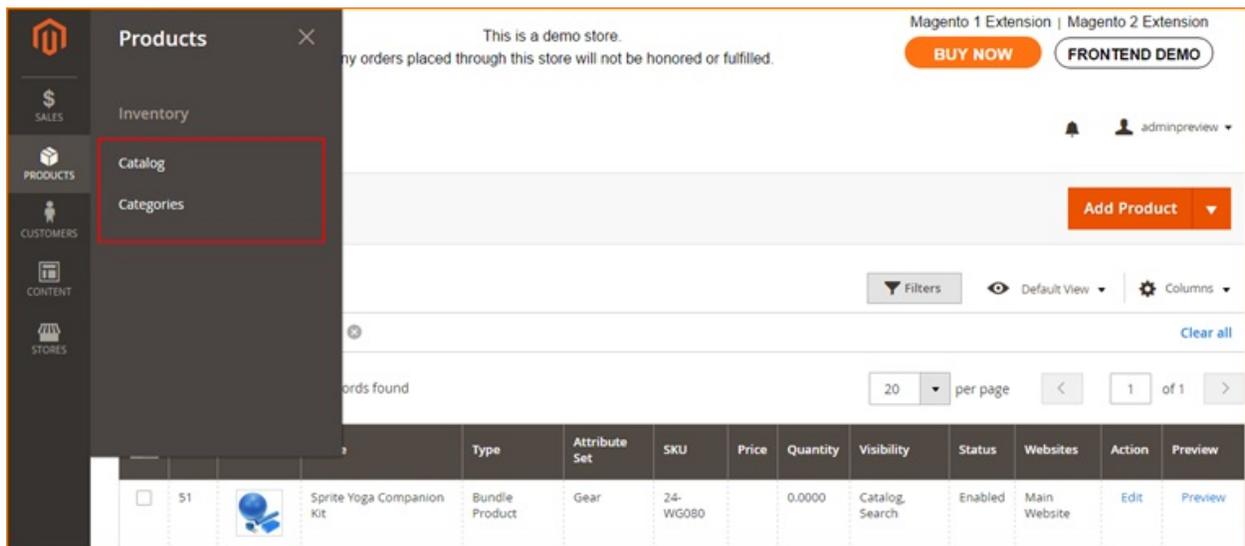
Default Billing Address
The customer does not have default billing address.

Click name of product to see preview of **Product Page** in the frontend.

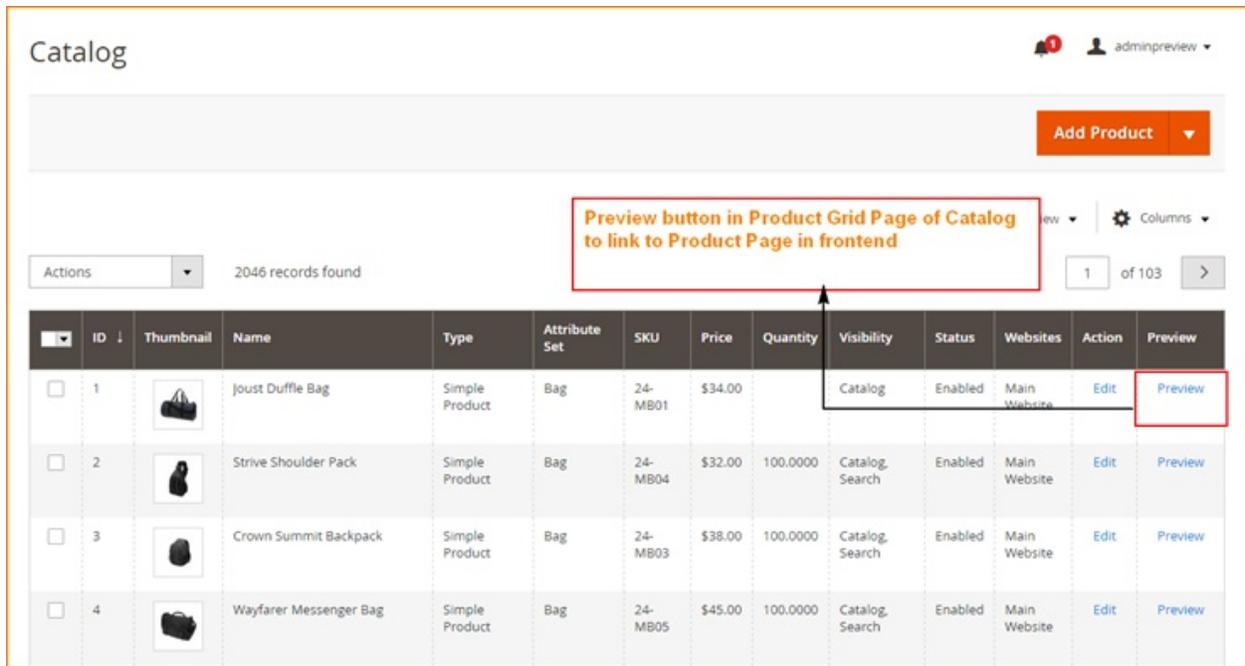


3. In Products

Please navigate to **Products -> Inventory -> Catalog**

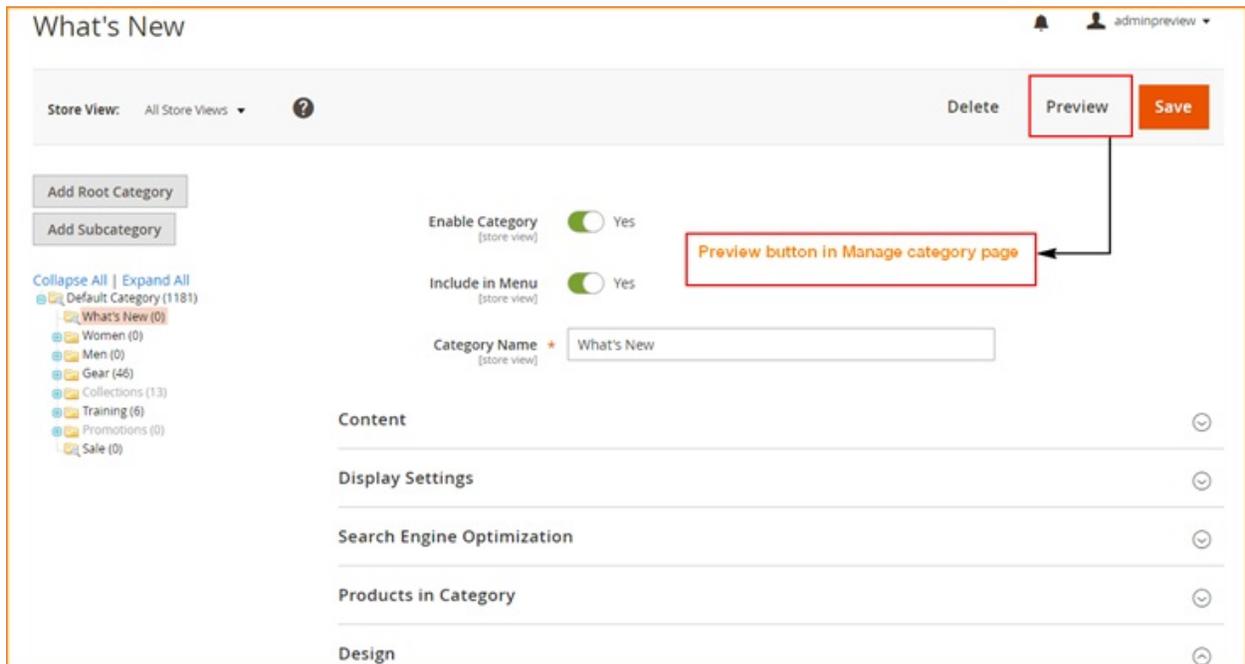


Click **Preview button** in product grid view in **Catalog section** to see preview of Product Page in the frontend, make changes in product information in Edit if necessary and click save.

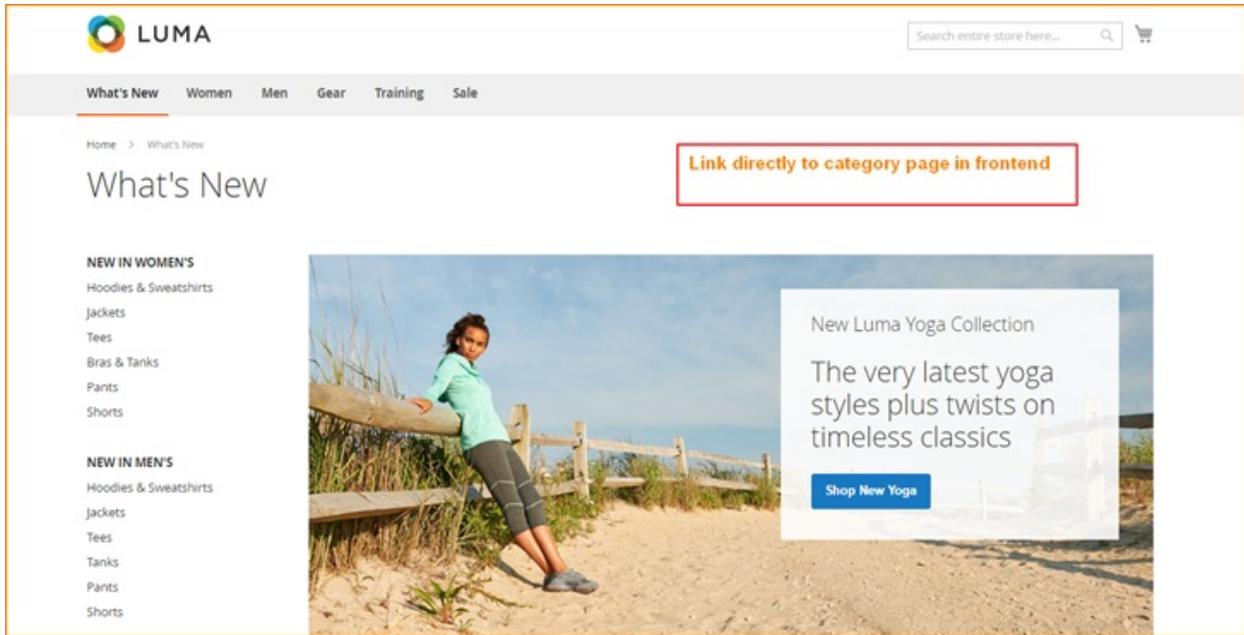


Please go to **Products -> Inventory -> Categories**

Check the list of Category Pages, make changes if needed, click Save then use **Preview button** to check frontend display of the chosen Category Page.

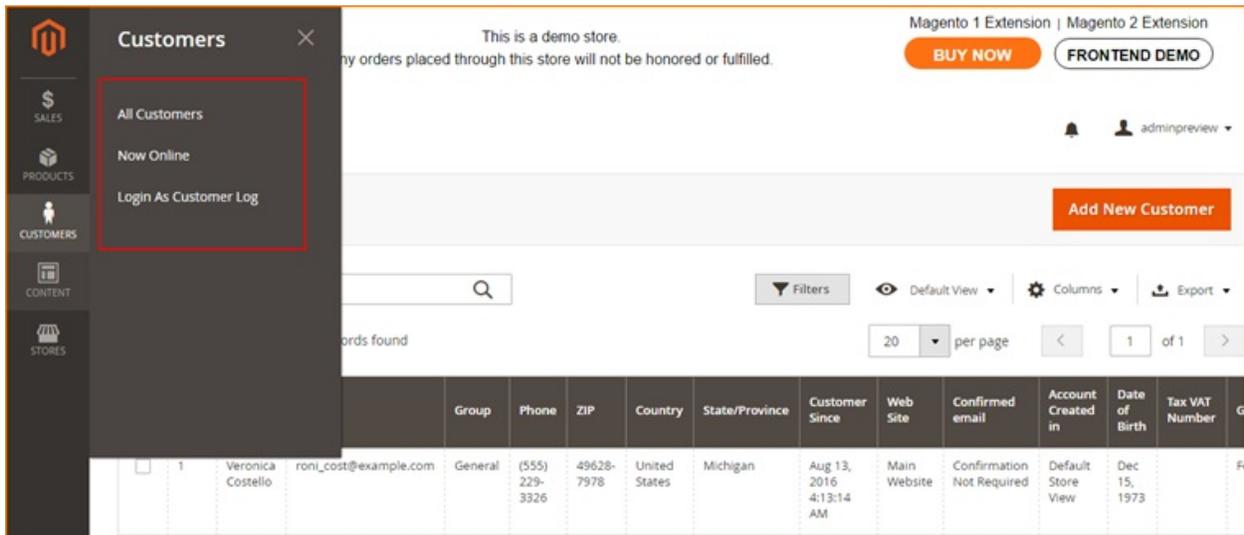


Display of the Category Page in frontend after clicking **Preview button**.



4. In Customers

Please go to **Customers** -> **All customers**



Click **Login** button to log in customer account from backend

Customers adminpreview

[Add New Customer](#)

Search by keyword

Actions 2 records found 1 of 1

Login button allow admin to log in customer account in frontend

ID	Name	Email	Group	Phone	ZIP	Country	State/Province	Customer Since	Web Site	Confirmed email	Account Created in	Date of Birth	Tax VAT Number	Gender	Action	Login
1	Veronica Costello	roni_cost@example.com	General	(555) 229-3326	49628-7978	United States	Michigan	Aug 13, 2016 4:13:14 AM	Main Website	Confirmation Not Required	Default Store View	Dec 15, 1993		Female	Edit	Login
2	Nguyễn Nhân Quý Test	nhanquy.ytb@gmail.com	General					Aug 19, 2016 3:28:47 AM	Main Website	Confirmation Not Required	Default Store View				Edit	Login

The module will permit admins to log in as customer in frontend page.

LUMA Search entire store here...

What's New Women Men Gear Training Sale

✔ You are logged in as customer: Veronica Costello

Log in customer account in frontend

My Dashboard

Recent Orders [View All](#)

Order #	Date	Ship To	Order Total	Status	Action
000000002	8/13/16	Veronica Costello	\$39.64	Complete	View Order Reorder
000000001	8/13/16	Veronica Costello	\$36.39	Processing	View Order Reorder

Account Information

In Customers -> Login As Customer Log

Login As Customer Log adminpreview

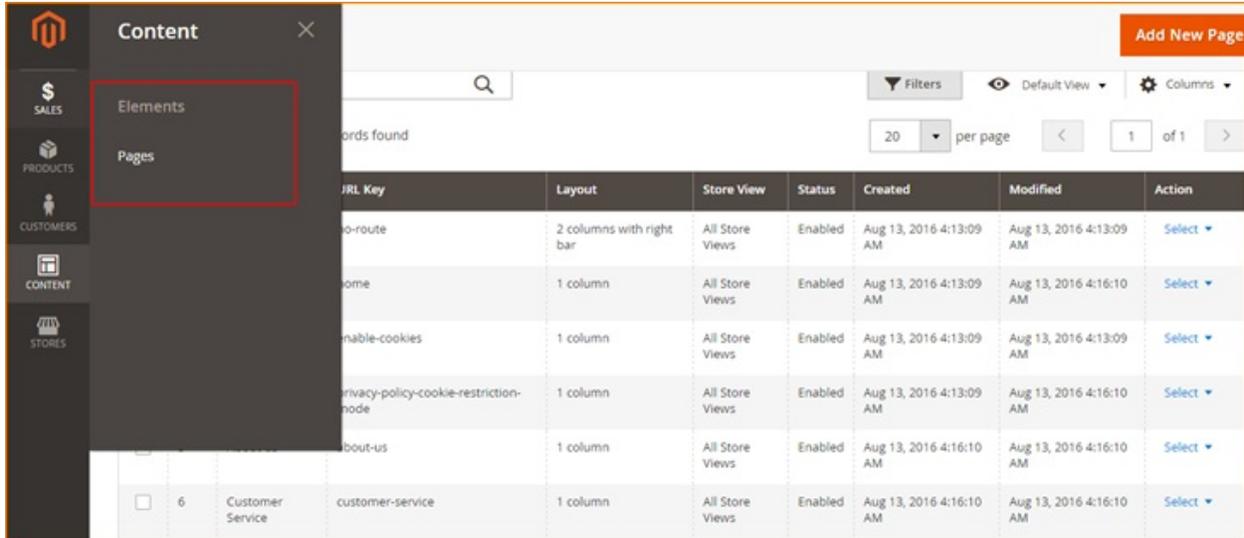
Search [Reset Filter](#) 16 records found 20 per page 1 of 1

ID	Customer ID	Customer Email	Admin ID	Admin Name	Logged In
					From <input type="text"/> To <input type="text"/>
16	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 19, 2016, 4:50:16 AM
15	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 19, 2016, 4:46:20 AM
14	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 19, 2016, 4:43:08 AM
13	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 19, 2016, 4:18:58 AM
12	2	nhanquy.ytb@gmail.com	1	admin	Aug 19, 2016, 3:30:41 AM
11	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 19, 2016, 3:22:13 AM
10	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 17, 2016, 2:44:31 AM
9	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 17, 2016, 2:33:48 AM
8	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 16, 2016, 7:46:45 AM
7	1	roni_cost@example.com	2	adminpreview	Aug 15, 2016, 8:14:46 AM

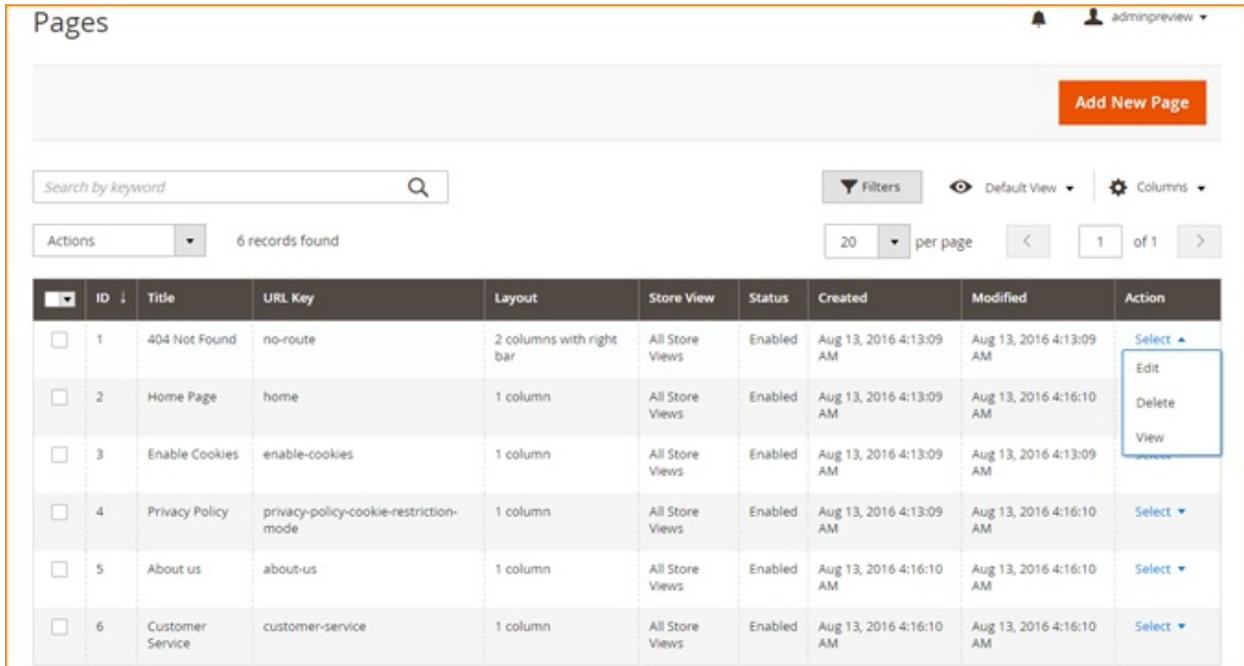
Login As Customer Log shows history of how many times admin have logged in as customer in frontend

5. In Content

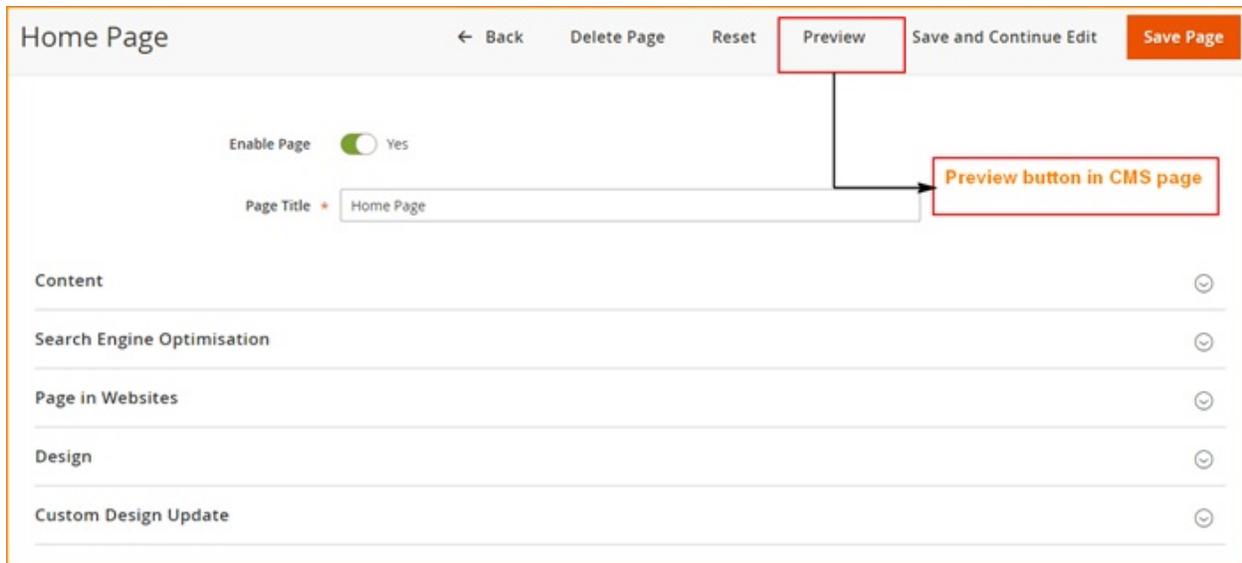
Please go to **Content -> Elements -> Pages**



Check the list of **CMS Pages**, click select and choose Edit to make changes in content of CMS Pages, then click Save.



In **Edit CMS page**, make changes if necessary, click **Save Page** and use **Preview button** to check frontend display of the edited page.



44.2 Compatibility

Our Admin Product Preview Plus for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

44.3 Changelog

44.4 FAQs

45.1 User Guide

45.1.1 Ajax Add To Cart for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Ajax Add To Cart for Magento 2 is an extension that allows convenient pop-up when adding product into shopping cart with ability to select product options and display of product information without leaving the current page. Furthermore, it also offers flexible customization of pop-up's design and layout in backend configuration.

45.1.2 How does Ajax Add To Cart for Magento 2 Extension work?

Please go to **Stores -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Ajax Cart**

1. In General Options

In **Ajax Cart**, go to **General Options** to begin setting up.

General Options

Enabled
[store view]
Choose 'yes' to enable module.

Enabled in product view
[store view]
Choose 'yes' to enable module in product view.

Success Popup Setting

Success Popup Design

Quick view Popup Setting

In **Enabled**: choose Yes to enable or No to disable the module

In **Enabled in product view**:

Choose Yes to allow this module to be activated in Product page

Choose No to disable this function, so if you choose No when clicking “Add to Cart” button on Product page, the Success Popup will not be displayed.

2. In Success Popup Setting

Success Popup Setting

Show Product Image <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	▼
Image Size (px) <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	
Show Product Price <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	▼
Show "Continue" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	▼
Countdown time for Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="View Cart button"/>	▼
Countdown time: ...(s) <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="10"/>	
Show mini cart <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	▼
Checkout link in mini cart <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	▼

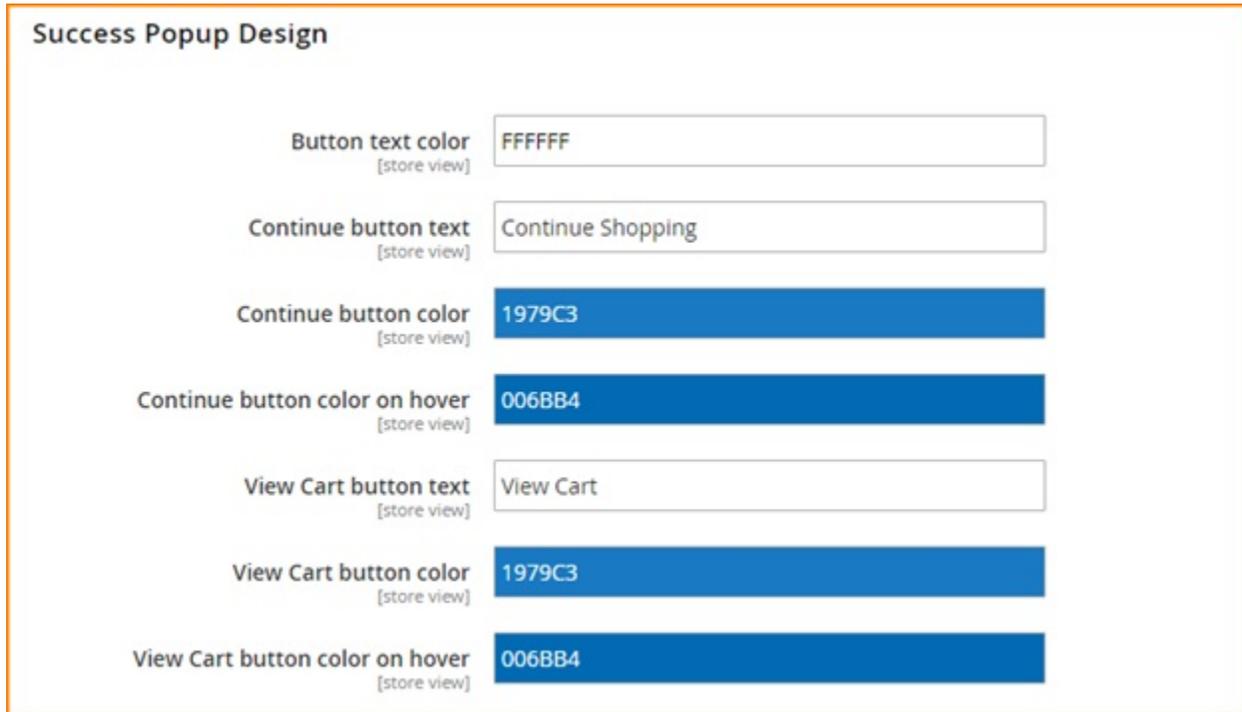
In **Show Product Image**, **Show Product Price** and **Show mini cart** (including number of items in cart and cart subtotal): choose Yes to have display of product image, price, and mini cart information in Success Popup, otherwise choose No.

In **Show "Continue" Button**: choose Yes to enable Continue Shopping button in the Success Popup or No to disable this button.

In **Countdown time for button**: decide to set countdown time for View Cart button or Continue button; then set time (measured in seconds) in **Countdown Time** section.

In **Checkout link in mini cart**: choose Yes to have checkout link embedded in Success Popup, otherwise choose No.

3. In Success Popup Design



The image shows a configuration form titled "Success Popup Design" with seven rows of settings. Each row consists of a label, a small "[store view]" link, and a text input field. The first two rows have white input fields, while the last four rows have blue input fields. The labels and their values are: "Button text color" (FFFFFF), "Continue button text" (Continue Shopping), "Continue button color" (1979C3), "Continue button color on hover" (006BB4), "View Cart button text" (View Cart), "View Cart button color" (1979C3), and "View Cart button color on hover" (006BB4).

Button text color	[store view]	FFFFFF
Continue button text	[store view]	Continue Shopping
Continue button color	[store view]	1979C3
Continue button color on hover	[store view]	006BB4
View Cart button text	[store view]	View Cart
View Cart button color	[store view]	1979C3
View Cart button color on hover	[store view]	006BB4

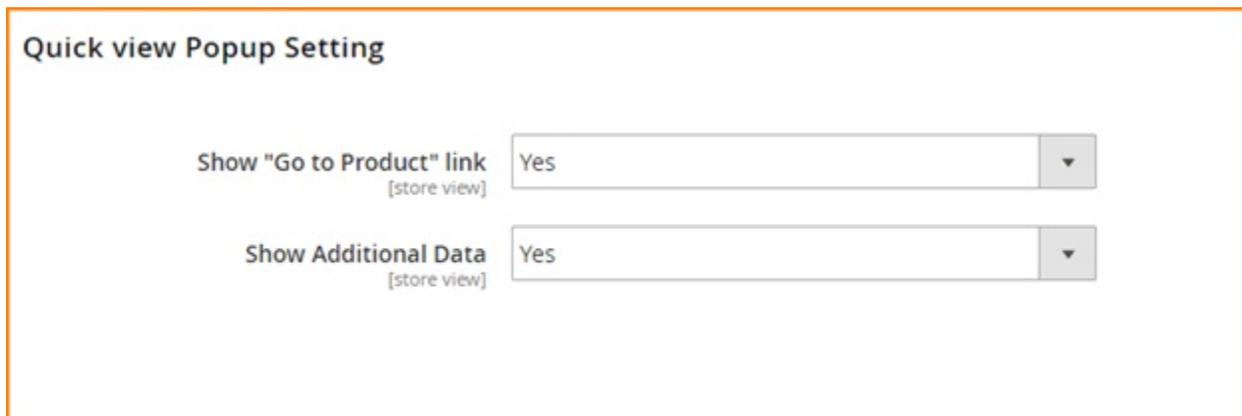
In **Button text color**: decide what color the text in Success Popup will have.

In **Continue button text**: type the text content to be displayed for continue button, then choose color and color on hover in the 2 following sections.

In **View Cart button text**: type the text content to be displayed for view cart button, then choose color and color on hover in the last 2 sections.

4. In Quick View Popup Setting

Finally, go to **Quick View Popup Setting** to change the setting for Quick View Popup



The image shows a configuration form titled "Quick view Popup Setting" with two rows of settings. Each row consists of a label, a small "[store view]" link, and a dropdown menu. The labels and their values are: "Show 'Go to Product' link" (Yes) and "Show Additional Data" (Yes).

Show "Go to Product" link	[store view]	Yes
Show Additional Data	[store view]	Yes

In **Show "Go to Product" link**, choose Yes to enable "Go to Product" link which allows to go to Product page in Quick View Popup, otherwise choose No.

In **Show Additional Data**, choose Yes to have display of other information of product (including product detail, review and more information), or No to hide this section.

45.2 Compatibility

Our Ajax Add To Cart for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

45.3 Changelog

45.4 FAQs

46.1 User Guide

46.1.1 Magento 2 Ajax Social Login Overview

The ease of login or register process will inevitably encourage customers to interact more with your site. While traditional sign up form might drive customers to bounce out immediately due to the complication and amount of time they have to spend on that step, login with social media method can give them more incentive to sign up on your site.

Understand the demand for a quicker and more convenient method of login and register on Magento site, BSSCommerce has developed [Magento 2 Ajax Social Login](#) which allows customers to sign through social media accounts like Facebook, Twitter, Google Plus. . . quickly via Ajax pop-up. With [Magento 2 Ajax Social Login](#), customer can signup or login on a site quickly within few clicks instead of wasting time on filling in register or login form. Ajax pop-up is also a method to save up time customers might spend on loading new pages. While many people tend to forget the information they used for signup like email, username and password, social login function will help them get rid of remembering all above information. Social login also benefits shop owners by encourage site visitors to share content with their social network, which is one of the most powerful free word-of-mouth advertising.

46.1.2 How does Magento 2 Ajax Social Login work?

Log in as admin from backend, go to **Store -> Configuration -> BSS COMMERCE -> Ajax Social Login** to start setting configuration.

General

Enable
[store view] Yes

Use Popup Ajax
[store view] Yes

Display buttons social
[store view]

Login Page

Register Page

Header

Popup

Display Social

Send Password
[store view] Yes

1. In General

- In **Enable**:
 - Choose **Yes** to enable the module.
 - Choose **No** to disable it.
- In **Use Popup Ajax**:
 - Choose **Yes** to enable the Ajax pop-up to replace Login and Create An Account pages.
 - Choose **No** if disable it.
- In **Display button social**: Highlight to select position(s) on site that you want to place the social login block.
- In **Send Password**: After customers successfully signed up through a social media account, you can decide whether to send them a password for following times they log in on site. With the password, customer can sign in in both ways: choose login with social account or use the email of that social account along with

the password that they received.

Display Customer Photo [store view] Yes
 Display customer photo from social network in your website header.

Redirect after Login [store view] Stay on the current page
 User will be redirected to this page after each successful login

Redirect after Register [store view] Stay on the current page
 User will be redirected to this page after successful registration

Show limit button [store view] 6

Social Buttons Sorting

	Facebook
	Twitter
	Googleplus
	LinkedIn

- In **Display Customer Photo**:
 - Choose **Yes** to display the customer’s profile photo from the social account they used for signup at wherever the customer’s photo on site usually shows up.
 - Choose **No** to not display customer’s social photo.
- In **Redirect after Login**: Select the page on site or any particular URL you want to redirect after customer login successfully.
- In **Redirect after Register**: Select the page on site or any particular URL you want to redirect after customer completed register process.
- In **Show Limit Button**: Choose the number of social login buttons which you want to display in social login block. If this number is smaller than the total amount of social accounts enabled on site, the “Show more” button will appear in social login block for customers to look for more available options.
- In **Social Button Sorting**: You can hold and drag the social accounts to re-order the position they appear in social login block.

2. In reCaptcha

reCaptcha

The screenshot shows the reCaptcha configuration interface with the following fields and options:

- Site Key** [store view]: 6Le6FgcUAAAAA0i2Jr1BVk1RqRqOGrG2RscuvcF. Below the field is a link: [Create a site key](#).
- Secret Key** [store view]: 6Le6FgcUAAAAA1aQScHY1aVZfvYMBM2HcsxLL_S. Below the field is a link: [Create a site key](#).
- Theme** [store view]: Light. Below the field is a link: [See the Google reCAPTCHA Documentation for more](#).
- Type** [store view]: Image. Below the field is a link: [See the Google reCAPTCHA Documentation for more](#).
- Size** [store view]: Normal. Below the field is a link: [See the Google reCAPTCHA Documentation for more](#).
- Popup Form** [store view]: A dropdown menu with three options: Login, Register, and Fogot Password?.

- In **Site Key** and **Secret Key**: Click “Create a site key” and register reCaptcha

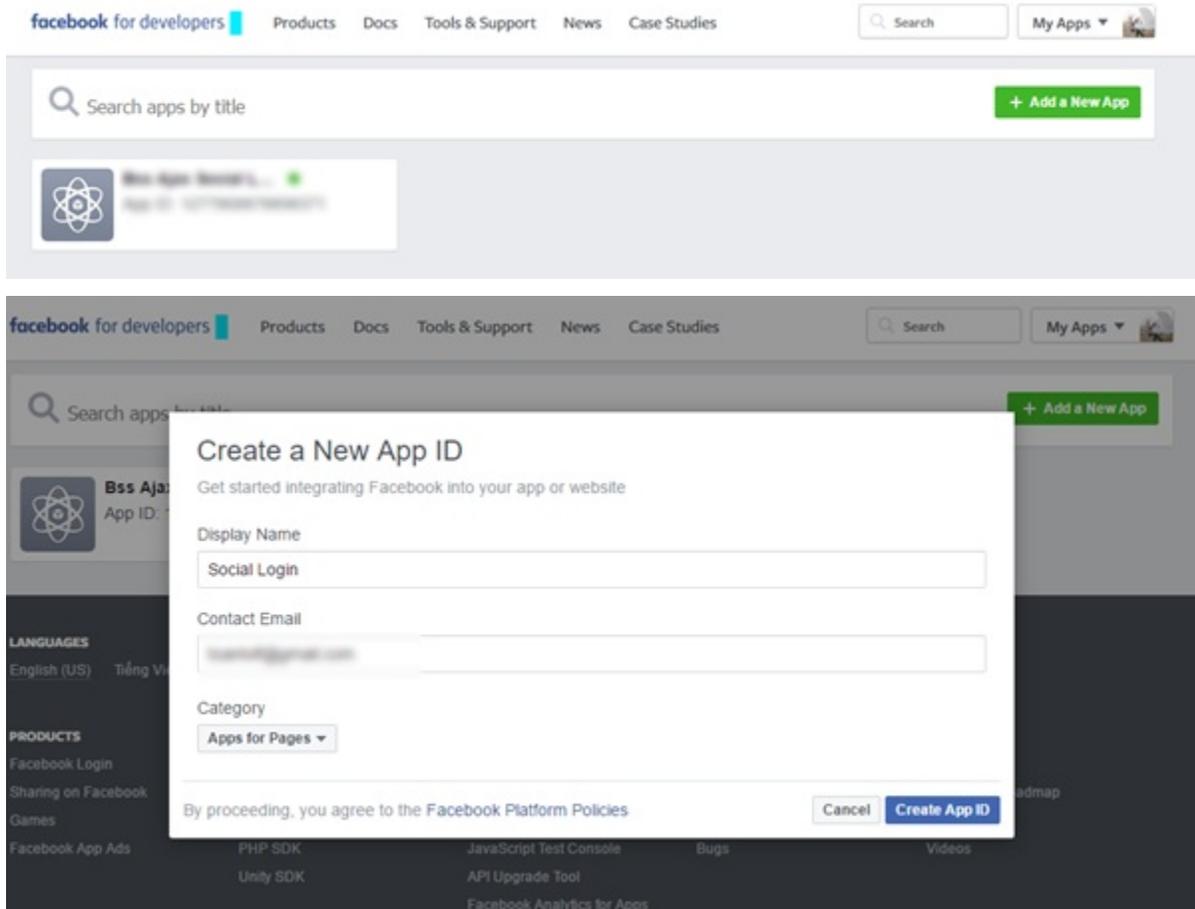
Register a new site

The screenshot shows the "Register a new site" form with the following fields and options:

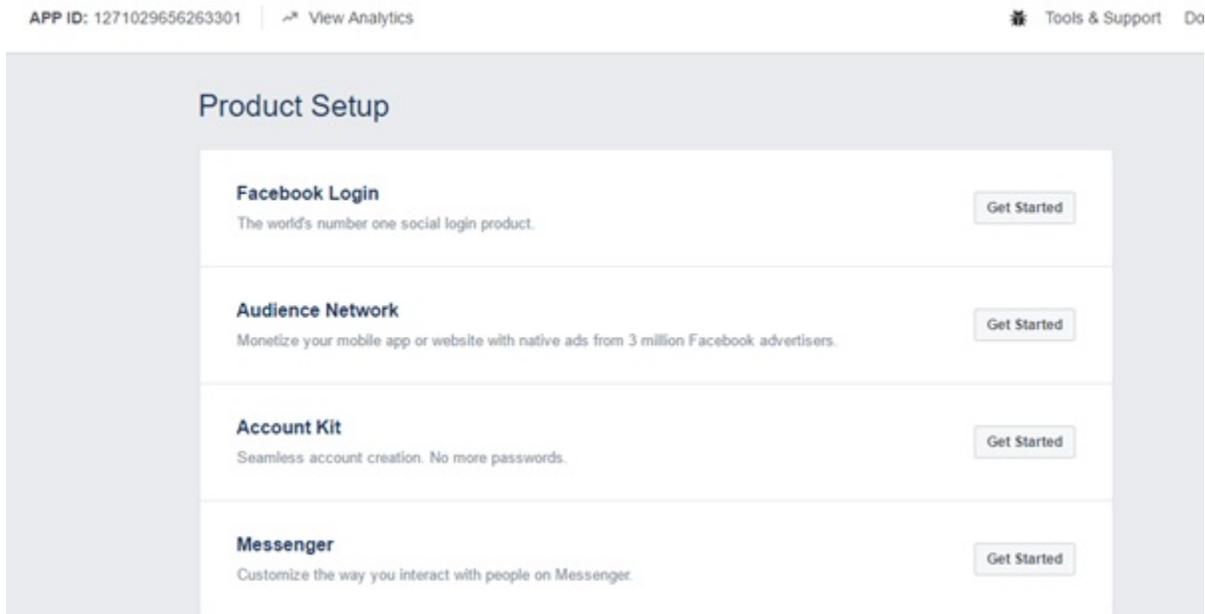
- Label**: A text input field containing "Ajax Social Login".
- Domains** (one per line): A text input field containing "example.com" and "example2.com".
- Send alerts to owners** [?](#)
- Register** button.

After registering, you will got the Site key and Secret key as below:

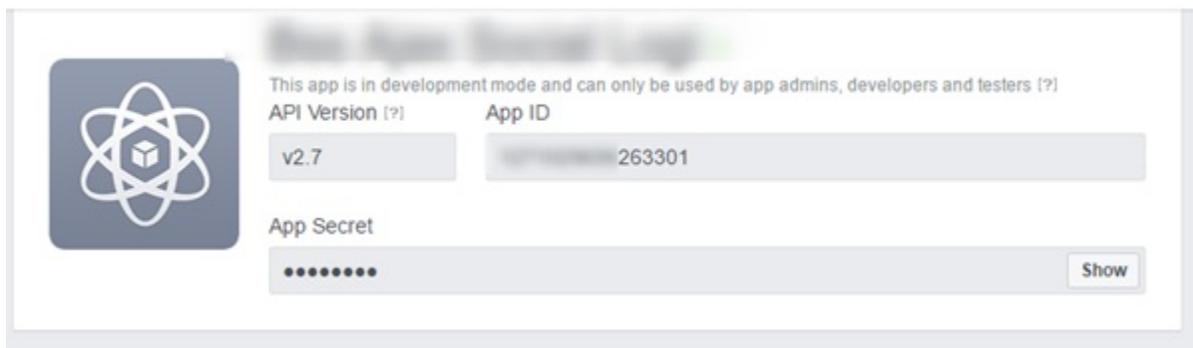
- In **Enable**:
 - Choose **Yes** to enable Facebook account for login and register on site.
 - Choose **No** to disable Facebook account for login and register on site.
- In **App ID** and **App Secret**: Click on “click here” below Enable dropdown box, you will be redirect to a page to set up new API like below



After completing register step, you will see a page as below. Click on Get Started in Facebook Login



Click on Dashboard, you will see your App ID and App Secret - copy them and paste correspondingly into **App ID** and **App Secret** box in backend configuration.



- In **URI redirection valid OAuth** copy the Valid OAuth redirect URIs like below and paste into the box **URI redirection valid OAuth**

- In **Small Icon**: Upload the file for icon of this account displayed in frontend.
- In **Login Button Text**: Customize the text in social login button.
- In **Registration Button Text**: Customize the text in social registration button.

For other social accounts, follow similar steps like the setting for Facebook:

- **Twitter**

Twitter

Application Settings

Keep the "Consumer Secret" a secret. This key should never be human-readable in your application.

Consumer Key (API Key)	<input type="text" value="yngb4YNlyRnl"/>
Consumer Secret (API Secret)	<input type="text" value="INB7t5d6FhGpLKdIGX2VVzYFtg"/>
Access Level	Read and write (modify app permissions)
Owner	<input type="text" value=""/>
Owner ID	<input type="text" value="202392064"/>

- Google

Google

Enable <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Create Client ID Key and Client Secret, please click here .	
Client ID <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="1buh48lkqmau3bfk1"/>
Client Secret <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="....."/>
Authorized redirect URIs <small>[website]</small>	<input type="text" value="http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-ajax-s"/>
Please use this link for Authorized redirect URIs field when registering with Google API	

API API Manager

- Dashboard
- Library
- Credentials

Credentials

Client ID for Web application

Client IDpps.googleusercontent.com
Client secret4JyrkP0hXbFks
Creation date	Aug 6, 2016, 11:08:20 AM

Name

Restrictions
Enter JavaScript origins, redirect URIs, or both

Authorized JavaScript origins
For use with requests from a browser. This is the origin URI of the client application. It can't contain a wildcard (http://*.example.com) or a path (http://example.com/subdir). If you're using a nonstandard port, you must include it in the origin URI.

Authorized redirect URIs
For use with requests from a web server. This is the path in your application that users are redirected to after they have authenticated with Google. The path will be appended with the authorization code for access. Must have a protocol. Cannot contain URL fragments or relative paths. Cannot be a public IP address.

x
...../sociallogin/account/login/type/googleplus/

• **Yahoo**

Yahoo!

Enable [store view] ▼

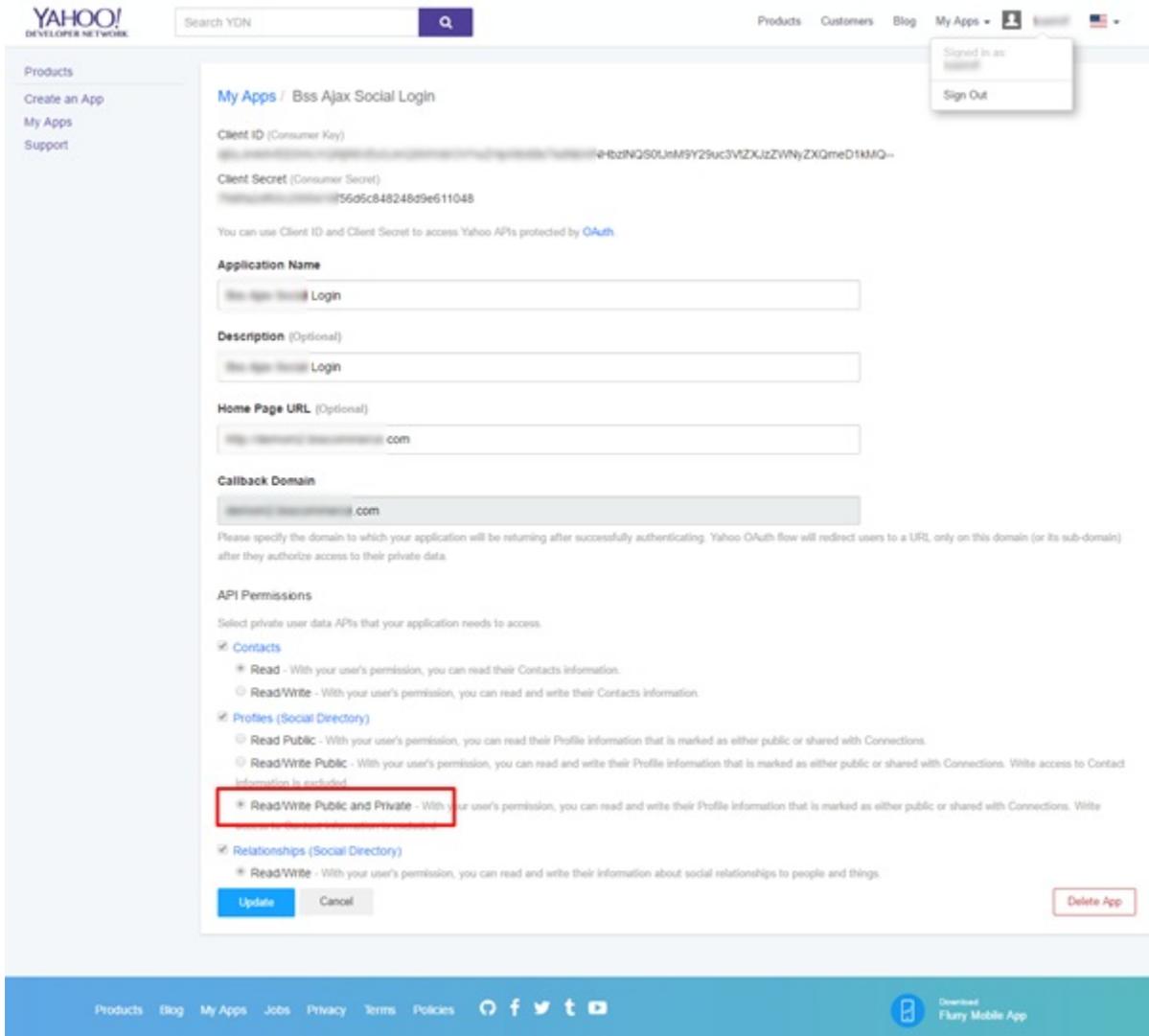
Create Client ID Key and Client Secret, please [click here](#).

Client ID [store view]

Client Secret [store view]

Callback Domain [website]

Please use this link for "Callback Domain" field when registering with Yahoo API



• **Linkedin**

LinkedIn

Enable [store view]

Create Client ID Key and Client Secret, please [click here](#).

Client ID [store view]

Client Secret [store view]

Redirect URL(s) [website]

Please use this link for Redirect URL(s) field when registering with LinkedIn API

- Window-Live

Live / Hotmail / MSN (Microsoft Account)

Enable [store view] Yes
For configuration instructions, please [click here](#).

Application Id [store view]

Application Secrets [store view]

Redirect URL(s) [website]
Please use this link for Redirect URL(s) field when registering with Windows Live API

Name

Application Id
1A2A1D

Application Secrets [Learn More](#)

[Generate New Password](#)

5nz8R5tEp	Version 0	Current
-----------	-----------	---------

Platforms

[Add Platform](#)

Web

Allow Implicit Flow
 Restrict token issuing to this app
Limits the issuing of JSON Web Tokens (JWT) for your domain to exclusively this application.

Target Domain
This is the domain that other apps will use when they request a JWT for your app on Windows (such as www.contoso.com).

Redirect URIs [Add Uri](#)

- Instagram

Instagram

Enable [store view] Yes
For configuration instructions, please [click here](#).

Application Id [store view] [redacted]edd9492f760b581

Application Secrets [store view]

Redirect URL(s) [website] http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-ajax-si
Please use this link for Redirect URL(s) field when registering with Windows Live API

Client ID [redacted]edd9492f760b581

Client Secret [redacted]369dfc851cd2c

Client Status Sandbox Mode

[Details](#) **[Security](#)** [Sandbox](#) [Permissions](#) [Migrations](#)

Valid redirect URIs:

- http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-ajax-si/instagram/ x
- http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-ajax-si/sociallogin... x

Press Enter to confirm.

- **Vkontakte**

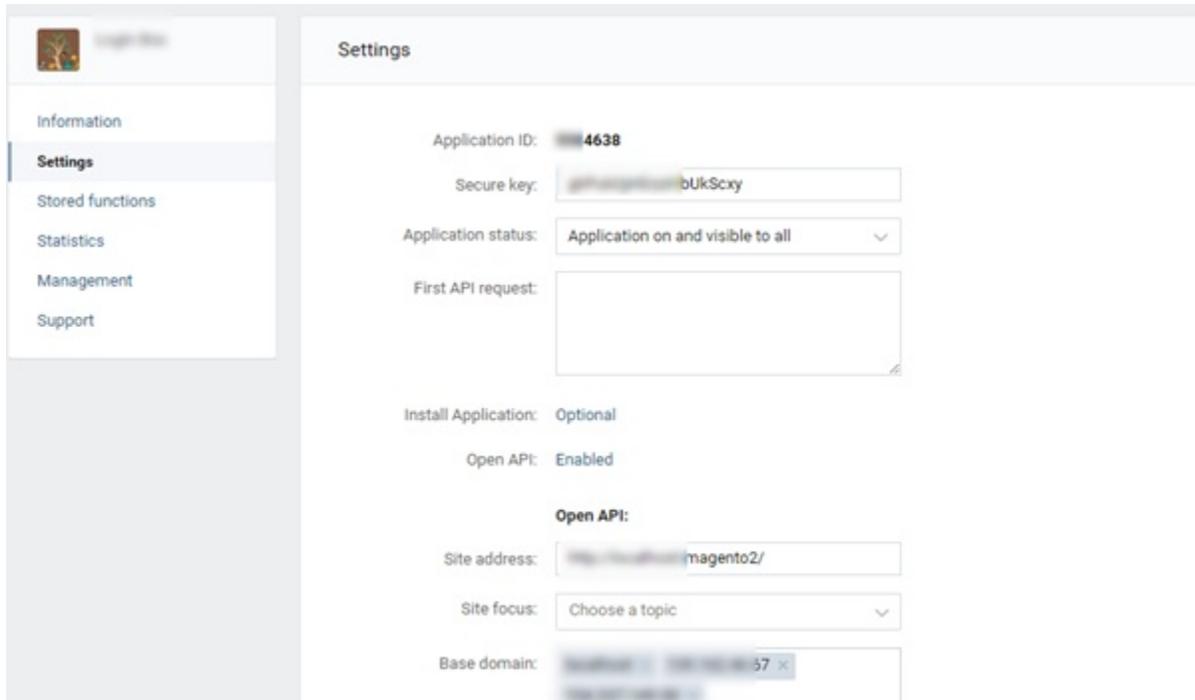
Vkontakte

Enable [store view] Yes
For configuration instructions, please [click here](#).

App ID [store view] [redacted]38

App Secret [store view]

Base URL(s) [website] http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-ajax-si
Please use this link for Base domain field when registering with Vkontakte API



Finally, click **Save Config** and to complete setting process.

*Note : As claimed in the description, this module can support unlimited social accounts. Beside 8 accounts currently available for configuration, you can totally add more social media accounts to the list as wish by following below simple steps:

Step 1: Add code below to a template file

```
<?php echo $this->getLayout()->createBlock("Bss\SocialLogin\Block\Buttons")->
    setTemplate("Bss_SocialLogin::customer/form/login/buttons.phtml")-> toHtml();
```

Step 2: Put a social login button block on a CMS page

```
{{block class="Bss\SocialLogin\Block\Buttons" name="buttons.sociallogin"
    template=" Bss_SocialLogin::customer/form/login/buttons.phtml"}}
```

Step 3: Copy and paste the code below into one of xml layout files where you want to show the social button block

```
<block class="Bss\SocialLogin\Block\Buttons" name="sociallogin.customer.form.login.
    buttons"
    as="sociallogin_buttons" template="Bss_SocialLogin::customer/form/login/
    buttons.phtml" />
```

46.2 Compatibility

Our Ajax Social Login for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

46.3 Changelog

46.4 FAQs

47.1 User Guide

47.1.1 Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 Extension Overview

ANZ eGate Payment Gateway for Magento 2 is developed to integrate ANZ eGate into Magento 2 sites to allow credit card processing right on the sites. This module provides more secure and reliable payment methods for customers to choose besides available ones.

47.1.2 How does Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 Extension work?

You go to **Stores -> Sales -> Payment Method**

In the **Payment Method**, you go to **ANZ Egate** to begin setting up:

Anz Egate

Enabled [website] Yes

Title [store view] Egate

Test mode [website] Yes

New Order Status [website] Pending

Action [website] Authorise and Capture

Merchant Id [store view]

Access Code [store view]

User [store view]

Password [store view]

Account information in ANZ eGate

In **Enabled**: choose Yes to enable this module or choose No to disable it

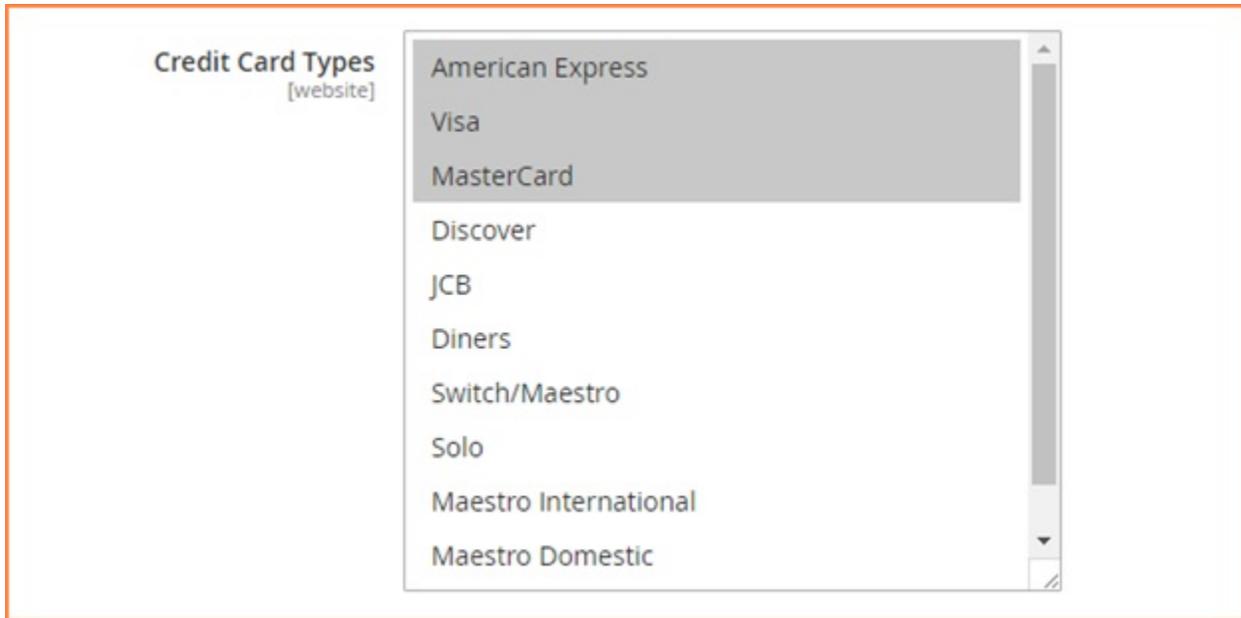
In **Title**: You type the name of payment method displayed on your site

In **Test module**: choose Yes to set up module in the test mode status, otherwise choose No

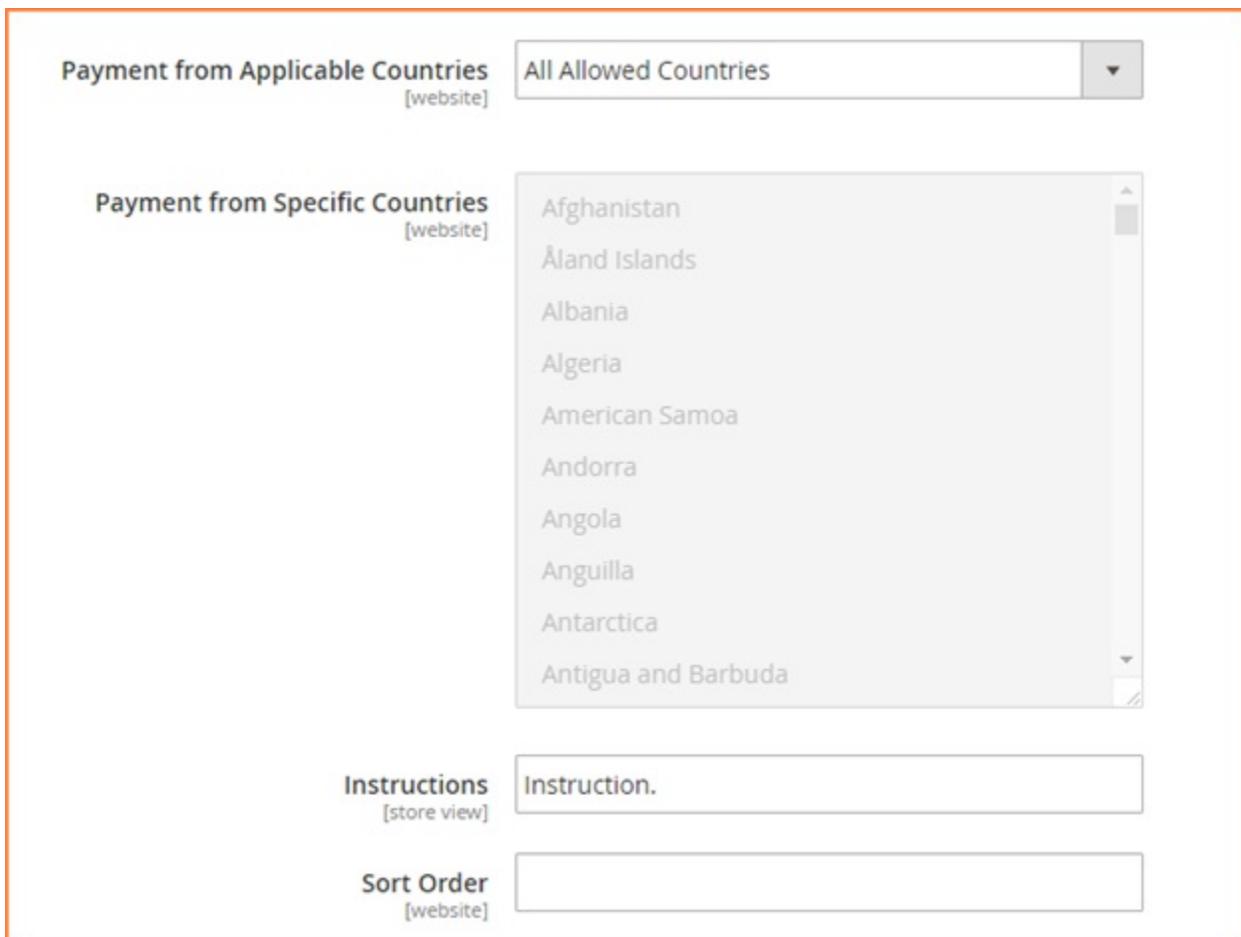
In **New Order Status**: you pick up an order status that are displayed after these orders are successfully placed by customers

In **Actions**: you can choose Authorize Capture or Authorize

In these sections: **Merchant ID, Access Code, User and Password**: you fill in with your account information in ANZ



In **Credit Card Types**: you select types of credit cards that are allowed for payment



In **Payment from Applicable Countries**: You can select all countries allowed to apply this payment method or select some specific countries

In **Payment from Specific Countries**: if you choose some specific countries to apply this payment in the previous section, you can pick up your own countries from the drop-down list in this field.

In **Instructions**: you can type some text to explain or describe more about this payment method

In **Sort Order**: you choose the order of this payment method on the checkout page

47.2 Compatibility

Our ANZ eGate Payment Gateway for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

47.3 Changelog

v1.0.0 . First Release

47.4 FAQs

48.1 User Guide

48.1.1 BSS Auto Invoice for Magento 2 Overview

To reduce time and effort to generate invoice and shipment manually, [BSS Auto Invoice for Magento 2](#) is specially created to automatically create invoice/shipment as well as send emails to customer. As a result, it will put an end of overload of manually creating invoices for Magento Store Owners. With this powerful extension, admin can easily manage orders and contact with customers quickly and effectively.

48.1.2 How does BSS Auto Invoice for Magento 2 work?

As an admin, you can set up your own store page by the most effective way that supports your trading objective. To polish the website configuration:

Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel** => **Store** => **Settings** => **Configuration**

Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS COMMERCE** => select **Auto Invoice**

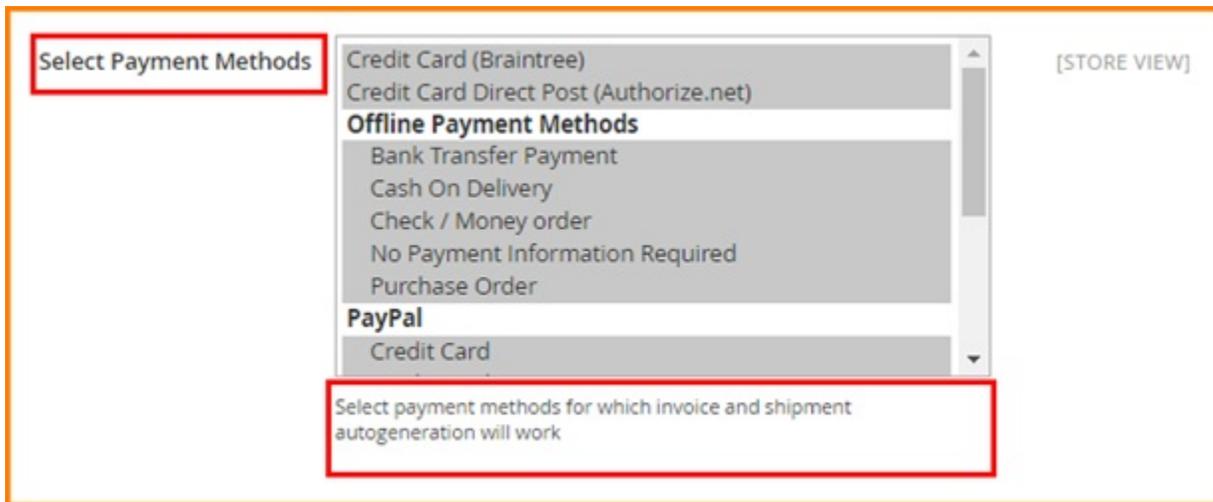
Choose **Yes/No** to enable/disable BSS Auto Invoice for Magento 2 Extension



There are 3 sections for admin to continue configuring the extension: **Select Payment Methods**, **Enable automatic invoice generation**, **Enable automatic shipment generation**.

1. Select Payment Methods

In the box Select Payment Methods, select all the payment methods for which you want invoice and shipment will be generated automatically.



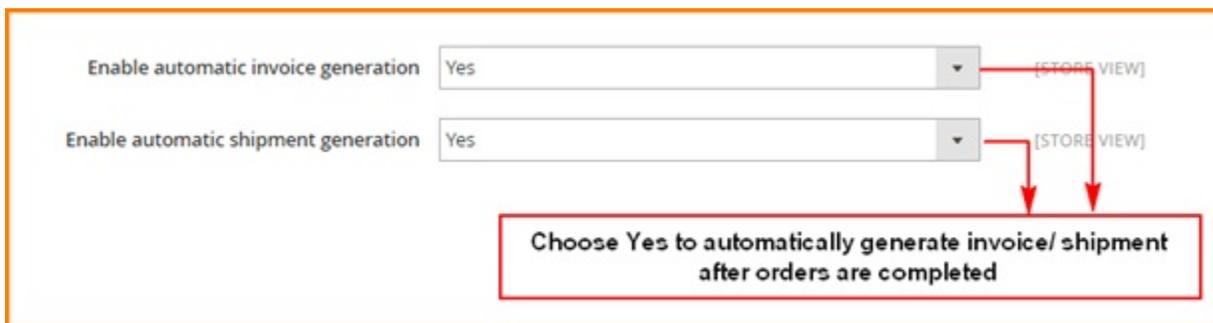
Remember that with Paypal method, invoice will be generated automatically by default.

2. Enable automatic invoice/ shipment generation

In “Enable automatic invoice generation” box, after you choose Yes to enable the function, invoices will be generated automatically after orders are completed.

You set up similarly with automatic shipment generation in the following box.

Remember that only when automatic invoice generation is enabled, can you enable automatic shipment generation.



If you enable both automatic invoice and shipment generations, your customers will receive 3 emails after ordering completely: Order confirmation, Shipment confirmation and Invoice

<input type="checkbox"/> ☆ Sales	Your Main Website Store order confirmation - Main Website Store test test, Thank you for your order from Mail
<input type="checkbox"/> ☆ Sales	Your Main Website Store order has shipped - Main Website Store test test, Thank you for your order from Mail
<input type="checkbox"/> ☆ Sales	Invoice for your Main Website Store order - Main Website Store test test, Thank you for your order from Main

If you only enable automatic shipment generation, the first and third emails will be sent.

You can see email samples as below:

- Invoice

Thank you for your order from Main Website Store.
 If you have questions about your order, you can email us at support@example.com.

Your Invoice #000000063 for Order #000000174

Billing Info	Shipping Info
test test test test, American Samoa, 123521 United States T: 4321	test test test test, American Samoa, 123521 United States T: 4321
Payment Method	Shipping Method
Check / Money order	Free Shipping - Free

Items	Qty	Subtotal
Overnight Duffle SKU: 24-WB07	1	\$45.00
Joust Duffle Bag SKU: 24-MB01	1	\$34.00
	Subtotal	\$79.00
	Estimated Total	\$79.00

- Shipment confirmation

test test,
 Thank you for your order from Main Website Store.
 If you have questions about your order, you can email us at support@example.com.
 Your shipping confirmation is below. Thank you again for your business.

Your Shipment #000000009 for Order #000000174

Billing Info	Shipping Info
test test test test, American Samoa, 123521 United States T: 4321	test test test test, American Samoa, 123521 United States T: 4321
Payment Method	Shipping Method
Check / Money order	Free Shipping - Free

Items	Qty
Overnight Duffle SKU: 24-WB07	1

48.2 Compatibility

Our Auto Invoice for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 1.4.x.x
- Enterprise: 1.12.x.x

48.3 Changelog

48.4 FAQs

Catalog Price Rule per Store View

49.1 User Guide

49.1.1 Catalog Price Rule Per Store View for Magento 2 Overview

As you know, default Magento just allows creating catalog price rules for the whole website. It means that a rule will be set up and applied for all stores or store views of a website. Therefore, [Catalog Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2](#) is developed to help administrators to set up catalog price rules for each store view easily, which can offer different promotion programs for customers in particular areas and generate sales more effectively.

49.1.2 How Does Catalog Price Rule Per Store View for Magento 2 Work?

After installing this module, you will select store views to set up cart price rules when you create new rules.

You go to **MARKETING -> Catalog Price Rules -> Add New Rule**.

You fill in necessary information in sections of **Rule information**. Especially, in **Store View** section, you will select store views to set up this rule and apply in the frontend. You can select **multiple store views** to carry out setup at one time.

Take 2 following examples to see how Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2 can function in details.

- **Example 1: Set up a rule “20% OFF for all products belonging category Bag” for English store view.**

Rule Information

Rule Name * 20% OFF for Bags in English store view

Description

Status Active

Store View *
Main Website
Main Website Store
English
Default Store View
French
Italy

Customer Groups *
NOT LOGGED IN
General
Wholesale
Retailer

In Rule Information:

- Fill in Rule name and Description.
- Set Yes for Active.
- Select English of Main Website Store in Store View section.
- Select customer groups to apply.
- Fill in other information: time and priority

In **Conditions**: Set up the right condition for this rule.

Conditions

Conditions (don't add conditions if rule is applied to all products)

If **ALL** of these conditions are **TRUE** :

Category is 4 



In **Actions**: Choose suitable actions for the rule.

Actions

Apply 

Discount Amount 

Discard subsequent rules 

Finally, you Save and Apply the rule and then see how it is applied in the frontend of English store view:

The screenshot shows the LUMA website interface. At the top right, there is a language selector dropdown menu with 'English' selected. Below the header, the navigation menu includes 'What's New', 'Women', 'Men', 'Gear', 'Training', and 'Sale'. The 'Gear' category is active. The main content area is titled 'Bags' and displays four products: 'Joust Duffle Bag', 'Overnight Duffle', 'Driven Backpack', and 'Endeavor Daytrip Backpack'. Each product is shown with its image, name, and price. The 'Overnight Duffle' is highlighted with a red callout box that reads: 'Rule "20% OFF for all products belonging to Category Bags" is applied in the English store view.' The 'Compare Products' section shows 'You have no items to compare.' and the 'My Wish List' section is empty.

Product Name	Current Price	Regular Price
Joust Duffle Bag	\$27.20	\$34.00
Overnight Duffle	\$36.00	\$45.00
Driven Backpack	\$28.80	\$36.00
Endeavor Daytrip Backpack	\$26.40	\$33.00

- **Example 2: Set up a rule “10% discount for all products belonging category Bag” for French store view.** You do the same steps as in Example 1 but you need to choose French store view to set up in Store Views section.

Rule Information

Rule Name * \$10 discount on Bags in French store view

Description

Status Active

Store View *

- Main Website
- Main Website Store
 - English
 - Default Store View
 - French
 - Italy

Customer Groups *

- NOT LOGGED IN
- General
- Wholesale
- Retailer

In Conditions:

Conditions

Conditions (don't add conditions if rule is applied to all products)

If ALL of these conditions are TRUE :

Category is 4

In Actions:

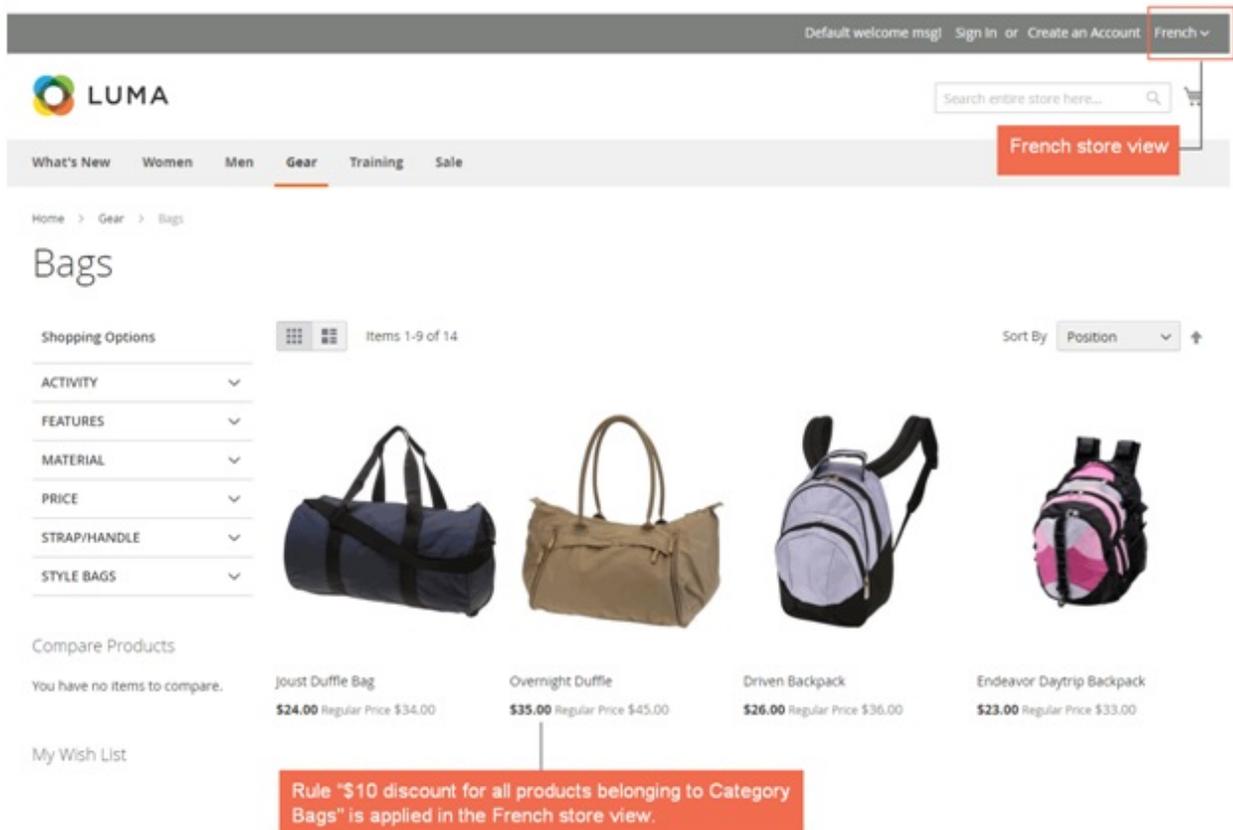
Actions

Apply

Discount Amount *

Discard subsequent rules

Finally, you Save and Apply the rule and then see how it is applied in the frontend of French store view:



*Note: To know how to create a catalog price rule for Magento 2, let's take a look at our following tutorial: [How to Create Catalog Price Rules in Magento 2](#).

49.2 Compatibility

Our Catalog Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

49.3 Changelog

49.4 FAQs

50.1 User Guide

50.2 Compatibility

Our Checkout Custom Field for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

50.3 Changelog

50.4 FAQs

Checkout With Display Currency

51.1 User Guide

51.1.1 Checkout with Display Currency for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Checkout with Display Currency for Magento 2 helps customers to pay with display currency of their selected store views.

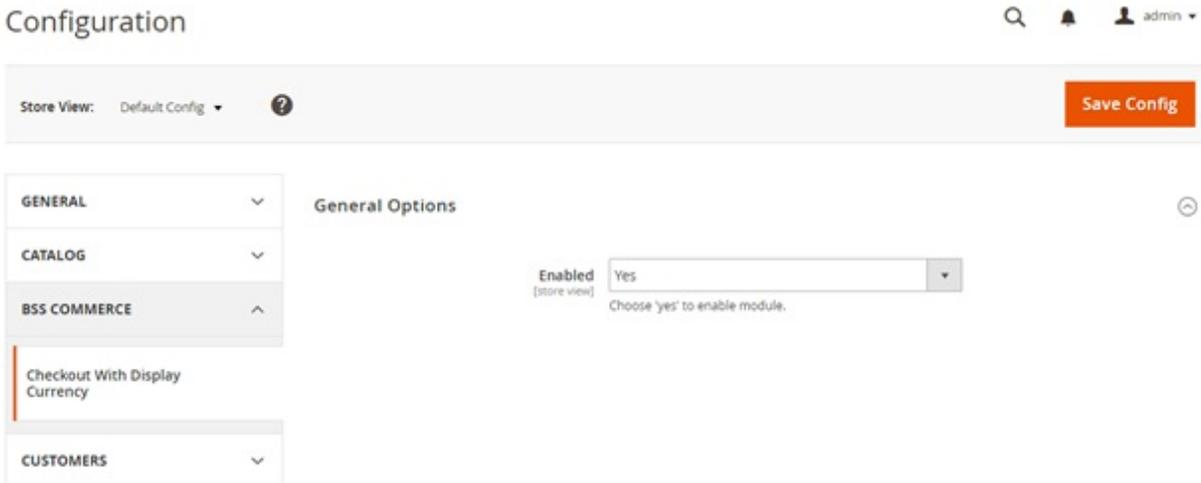
In default Magento, customers always have to checkout with base currency of the whole website no matter which store view they are staying. Therefore, this module will make checkout process more convenient when customers use their own currencies corresponding to their store view in order to pay.

51.1.2 How does Checkout with Display Currency for Magento 2 Extension work?

You go to **Stores -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Checkout with Display Currency** to start settings.

1. Enable Checkout with Display Currency Extension for Magento 2

In Enabled: Choose Yes to enable the module or choose No to disable it.

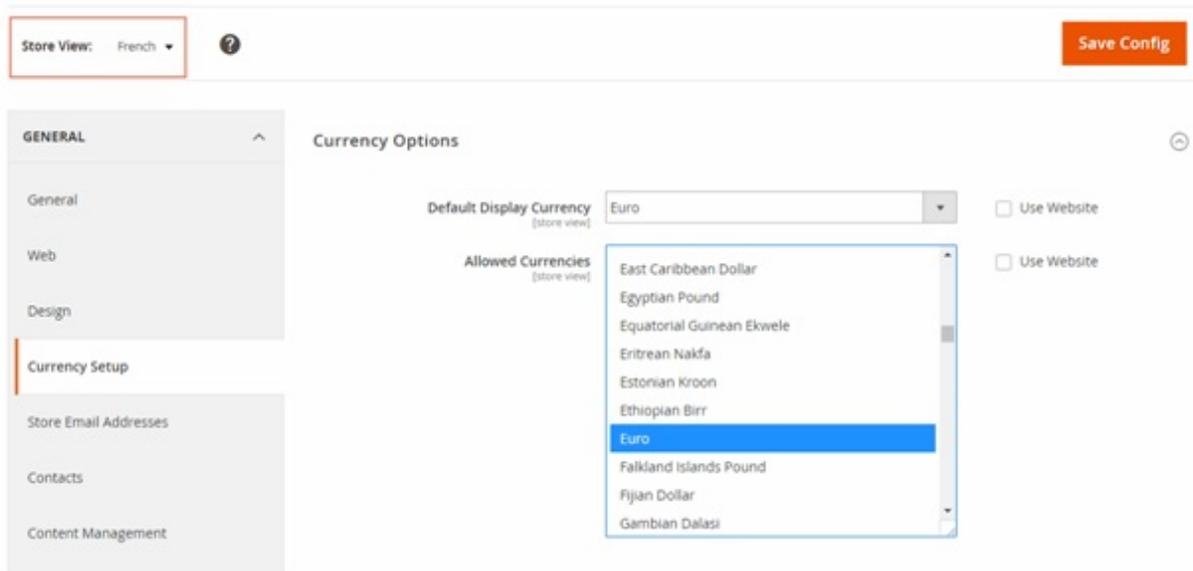


2. Set up Display Currency for each store view

Go to **Stores -> Configuration -> General -> Currency Setup -> Currency Option.**

Then select each store view in Scope to set up display currency for each store view.

Example 1: Set up display currency for French store view



In **Store View**: Choose **English**.

In **Default Display Currency**: choose **British Pound Sterling**.

In **Allowed Currencies**: choose **British Pound Sterling** also.

Then save config.

When customers buy products in the frontend of French store view and go to checkout, they can checkout easily with Euro.

You can see this image:

The screenshot shows a checkout page with a progress bar at the top indicating 'Shipping' and 'Review & Payments' steps. Under 'Payment Method:', several options are listed, with 'PayPal (Braintree)' selected. A red callout box points to the PayPal option, stating: 'Euro (Display currency of French store view) is used to checkout when customers buy the product in this store view'. To the right, the 'Order Summary' shows a cart subtotal of €22.50, shipping of €2.50, and a total of €25.00. Below this, the shipping address is listed as Peter Parker, 25 Red Street, New York, NY 7980554, United States. A 'Place Order' button is visible at the bottom.

For checking out via online payment methods such as Paypal:

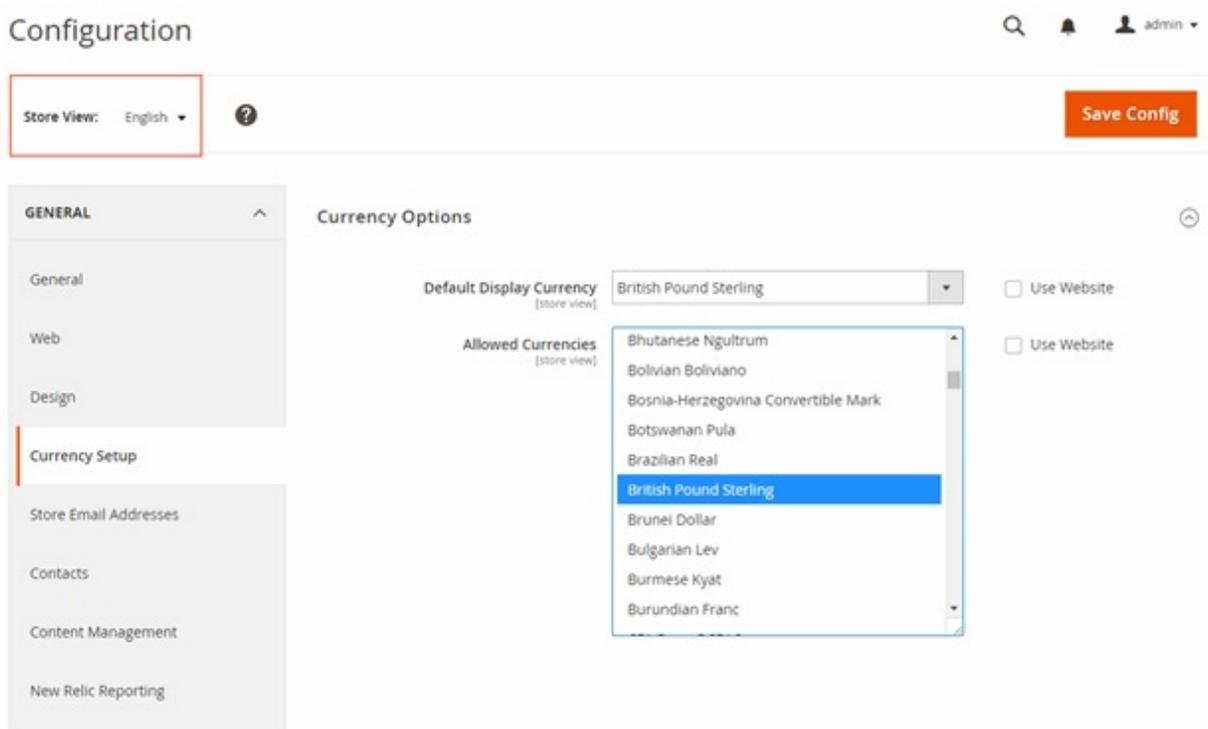
This screenshot shows the same checkout page as above, but with a 'Mock Sandbox Purchase Flow' overlay from PayPal. The overlay displays a '27.50 EUR' price tag and a 'Proceed with Sandbox Purchase' button. A red callout box on the right explains: '+ Checkout with Euro (display currency of French store view) via Paypal. + Currency is not converted into base currency of website (US Dollar) as default Magento.' The background checkout page elements are dimmed.

*Note:

- You should test with your Paypal test account on Test Mode to see how it pays with display currency of store views.

- The module does not work with currencies that online payment methods don't support.

Example 2: Set up display currency for English store view



You fill in information as in French store view and then save config.

When customers buy products in the frontend of English store view and go to checkout, they can checkout easily with British Pound Sterling.

You can see this image:

The screenshot displays a checkout page with two progress steps: 'Shipping' (completed) and 'Review & Payments' (active). Under 'Payment Method:', several options are listed, including 'Credit Card Direct Post (Authorize.net)', 'Credit Card (Braintree)', 'PayPal (Braintree)', 'Bank Transfer Payment', 'Purchase Order', 'Check / Money order', and 'Cash On Delivery'. A red callout box highlights the 'PayPal (Braintree)' option with the text: 'British Pound Sterling (Display currency of English store view) is used for checkout when customers buy the product in this store view'. Below the payment methods, there is a checkbox for 'My billing and shipping address are the same' and a shipping address for Peter Parker in New York. A blue 'Place Order' button is visible. On the right, the 'Order Summary' shows a cart subtotal of £33.75, shipping of £3.75, and a total of £37.50. The cart contains one item: 'Aim Analog Watch' with a quantity of 1 and a price of £33.75. Shipping and shipping method sections are also visible.

51.2 Compatibility

Our Checkout with Display Currency for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

51.3 Changelog

51.4 FAQs

Configurable Grid Table View

52.1 User Guide

52.1.1 Configurable Product Grid Table View for Magento 2 Overview

Along with Magento 1 version, [Configurable Product Grid Table View for Magento 2 extension](#) supports better shopping experience by allowing customers to add multiple products to cart at once. This module displays all children products of the configurable product in a very simple table with fields such as product availability, price, quantity and subtotal. Especially, a price range of the configurable product is also shown on the category page, which is determined by the lowest and highest one among prices of children products.

52.1.2 How does Configurable Product Grid Table View for Magento 2 Extension work?

You go to **Admin -> Store -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Configurable Grid View** and start setting up

Enabled	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	Choose 'yes' to enable module.	
Display Stock Availability	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	If enabled the products qty column will be enabled in configurable grid view table.	
Display Stock Number	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Display Out of Stock Product	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	If enabled, the products have Stock Availability = "Out of stock" will be displayed in the configurable grid view table.	
Show Subtotal	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	If enabled, subtotal column will be displayed in the configurable grid view table.	
Show Unit Price	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	[STORE VIEW]
	If enabled the products unit price column will be enabled in configurable grid view table.	

In **Enabled**: Choose **Yes** to enable the module or choose **No** to disable it

In **Display Stock Availability**:

- Choose **Yes** to display stock availability in the grid table. When you enable this feature, you can set up Stock number and Out of stock status.
- Choose **No** to hide Availability column from the table

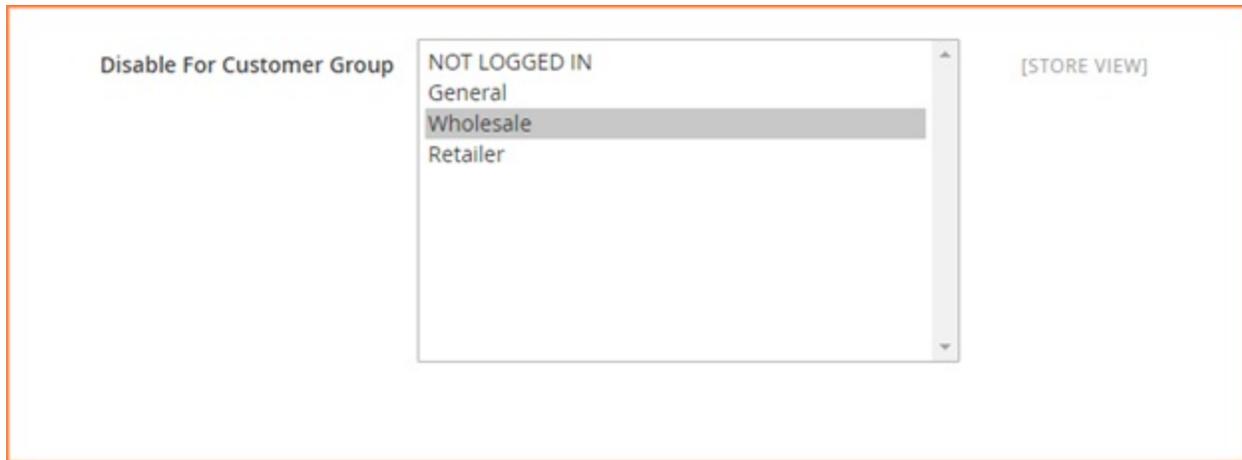
In **Display Stock Number**: Choose **Yes** to show stock number in the table or choose **No** to replace it by In Stock status

In **Display Out of Stock Products**:

- Choose **Yes** to show out of stock products in the table
- Choose **No** to hide out of stock products

In **Subtotal**: Choose **Yes** to show subtotal column in the table or choose **No** to exclude it

In **Show Unit Price**: Choose **Yes** to display the column of Unit price in the grid table or choose **No** to hide it.



In **Disable for Customer Group**: Choose specific customer groups to disable this module. It means that the grid table does not display with selected customer groups

52.2 Compatibility

Our Configurable Grid Table View for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

52.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0

- New Release

52.4 FAQs

Configurable Product Wholesale Display

53.1 User Guide

53.1.1 Configurable Product Wholesale Display for Magento 2 Overview

Configurable Product Wholesale Display for Magento 2 displays all associated products in a grid table view which allows wholesale customers to order and add all chosen items to cart at once. This extension not only enhances display for configurable products, but helps customers simplify selecting items process as well. It absolutely deserves to be a brilliant solution for any Magento site for selling larger quantity.

53.1.2 How does Configurable Product Wholesale Display for Magento 2 Extension work?

1. Function of Configurable Product Wholesale Display for Magento2

- Show associated products in a grid table with all options, so that customers just need to enter quantity and then add all chosen products to cart by oneclick.
- Show SKU, Availability, Unit Price, Tier Price and Subtotal in this grid table. Especially, the module supports showing Tier Price as Tooltips when hovering onit.
- Show Price Range for configurableproducts.
- Show selected quantity details based on options of the first attribute below thetable.

- Work well with Color swatch function of Magento default with clickable options. Customers can still click options to see images of childrenproducts.
- Work well with all type of customoptions.

2. How to configure Configurable Product Wholesale Display for Magento 2 in the backend

Go through **System -> Configuration -> BSSCommerce -> Configurable Product Wholesale Display**.

- **Enabled:** choose Yes to enable the extension.

- **Display Attributes:** choose attributes to show in the grid table for laptop aswish.
- **Display StockNumber:**
 - Choose Yes to show number of stock in the gridtable.
 - Choose No, it will show stock status: In stock and Out ofstock.
- **Advanced TierPrice:**
 - Choose Yes: total amount is based on tier price of total quantity of children products added tocart.

Note:

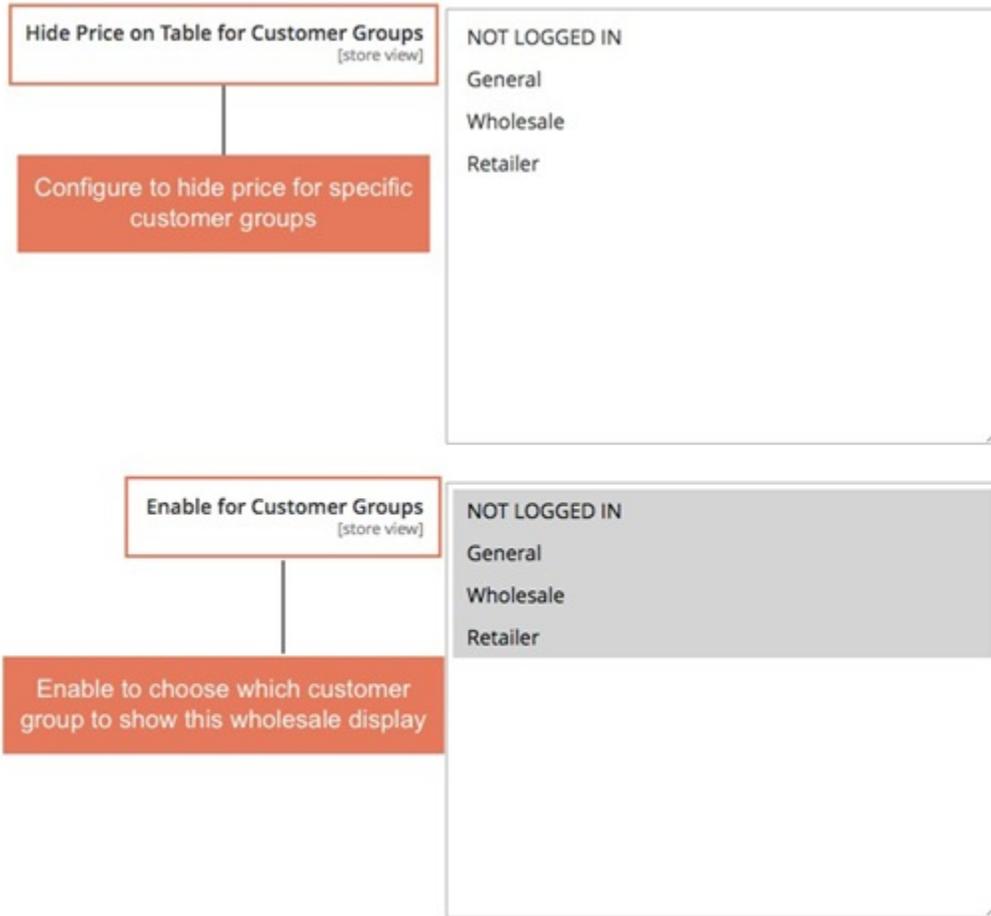
- This feature is only applied for children products having same tier prices. That means: if a configurable product has 50 children products, all 50 children products need to have the same tierprice.
- If there is at least 1 children product does not have tier price or have different tier price with others, this feature will not beapplied

For example, tier price of buying 1-9 Black-S shirt, 1-9 Gray-S shirt is similarly \$45. Tier price of buying 10-more for every children products is \$40. Therefore, when you buy 3 Black-S shirts and 7 Black-XL shirts, tier price is now \$40/shirt. Total amount is now \$400.

- Choose No: total quantity will take default tier price, which means that total amount is calculated by tier prices of each children product multiply to total quantity of each chosen childrenproduct.

For the above example, when using Magento default tier price calculation, total amount is determined as \$450 because it is calculated based on each tier price of each children product (Tier price is equal to \$45/shirt)

- **Price Range:**
 - Choose **Yes** if you want to display Price Range for configurable product above thetable.
 - If not, choose **No**.



- **Hide Price on Table for Customer Groups:** choose which customer group you want to hide price.
- **Enable for Customer Groups:** choose which customer group to show this wholesale display.

Choose color for background and text of Header Row of the table

Header Row Background Color [store view] C35519

Header Row Text Color [store view] FFFFFFFF

Enabled Mobile Display [store view] Yes
Choose 'yes' to enable display on mobile (less than 480px).

Display Mobile Attributes [store view]

Choose attributes to show in the grid table for mobile

Skus
Availability
Unit Price
Subtotal
Tier Price

- **Header Row Background Color:** choose color you want for Header Row Background
- **Header Row Text Color:** choose color for Header Row Text as wish
- **Enabled Mobile Display:** choose Yes to make it responsive on mobiles
- **Display Mobile Attributes:** choose attributes to show in the grid table view for mobiles

Enabled Tablet Display [store view] Yes
Choose 'yes' to enable display on tablet (less than 1024px).

Display Tablet Attributes [store view]

Choose attributes to show in the grid table for tablet

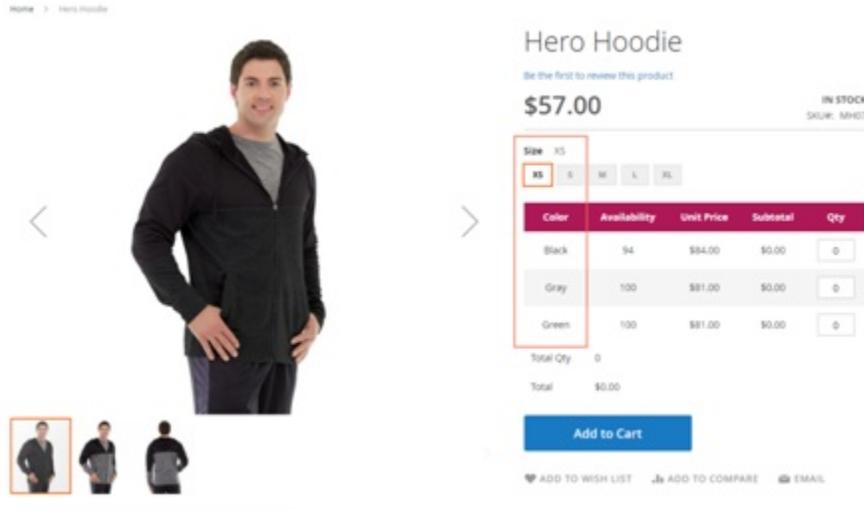
Skus
Availability
Unit Price
Subtotal
Tier Price

- **Enabled Tablet Display:** choose Yes to make it responsive on tablets.
- **Display Tablet Attributes:** choose attributes you want to show in the grid table on tablets.

3. Changing sort order of attributes for configurable products

If you get a problem like the order of attributes is not as you wish.

Here is an example: You want to change the sort order, the size attribute should be in the table.



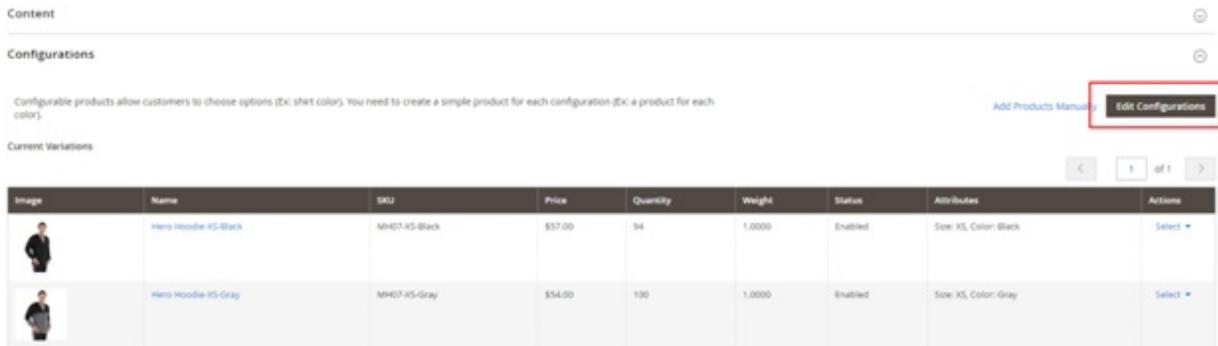
Here is solution: changing sort order of attributes.

Please follow these steps:

Step 1: Go to **Product details page** in the backend:

Product -> Catalog -> choose a product detail page of a configurable product.

Step 2: Click **Edit Configuration**



select **Attribute Value**



Step 2: Attribute Values

Select values from each attribute to include in this product. Each unique combination of values creates a unique product SKU.

Size (20 Options)
Select All | Deselect All

<input type="checkbox"/> 55 cm	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> XS	<input type="checkbox"/> 65 cm
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> S	<input type="checkbox"/> 75 cm	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> M
<input type="checkbox"/> 6 foot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L	<input type="checkbox"/> 8 foot
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> XL	<input type="checkbox"/> 10 foot	<input type="checkbox"/> 28
<input type="checkbox"/> 29	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	<input type="checkbox"/> 31
<input type="checkbox"/> 32	<input type="checkbox"/> 33	<input type="checkbox"/> 34
<input type="checkbox"/> 36	<input type="checkbox"/> 38	

Color (12 Options)
Select All | Deselect All

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Black	<input type="checkbox"/> Blue	<input type="checkbox"/> Brown
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gray	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Green	<input type="checkbox"/> Lavender
<input type="checkbox"/> Multi	<input type="checkbox"/> Orange	<input type="checkbox"/> Purple
<input type="checkbox"/> Red	<input type="checkbox"/> White	<input type="checkbox"/> Yellow

Step 3: Change the sort order of attributes.

er
Create Product Configurations

Step 2: Attribute Values
Select values from each attribute to include in this product. Each unique combination of values creates a unique product SKU.

Color (12 Options)
Select All | Deselect All

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Black	<input type="checkbox"/> Blue	<input type="checkbox"/> Brown
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gray	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Green	<input type="checkbox"/> Lavender
<input type="checkbox"/> Multi	<input type="checkbox"/> Orange	<input type="checkbox"/> Purple
<input type="checkbox"/> Red	<input type="checkbox"/> White	<input type="checkbox"/> Yellow

Size (20 Options)
Select All | Deselect All

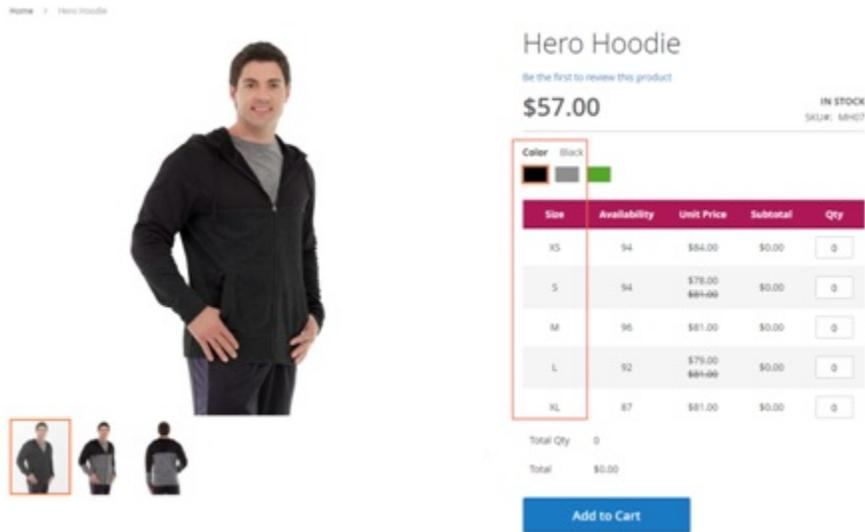
<input type="checkbox"/> 55 cm	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> XS	<input type="checkbox"/> 65 cm
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> S	<input type="checkbox"/> 75 cm	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> M
<input type="checkbox"/> 6 foot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L	<input type="checkbox"/> 8 foot
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> XL	<input type="checkbox"/> 10 foot	<input type="checkbox"/> 28
<input type="checkbox"/> 29	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	<input type="checkbox"/> 31
<input type="checkbox"/> 32	<input type="checkbox"/> 33	<input type="checkbox"/> 34
<input type="checkbox"/> 36	<input type="checkbox"/> 38	

Step 4: Choose **Next** in the two following steps in **Create Product Configurations**.

Then **Save**.

Step 5: Go the frontend, reload the product page.

Here is result:



53.2 Compatibility

Our Configurable Product Wholesale Display for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

53.3 Changelog

53.4 FAQs

54.1 User Guide

54.1.1 Custom Option Image for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Custom Option Image for Magento 2 extension allows admin to add images/colors to custom options of products. It supports uploading unlimited images and assigning to custom option of different types, such as drop-down, multiple select, checkbox, radio button.

54.1.2 How Does Custom Option Image for Magento 2 Extension Work?

Please go to **Stores -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Custom Option Image**.

1. General

Enabled 
[global]

In **Enabled**, choose Yes to enable the extension, or No to disable it.

Note: The module works with simple product, configurable product, bundle product (without dynamic pricing), downloadable and virtual product.

It only supports adding images for products that can have custom options by Magento default so the extension does not work with grouped product. In case of bundle product, it only supports uploading images for the custom options created by admin, not the bundle items.

2. Frontend View

Drop-down Option View [global]

Multiple Select Option View [global]

In **Drop-down Option View**, choose one of the following options:

- **Show image when selected:** Image is only displayed when the custom option is selected.

For example:

Main Stone Material *



Jasper: Stone of Stability +\$65.00

- **Show all images:** All images are displayed in each custom option. If customer selects an option, its image will be highlighted.

In **Multiple Select Option View**, choose one of the following options:

- **Show image when selected:** Image is only displayed when the custom option is selected.
- **Show all images:** All images are displayed in each custom option. If customer selects an option, its image will be highlighted.

For example:

Additional Earrings *



Heart-Shaped Earrings +\$100.00
Danglers Studded Earrings +\$135.00
Pearl Beaded Earrings +\$98.00

3. Image Size Settings

Drop-down Option Image Height <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="60"/>
Drop-down Option Image Width <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="60"/>
Radio Buttons Option Image Height <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="50"/>
Radio Buttons Option Image Width <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="50"/>
Checkbox Option Image Height <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="50"/>
Checkbox Option Image Width <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="50"/>
Multiple Select Option Image Height <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="40"/>
Multiple Select Option Image Width <small>[global]</small>	<input type="text" value="40"/>

In **Drop-down Option Image Height**, set image height for drop-down option type.

In **Drop-down Option Image Width**, set image width for drop-down option type.

In **Radio Buttons Option Image Height**, set image height for radio buttons option type.

In **Radio Buttons Option Image Width**, set image width for radio buttons option type.

In **Checkbox Option Image Height**, set image height for checkbox option type.

In **Checkbox Option Image Width**, set image width for checkbox option type.

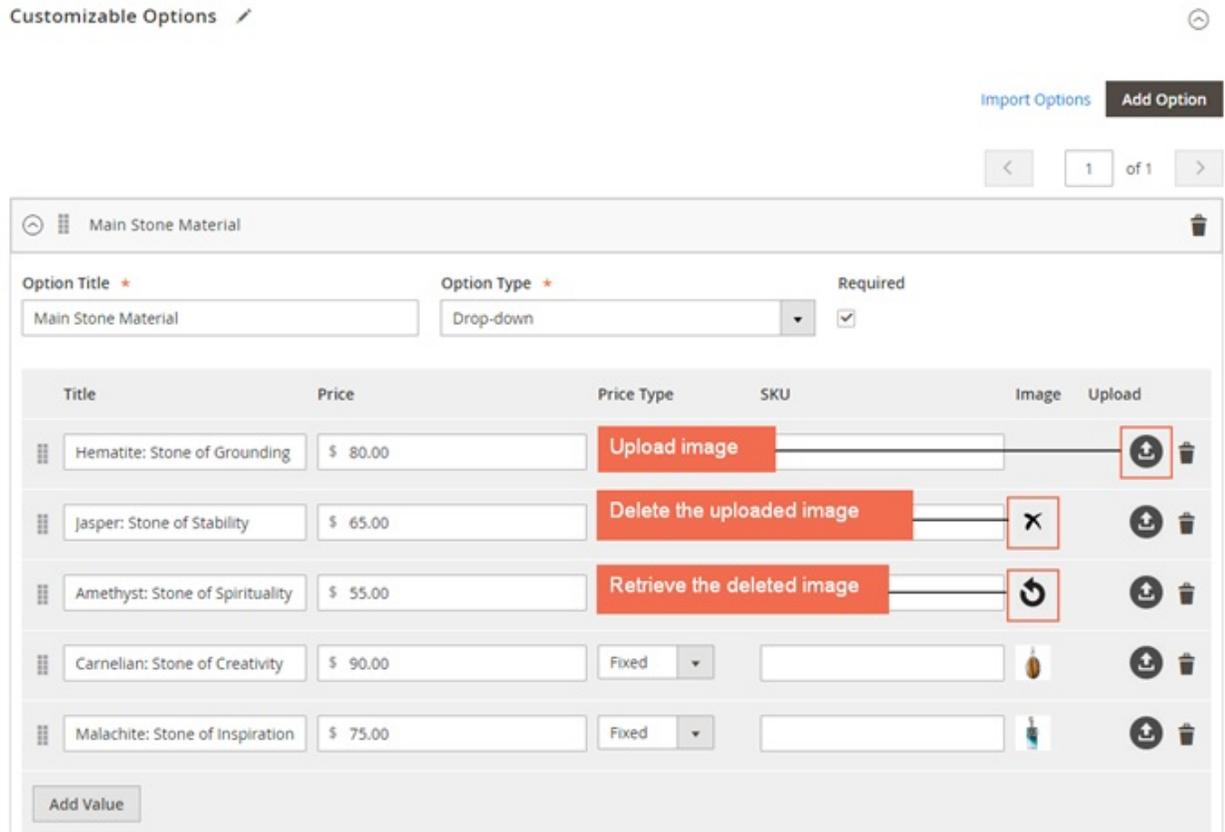
In **Multiple Select Option Image Height**, set image height for multiple select option type.

In **Multiple Select Option Image Width**, set image width for multiple select option type.

4. Upload Image for Custom Option

Go to **Products -> Catalog -> Choose the product -> Customizable Options**.

- Click upload icon to upload image from local. Save configuration after finishing.
- To remove the uploaded image, hover on the chosen image and click the delete icon.
- To recover the deleted image, hover on the chosen image and click the retrieve icon.



Note: Don't delete the custom option before save configuration or the images uploaded for options won't be saved.

54.2 Compatibility

Our Custom Option Image for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

54.3 Changelog

54.4 FAQs

55.1 User Guide

55.1.1 Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2 Overview

Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2 is developed based on the version for Magento 1. Like its initial version, Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2 is one of the most powerful factors that help to improve the website's speed.

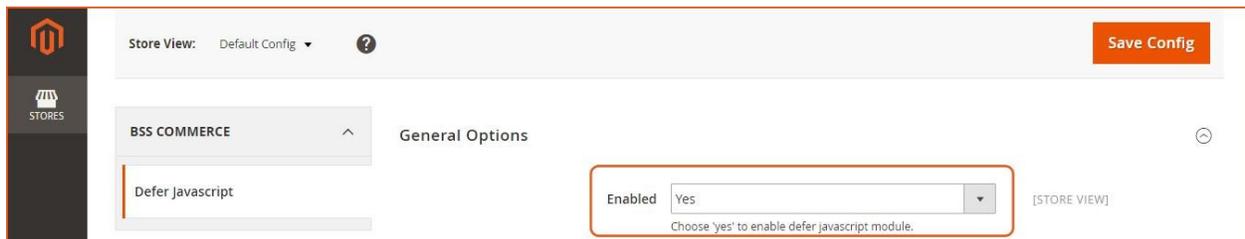
This module is very useful in reducing the loading time of a website, so that customers can enjoy a better shopping experience at your store site, leading to a stronger engagement and higher brand loyalty.

55.1.2 How does Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2 work?

You go to **Stores -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Defer JavaScript** to start setting up

Step 1: Enable Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2:

At backend, you can easily enable or disable BSS Defer JavaScript module by selecting "Yes" or "No" in the Enable box



Step 2: Manage Controllers, Path, and Homepage:

If you want some of your pages not being affected by Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2, you can easily exclude it by fulfilling these pages' information into these excluded boxes:

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for the Defer JavaScript Extension. It is divided into four main sections, each with a table for defining exclusions and an 'Add' button:

- Exclude Controllers:** A table with columns 'Matched Expression' and 'Action'. Below it is an 'Add' button and a note: "Listed controllers will be unaffected by defer javascript. Use: {module}_{controller}_{action}."
- Exclude Paths:** A table with columns 'Matched Expression' and 'Action'. Below it is an 'Add' button and a note: "Listed paths will be unaffected by defer javascript. Use: (Example: gear/bags.html)."
- Show Controllers And Paths:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'No'. Below it is a note: "Help you show controllers and paths of page (table show in end of page)."
- Exclude Home Page:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'No'. Below it is a note: "Home page will be unaffected by defer javascript"

- Exclude controllers and paths: Click **Add Match** button and write down your wished paths or controllers that you want to disable Defer JavaScript for Magento 2
- Exclude Homepage: you can disable this module on Homepage faster and easier by selecting “Yes” in the **Exclude Home Page** box.

NOTE:

- You have to fill in the controllers/ paths that you want to exclude the affection of Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2 when selecting Add Match button.

This close-up highlights the 'Exclude Controllers' section. A red box labeled 'Don't leave blank there' points to the empty 'Matched Expression' input field. Another red box labeled 'Delete blank box' points to the trash icon in the 'Action' column, indicating that a blank entry will be automatically deleted.

- If you do not fill it up, the system will automatically set all pages in your website affected by our module.
- You can click on the **wastebasket** symbol in the right side of the box to delete the created blank box.

If you do not know the controllers / paths to fulfill the **Exclude Controllers / Paths** box, but you still want to disable Defer JavaScript function for some pages, you can select “Yes” in the **Show Controllers and Paths** box

Show Controllers And Paths [STORE VIEW]

Help you show controllers and paths of page (table show in end of page).

After selecting “Yes”, you can find information of the Controllers / Paths in the table at the end of frontend page.

Controllers	Path
cms_index_index	/defer-javascript-for-magento-2/

In Put JavaScript In HTML Body Tag:

- Choose Yes to put all deferred JavaScript in the end of HTML body tag
- Choose No to put all deferred JavaScript in the end of page

Put Javascript In HTML Body Tag [STORE VIEW]

Choose 'yes' to put all defer javascript in end of HTML body tag.

When you finish changing the configuration, you can click on “Save Config” button to save all of your setting with Defer JavaScript.

55.2 Compatibility

Our Defer JavaScript Extension for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

55.3 Changelog

Version 2.0.2

55.4 FAQs

56.1 User Guide

56.1.1 Delete Order extension for Magento 2 Overview

[Delete Order for Magento 2](#) is a helpful and easy-to-use extension which allows website admin to clear out the backend from all unwanted orders, invoices, shipments, as well as credit memos. Thanks to that, users can effectively keep track on and control over all remaining important orders.

56.1.2 How does it work?

- **Delete Order(s)**

After installing this module, log in as admin, go to **Sales -> Orders**, a list of all orders will be shown as usual. Tick on the checkbox of unwanted order(s) and choose the action **Delete Orders** in Select Items box.

Orders

The screenshot shows the Magento Orders grid. At the top, there is a search bar with the text "Search by keyword" and a magnifying glass icon. To the right of the search bar are buttons for "Filters" and "Default View". Below the search bar, there is a dropdown menu for "Select Items" with a red box around it, and a "Delete Orders" option is highlighted with a red box and a mouse cursor. The grid shows 1 record found (1 selected). The grid has columns for Purchase Point, Purchase Date, Bill-to Name, Ship-to Name, Grand Total (Base), and Grand Total (Purchased). The data row shows: Purchase Point: Main Website, Purchase Date: May 9, 2016 7:49:14 AM, Bill-to Name: Veronica Costello, Ship-to Name: Veronica Costello, Grand Total (Base): \$34.00, Grand Total (Purchased): \$34.00. Below the grid, there are buttons for "Cancel", "Hold", "Unhold", and "Print Invoices".

Purchase Point	Purchase Date	Bill-to Name	Ship-to Name	Grand Total (Base)	Grand Total (Purchased)
Main Website	May 9, 2016 7:49:14 AM	Veronica Costello	Veronica Costello	\$34.00	\$34.00

Then a pop-up will appear for action confirmation. Select **OK** to completely delete the order(s).

The screenshot shows the Magento Orders grid with a "Delete Orders" confirmation pop-up dialog box. The dialog box has the title "Delete Orders" and the text "Are you sure you want to delete selected order(s) ?". There are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK". A red box highlights the "OK" button with the text "Select OK to completely delete order(s)". The background shows the grid with 8 records found (1 selected). The grid has columns for Purchase Point, Purchase Date, Bill-to Name, Ship-to Name, Grand Total (Base), and Grand Total (Purchased). The data row shows: Purchase Point: Main Website, Purchase Date: May 9, 2016 7:49:14 AM, Bill-to Name: Veronica Costello, Ship-to Name: Veronica Costello, Grand Total (Base): \$34.00, Grand Total (Purchased): \$34.00. Below the grid, there are buttons for "Cancel", "Hold", "Unhold", and "Print Invoices".

Purchase Point	Purchase Date	Bill-to Name	Ship-to Name	Grand Total (Base)	Grand Total (Purchased)
Main Website	May 9, 2016 7:49:14 AM	Veronica Costello	Veronica Costello	\$34.00	\$34.00

You can also delete order from **Order View Page** by choosing **Delete** button in Information tab of a particular order

#000000016

← Back
Delete
Cancel
Send Email
Credit I

ORDER VIEW

Information

Invoices

Credit Memos

Shipments

Order & Account Information

Order # 000000016 (The order confirmation email was sent)

Order Date	Sep 8, 2016, 10:14:24 AM
Order Status	Processing
Purchased From	Main Website Main Website Store Default Store View

Note:

- You can delete many delete orders at a time by ticking on their checkboxes.
- Once you delete an order, it would be removed permanently from the system and could not be restored. You?d better do it carefully
- When an order is deleted, all of its related information like shipment, invoice, credit memo will be erased too
- **Delete Invoice(s)**

Go to **Sale -> Invoices** and select Invoices you want to wipe out of the backend and then choose **Delete Invoices** in **Select Items** box. After that, a popup appears and you click **OK** to confirm removing these selected Invoices.

After Invoices are deleted, order status turns back to Pending (if shipments have not been created) or Processing (if shipments have already created). Credit memos are also removed. Invoices can be also recreated

Invoices

Search by keyword
🔍

Actions ▲

Delete Invoices

PDF Invoices

3 records found (2 selected)

	Invoice Date	Order #	Order Date	Bill-to Name	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	000000015	Sep 8, 2016 3:55:39 AM	000000013	Sep 8, 2016 3:44:47 AM	test test
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	000000016	Sep 8, 2016 10:09:47 AM	000000015	Sep 8, 2016 7:20:46 AM	Nguyễn Nhân Quý
<input type="checkbox"/>	000000018	Sep 8, 2016 10:15:58 AM	000000016	Sep 8, 2016 10:14:24 AM	Nguyễn Nhân Quý

You can also delete invoice of a particular order in its **Order View Page** by going to tab **Invoices**, click on **Delete**

button or choose **Delete Invoices** in Actions dropdown box.

#000000016

The screenshot shows the 'ORDER VIEW' interface. At the top, there are buttons: 'Back', 'Delete' (highlighted with a red box), 'Cancel', 'Send Email', and 'Credit M'. Below this is a search bar with the text 'Search by keyword' and a magnifying glass icon, and a 'Filter' button. On the left, there is a sidebar with 'ORDER VIEW' and tabs for 'Information', 'Invoices' (selected), and 'Credit Memos'. The main content area shows '1 records found' and a table with columns 'Invoice Date', 'Order #', and 'Order Date'. A dropdown menu is open over the table, showing 'Delete Invoices' (highlighted with a red box) and 'PDF Invoices'. The table contains one record with 'Invoice Date' 'Sep 8, 2016 10:15:58 AM', 'Order #' '000000016', and 'Order Date' 'Sep 8, 2016'.

- **Delete Shipment(s)**

Similar to deleting orders and invoices, we can erase unneeded shipments by navigating to **Sales -> Shipments** and select Shipments that you want to rub out. Then, you choose **Delete Shipments** in **Select Items** box and press **OK** in the confirmation popup to finish the process.

Similarly, you can delete shipment from Order View Page under **Shipments** tab by clicking on **Delete** button or choose **Delete Invoices** in **Actions** dropdown box.

When a shipment is removed, its order status is updated to Pending (if invoices have not been created) or Processing (if invoices have already been created). Admin can totally recreate shipments.

- **Delete Credit memo(s)**

Like Invoices and Shipments, there are two ways to remove redundant Credit memos:

- (i) Go to **Sales -> Credit memos**, select unwanted Credit memo(s) choose **Delete Credit memos** in **Select Items** box, then click OK in the popup to completely exclude them from the backend.
2. Under **Credit Memos** tab in **Order View Page** of a particular order, click on **Delete** or select **Delete Credit Memos** in **Actions** dropdown box.

Order Status are altered to Complete (if invoices and shipments have already been generated) or Processing (if only invoices have been created). Credit memos are easily recreated.

After finishing with set up, choose **Save Config**

56.2 Compatibility

Our Delete Order for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

56.3 Changelog

Version 2.0.2

56.4 FAQs

57.1 User Guide

57.1.1 Dynamic HTML Sitemap for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Dynamic HTML Sitemap for Magento 2 by BSSCommercis developed to generate a detailed and useful sitemap including links to categories, products, CMS pages and store views of your Magento 2. This module helps enhance SEO performance of your business and provide your customers with a clear structure of your site.

57.1.2 How Does Dynamic HTML Sitemap for Magento 2 Extension Work?

You go to **Stores -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> HTML Sitemap** to start setting up.

Please flush all Magento caches after you make any configuration of the module for the changes to take effect.

In **Enable**, choose **Yes** to enable module, otherwise choose **No**.

In **Title of Site**, choose the title for the sitemap.

In **Session Order**, fill in the order of sessions to be displayed. Please fill in all 4 items separated by a coma. ID of sessions as below:

- 1: Product List
- 2: Store View List
- 3: Additional Link List
- 4: Category and CMS Page List

General

Enable [store view] Yes

Choose "Yes" to enable module
When the module is enabled, the default URL of site map is http://yourlink.com/sitemap

Title of Site [store view] Sitemap

Session Order [store view] 1,2,3,4

Fill in the order of sessions to be displayed. Please fill in all 4 items separated by a coma.
Example: 1,2,3,4 ID of sessions as below
1: Product List
2: Store View List
3: Additional Link List
4: Category and CMS Page List

In **Meta Title**, choose the meta title for your sitemap.

In **Meta Keywords**, choose the meta keywords for your sitemap.

In **Meta Description**, write meta description for your sitemap.

Search Engine Optimization

Meta Title [store view] Sitemap

Meta Keywords [store view]

Meta Description [store view]

In **Show Product Link**, choose **Yes** to show product links in the sitemap, otherwise choose **No**.

In **Title of "Product List"**, choose the title for the product list session in the sitemap.

In **Sort Product by**, choose among **DESC** for descending or **ASC** for ascending.

In **Arrange Product by**, choose **Name/Date/Price** to sort product links.

In **Maximum Products Displayed on Sitemap**, choose the maximum for the number of product links to be shown. The limit number you can fill in is 50000.

Product List

Show Product Link [store view] Yes

Title of "Product List" [store view] Product List

Sort Product by [store view] Date

Arrange Product by [store view] DESC

Maximum Products Displayed on Sitemap [store view] 5000

Maximum Products to be shown on Sitemap. The limit number you can fill in is 50000

In **Show Store View Link**, choose **Yes** to show store view links in the sitemap, otherwise choose **No**.

In **Title of “Store View List”**, choose the title for the store view list session in the sitemap.

Store List

Show Store View Link [store view]

Title of “Store View List” [store view]

In **Show Category Link**, choose **Yes** to show category links in the sitemap, otherwise choose **No**.

In **Title of “Category List”**, choose the title for the category list session in the sitemap.

In **Disable Category**, fill in ID of categories you want to hide in sitemap (separated by a coma). For example: 1,2,5,9,23,45,77.

Category List

Show Category Link [store view]

Title of “Category List” [store view]

Disable Category [store view]
Fill in ID of categories you want to hide in Sitemap (separated by a coma). Example: 1,2,5,9,23,45,77

In **Title of “Additional Link List”**, choose the title for the additional link list session in the sitemap.

In **Open Additional Link in a New Tab**, choose **Yes** to open additional links in a new tab, otherwise choose **No**.

In **List of Additional Links**, choose the links and the anchor you want to display for each link. Follow this example: [http://yourlink1.com]{} [Anchor Text 1].

Additional Link List

Title of “Additional Link List” [store view]

Open Additional Link in a New Tab [store view]

List of Additional Links [store view]

Please follow this example to add additional links:
[http://yourlink1.com][Anchor Text 1]
[http://yourlink2.com][Anchor Text 2]

In **Show CMS Link**, choose **Yes** to show CMS links in the sitemap, otherwise choose **No**.

In **Title of “CMS List”**, choose the title for the CMS link list session in the sitemap.

In **Disable CMS Link**, choose the CMS links you want to hide from sitemap. Hold Ctrl when choosing multiple options.

CMS Link List

Show CMS Link <small>[store view]</small>	Yes
Title of "CMS List" <small>[store view]</small>	CMS List
Disable CMS Link <small>[store view]</small>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">404 Not FoundHome PageEnable CookiesPrivacy PolicyAbout usCustomer Service

Hold Ctrl when choosing multiple options

57.2 Compatibility

Our Dynamic HTML Sitemap for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

57.3 Changelog

57.4 FAQs

Frequently Bought Together

58.1 User Guide

58.1.1 Frequently Bought Together for Magento 2 Extension Overview

[Frequently Bought Together for Magento 2 extension](#) effectively boosts sale by suggesting products that are commonly bought together. The list of items can be chosen from related, cross-sell, up-sell products, or the hand-pick products set admin. The extension can use purchase history to track product commonly sold together and add them to the frequently block.

58.1.2 How Does Frequently Bought Together for Magento 2 Extension Work?

1. Set Frequently Bought Together List for Product

Go to **Product -> Catalog -> Product Edit Page -> Related Products, Up-Sell, Cross-Sells and Frequently Bought Together**.

Cross-Sell Products

These "impulse-buy" products appear next to the shopping cart as cross-sells to the items already in the shopping cart.

Add Cross-Sell Products

Frequently Bought Together Products

Frequently Bought Together products are shown to customers in addition to the item the customer is looking at.

Add Frequently Bought Together Products

< 1 of 1 >

ID	Thumbnail	Name	Status	Attribute Set	SKU	Price	Actions
5		Rival Field Messenger	Enabled	Bag	24-MB06	\$45.00	Remove
7		Impulse Duffie	Enabled	Bag	24-UB02	\$74.00	Remove
15		Affirm Water Bottle	Enabled	Gear	24-UG06	\$7.00	Remove

In **Frequently Bought Together**, add products which are commonly bought together with the main product.

2. General

Go to **Store -> Configuration -> BSSCommerce -> Frequently Bought Together -> General**.

General



Enable
[store view]

Priority List

Frequently Bought Together Products
Related Products
Up-Sell Products
Real Data
Cross-Sell Products

Real Data: Frequently bought together products will be calculated in according to the frequency of appearance with the main product of orders in the selected time period.

[store view]

Start Date
[store view]

Apply for **Real Data**. Please select date to begin calculating frequently bought together products.

In **Enable**, choose Yes to enable the extension, or No to disable it.

In **Priority List**, there are five methods of selecting frequently bought together products. Drag and drop to prioritize the methods to be applied. For example: The extension will prioritize to choose items from Frequently Bought Together Product block. If no items found, the extension will get data from Related Products, then Up-Sell Product, Real Data and Cross-sell Products.

- **Frequently Bought Together Products:** Select items from the frequently bought together product list set in 2.1.
- **Related, Up-Sell, Cross-Sell Products:** Select items from related, up-sell, cross-sell product list.
- **Real Data:** Track product which are commonly sold together in purchase. The items will be calculated in according to the frequency of appearance with the main products of orders in the select time period.

In **Start Date**, select date to begin calculating frequently bought together products for Real Data method.

3. Frequently Bought Together List Setting

Go to **Store -> Configuration -> BSSCommerce -> Frequently Bought Together -> Frequently Bought Together List Setting**.

Display List [store view] Use system value

Show Main Product in List [store view] Use system value

Title of List [store view] Use system value

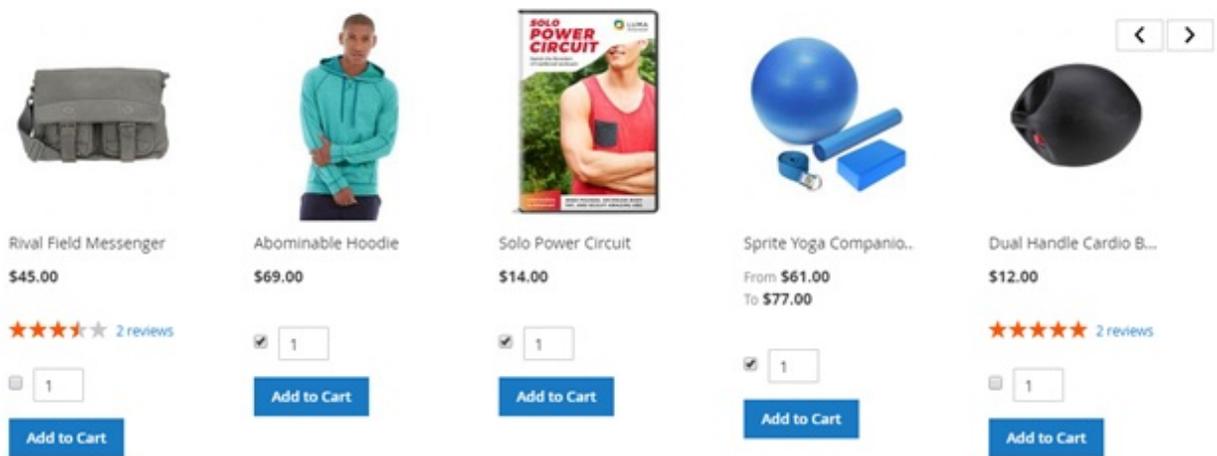
Limit Products in List [store view] Use system value

Number of items showed in Frequently Bought Together list

In **Display List**, there two ready-made design for displaying Frequently Bought Together list.

Style 1:

Based on your choice, here are other options you may like



Product grid for Style 1:

- Rival Field Messenger**: \$45.00, 2 reviews, Add to Cart
- Abominable Hoodie**: \$69.00, Add to Cart
- Solo Power Circuit**: \$14.00, Add to Cart
- Sprite Yoga Companion Kit**: From \$61.00 To \$77.00, Add to Cart
- Dual Handle Cardio B...**: \$12.00, 2 reviews, Add to Cart

Products Name	Qty	Unit Price
Push It Messenger Bag	1	\$45.00
Abominable Hoodie	1	\$69.00
Solo Power Circuit	1	\$14.00
Sprite Yoga Companion Kit	1	From \$61.00 To \$77.00

Select all products.

Add Selected Products to Cart

Add Selected Products to Wish List

Style 2:

Based on your choice, here are other options you may like

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Products Name	Qty	Unit Price
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Push It Messenger Bag	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$45.00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Rival Field Messenger	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$45.00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Abominable Hoodie	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$69.00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Solo Power Circuit	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$14.00

In **Show Main Product in List**, choose Yes to include the main product in Frequently Bought Together list. Choose No to exclude it.

In **Title of List**, enter the message shown above the list. For example: Based on your choice, here are other options you may like.

In **Limit Product in List**, restrict the number of products displayed in Frequently Bought Together list.

Limit Products in Slider <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="5"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
	Number of products showed in Frequently Bought Together slider	
Slider Speed <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="500"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
	Transition duration (in milliseconds) between two continuous slides (Example: 400)	
Auto Slider <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/> ▼	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Show Price <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/> ▼	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Show Review <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/> ▼	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Preview Selected Items <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/> ▼	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
	Only applied for Style 1 . When a product is selected, brief information will be previewed.	

In **Limit Products in Slider**, restrict the number of item displayed in one slide.

In **Slider Speed**, set transition duration between 2 continuous slides.

In **Auto Slider**, choose Yes to enable automatic slider. No to disable this function.

In **Show Price**, choose Yes to display prices of products in Frequently Bought Together list.

In **Show Review**, choose Yes to display reviews of products in Frequently Bought Together list.

In **Preview Selected Items**, choose Yes to enable previewing brief information of selected product in Frequently Bought Together list. The information includes product name, quantity, and unit price.

Show "Add to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Show "Add Multiple to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Text on "Add Multiple to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Add Selected Products to Cart"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Background Color of "Add Multiple to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="0B3454"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Color of Text on "Add Multiple to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Show "Add Multiple to WishList" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Text on "Add Multiple to WishList" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Add Selected Products to Wish List"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Background Color of "Add Multiple to WishList" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="750101"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value
Color of Text on "Add Multiple to WishList" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use system value

In Show “Add to Cart” button, choose Yes to display “Add to Cart” button.

Config customize “Add Multiple to Cart” button:

- Show “Add Multiple to Cart” button.
- Text on “Add Multiple to Cart” button.
- Background Color of “Add Multiple to Cart” button.
- Color of Text on “Add Multiple to Cart” button.

Config customize “Add Multiple to Wishlist” button:

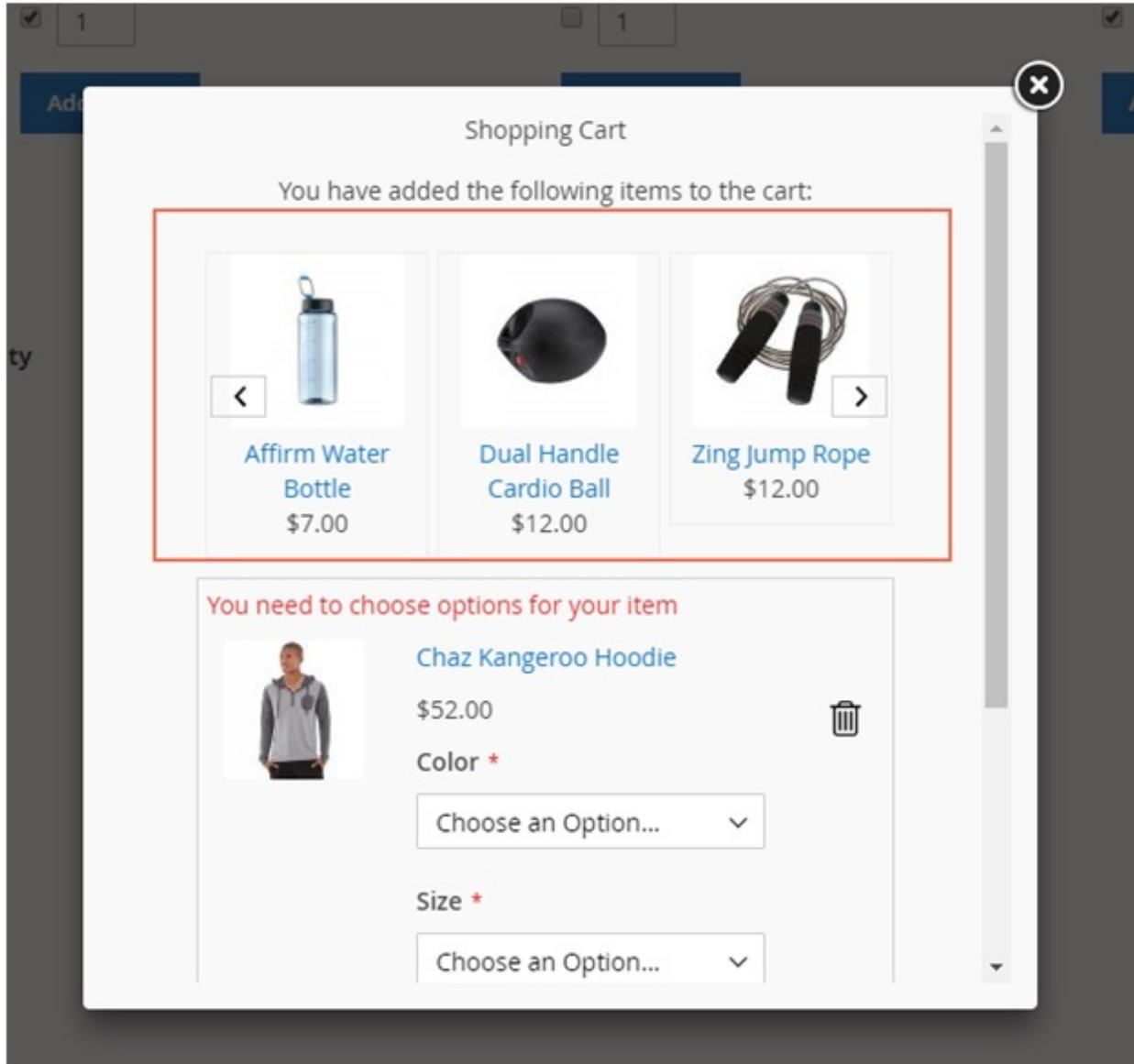
- Show “Add Multiple to Wishlist” button.
- Text on “Add Multiple to Wishlist” button.
- Background Color of “Add Multiple to Wishlist” button.
- Color of Text on “Add Multiple to Wishlist” button.

4. Pop-up Setting

Go to Stores -> Configuration -> BSSCommerce -> Frequently Bought Together -> Pop-up Setting.

When adding products in Frequently Bought Together list to cart, the extension will work like [Add Multiple Products to Cart](#) . There are two ways to add product in Frequently Bought Together list to cart:

- Add each product to cart separately: Display success pop-up, choose option/quantity in pop-up for product with options.
- Add multiple products to cart: Tick on products and click “Add Multiple to Cart” button. The products added to cart successfully will be displayed in slider of success pop-up. For products with options, customer can select options/quantity right from pop-up.



*Note:

- To add all product in Frequently Bought Together list, tick on “Select all product” then click “Add Multiple to Cart” button.
- To add selected products to wishlist, click “Add Multiple toWishlist” button.

Limit Products in Slider <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="3"/>	Number of items showed in Success Pop-up slider
Slider Speed <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	Transition duration (in millisecond) between two continuous slides. (example: 400)
Auto Slider <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	
Show Price <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	
Show "Continue" Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	
Countdown Time on Button <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Continue button"/>	
Countdown Time: ...(s) <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="60"/>	
Show Cart Quantity and Cart Subtotal <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	
Show "Go to Checkout" link <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>	

In **Limit Product in Slider**, restrict the number of products displayed in slider of success pop-up.

In **Slider Speed**, set transition duration between two continuous slides.

In **Auto Slider**, choose Yes to enable automatic slider.

In **Show Price**, choose Yes to display price of product.

In **Show "Continue" button**, choose Yes to display "Continue Shopping" button.

In **Countdown Time on Button**, set countdown function for "Continue" button or "View Cart" button.

In **Countdown Time**, set countdown time.

In **Show Cart Quantity and Cart Subtotal**, choose Yes to display total items in cart and cart subtotal.

In **Show "Go to Checkout" Link**, choose Yes to display "Go to Checkout" link.

Text on "Add Multiple to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	Add Products to Cart
Background Color of "Add Multiple to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	11098C
Color of Text on "Add Multiple to Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	FFFFFF
Text on "View Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	View Shopping Cart
Background Color of "View Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	197525
Color of Text on "View Cart" Button <small>[store view]</small>	FFFFFF
Text on "Continue" Button <small>[store view]</small>	Continue Shopping
Background Color of "Continue" Button <small>[store view]</small>	A30F22
Color of Text on "Continue" Button <small>[store view]</small>	FFFFFF

Config customize **“Add Multiple to Cart”** button:

- Text on “Add Multiple to Cart” button.
- Background Color of “Add Multiple to Cart” button.
- Color of Text on “Add Multiple to Cart” button.

Config customize **“View Cart”** button:

- Text on “View Cart” button.
- Background Color of “View Cart” button.
- Color of Text on “View Cart” button.

Config customize **“Continue”** button:

- Text on “Continue” button.
- Background Color of “Continue” button.
- Color of Text on “Continue” button.

58.2 Compatibility

Our Frequently Bought Together for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

58.3 Changelog

58.4 FAQs

59.1 User Guide

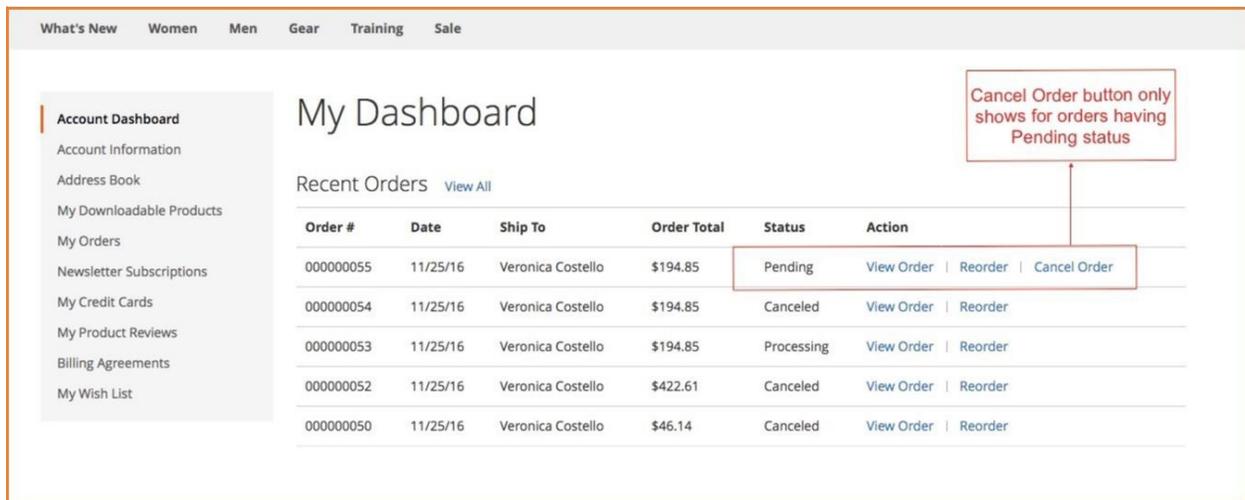
59.1.1 Frontend Cancel Order for Magento 2 Overview

As you know, the default of Magento does not allow customers to cancel orders from the frontend, which causes some inconvenience for them when shopping, hence, our [Frontend Cancel Order for Magento 2](#) module totally completes this missing feature of Magento. The extension is developed to help customers cancel their orders with Pending status from My Account dashboard and My Order page in the frontend. Frontend Cancel Order for Magento 2 definitely brings more convenience for customers and enhance their shopping experience.

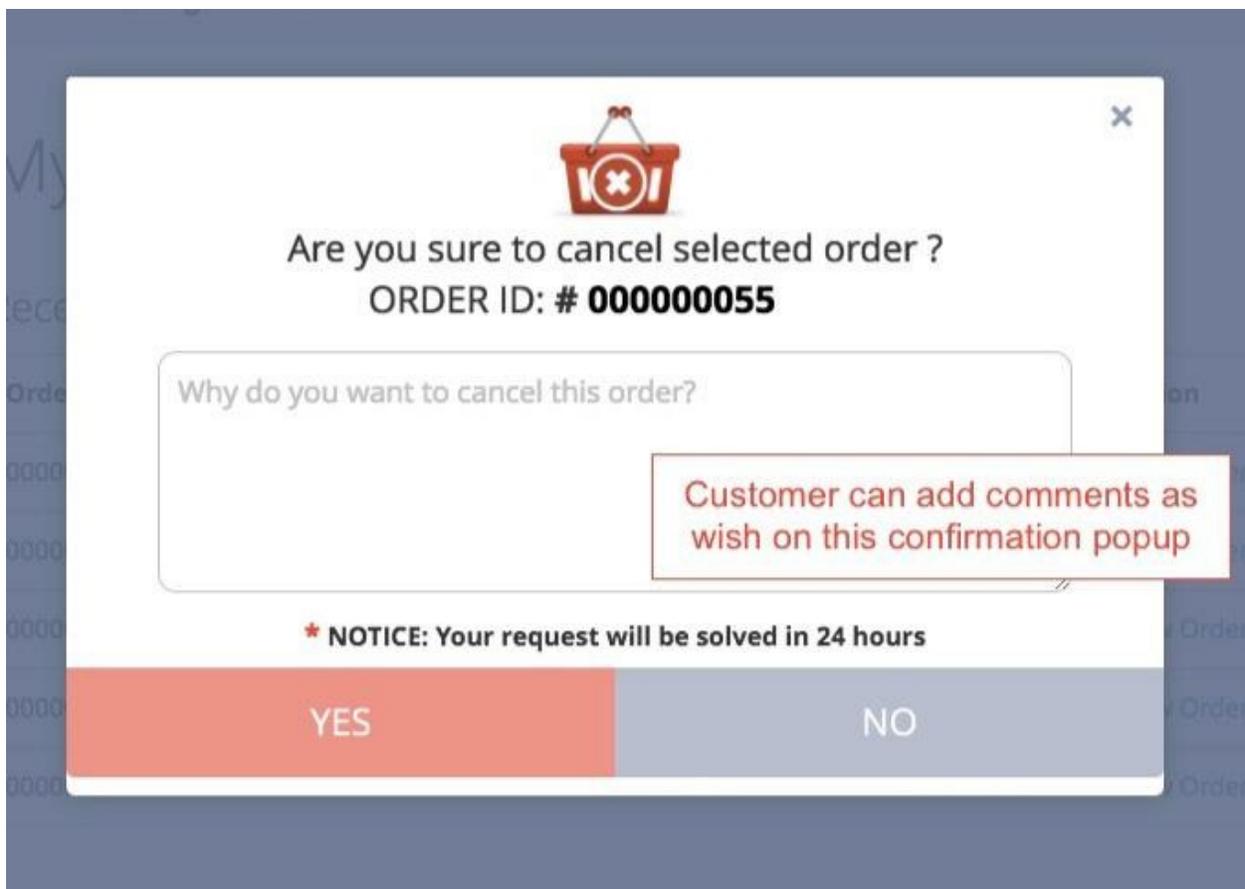
59.1.2 How does Frontend Cancel Order for Magento 2 work?

1. Functions of Frontend Cancel Order for Magento 2

- Allow customers to cancel orders from the frontend: Customers need to login, then go to **My Account -> Account Dashboard** or **My Orders**.



- Allow customers to add comments in a confirmation popup: When customers click Cancel Order button, there will be a confirmation popup which allows them to enter comments.
 - If they click Yes, orders will be canceled.
 - If they still do not want to cancel orders, they can choose No.



- Send Notification Emails to admins automatically after customers canceled orders

Cancel Order

Customer Name:	Veronica Costello
ORDERID:	#00000055
Customer Email:	roni_cost@example.com
Order Status:	Canceled
Comment:	*no comment

Thank you

Notification Emails will be sent to admins automatically after customers canceled orders

[Click here to Reply or Forward](#)

- Change order status from Pending to Canceled and auto restock products

Account Dashboard

- Account Information
- Address Book
- My Downloadable Products
- My Orders
- Newsletter Subscriptions
- My Credit Cards
- My Product Reviews
- Billing Agreements
- My Wish List

My Dashboard

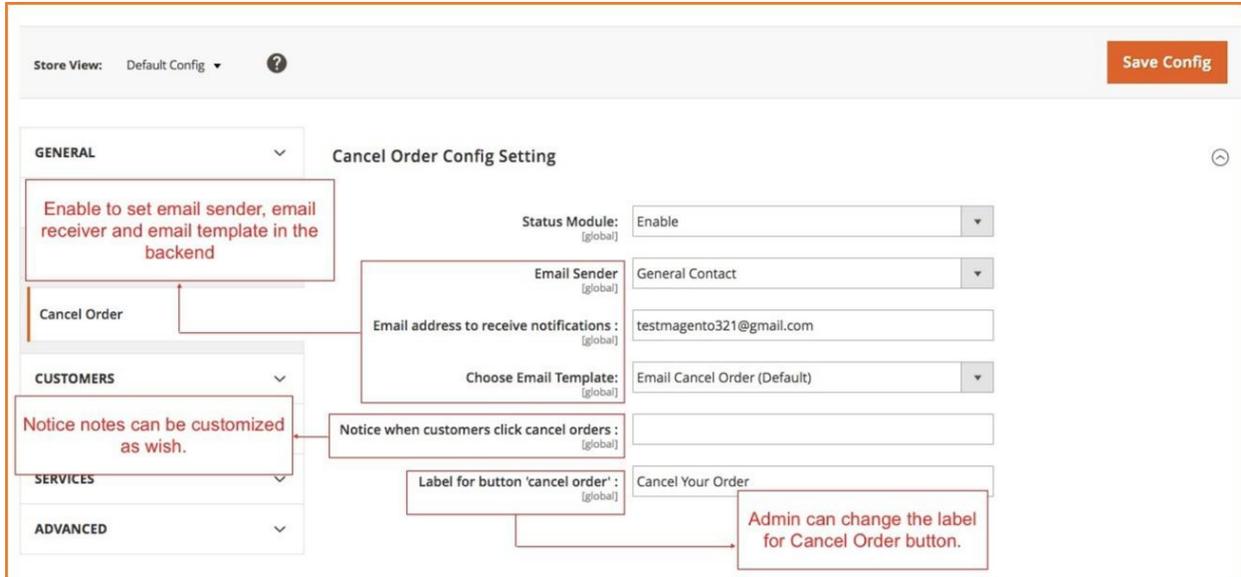
Recent Orders [View All](#)

Order #	Date	Ship To	Order Total	Status	Action
00000055	11/25/16	Veronica Costello	\$194.85	Canceled	View Order Reorder
00000054	11/25/16	Veronica Costello	\$194.85	Canceled	View Order Reorder
00000053	11/25/16	Veronica Costello	\$194.85	Processing	View Order Reorder
00000052	11/25/16	Veronica Costello	\$422.61	Canceled	View Order Reorder
00000050	11/25/16	Veronica Costello	\$46.14	Canceled	View Order Reorder

Change order status from Pending to Canceled

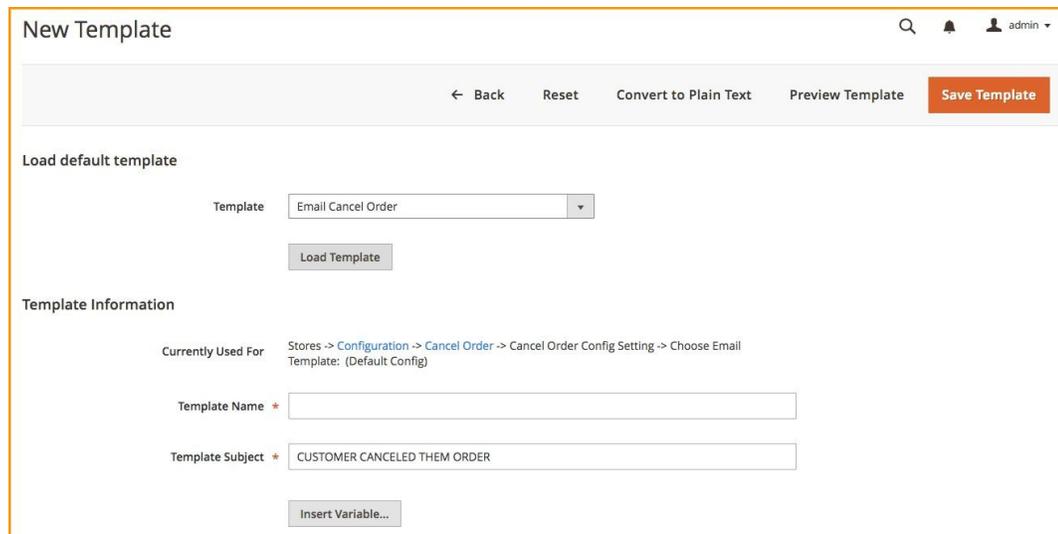
2. How to configure Frontend Cancel Order for Magento 2 in the backend

- Go through **System -> Configuration -> BSSCommerce -> Cancel Order**



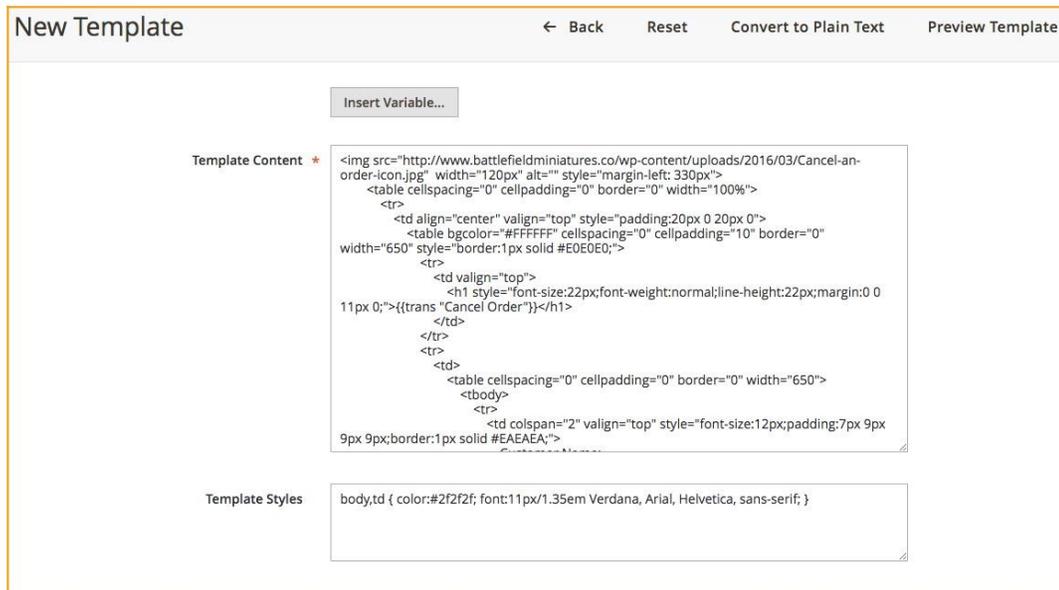
- **Status Module:** Choose **Enable** to activate the module
- **Email Sender:** admin can set which email will be email sender
- **Email Address to receive notification:** enable to set which email will receive notification emails
- **Choose Email Template:** admin can configure to choose email template for the notification emails
- **Notice when customers click cancel orders:** admin can customize Notice Note in the confirmation popup when customers click cancel orders.
- **Label for button cancel order:** change the label of Cancel Order button
- **NOTE:** If you want to customize Email Template to have more choices in **Choose Email Template**, follow these steps:

– Go to **Marketing -> Communications -> Email Templates -> Add New Template**



- In **Load default template**, choose **Template** you want, then click **Load Template**
- In **Template Information**, enter text as you want in **Template Name**, **Template Subject**.

– In **Template Content** and **Template Styles**, you can edit html or css as you want.



59.2 Compatibility

Our Frontend Cancel Orders for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

59.3 Changelog

59.4 FAQs

60.1 User Guide

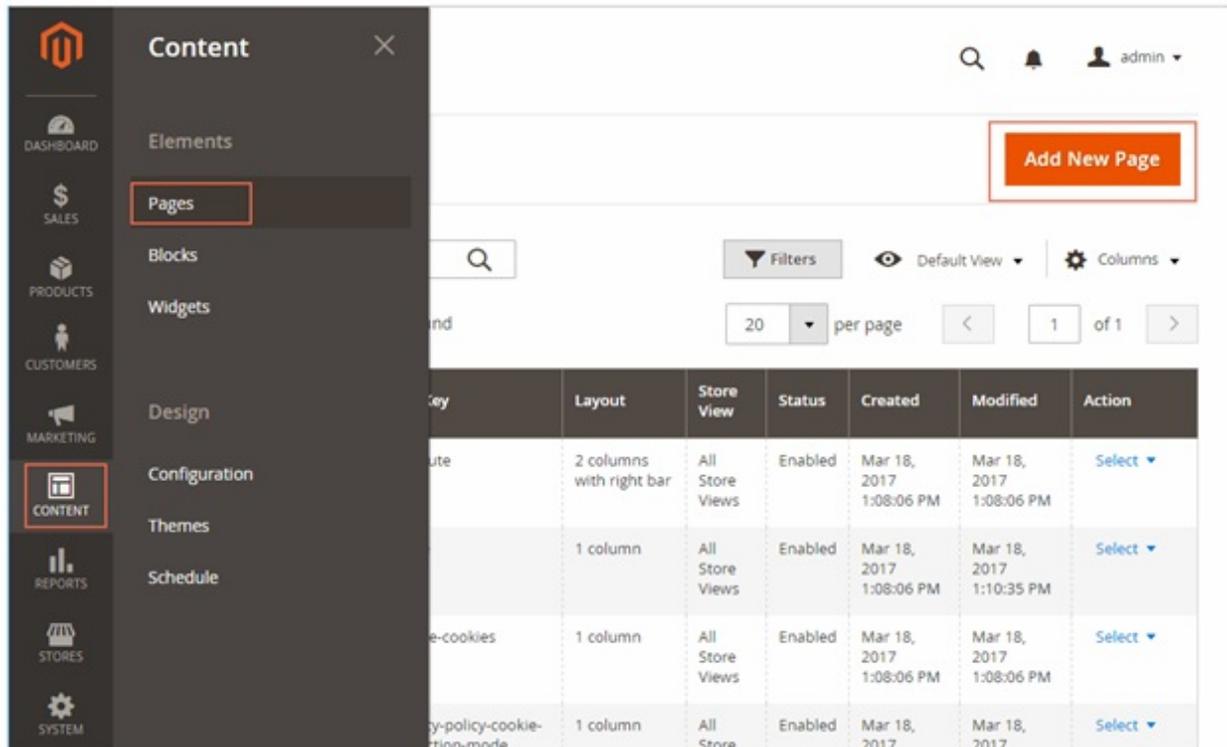
60.1.1 Google AMP Extension for Magento 2 Overview

Google AMP - Accelerated Mobile Pages is the hottest trending technology for a faster and smoother loading for mobile web pages. With the ability to be loaded in just few seconds, the new mobile pages will increase user engagement on your store and drop the exit rate. [Google AMP Extension for Magento 2](#) by BSSCommerce is an effective tool to generate and customize AMP pages for your site as your wishes.

60.1.2 How Does Google AMP Extension for Magento 2 Work?

1. How to create and customize Magento 2 AMP pages

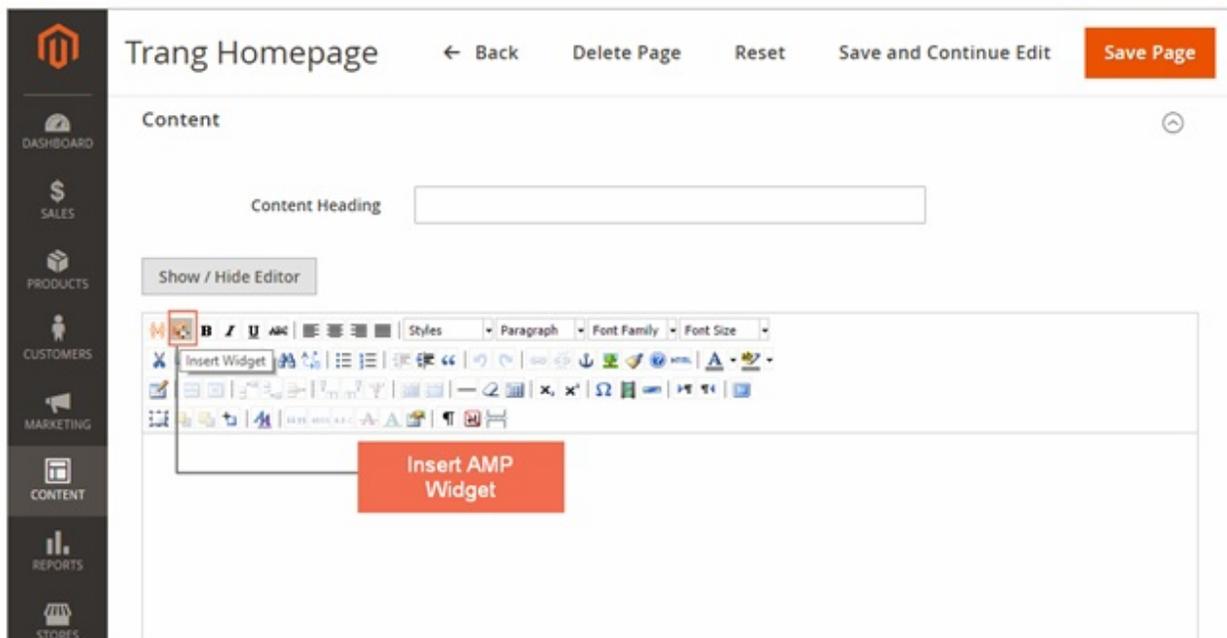
The module will auto-generate the category page and product page for your Magento 2 store. For the homepage and parent category, admins will have to create by themselves using the AMP widgets provided by the extension. Please follow the steps below to create and customize your own AMP pages in Magento 2



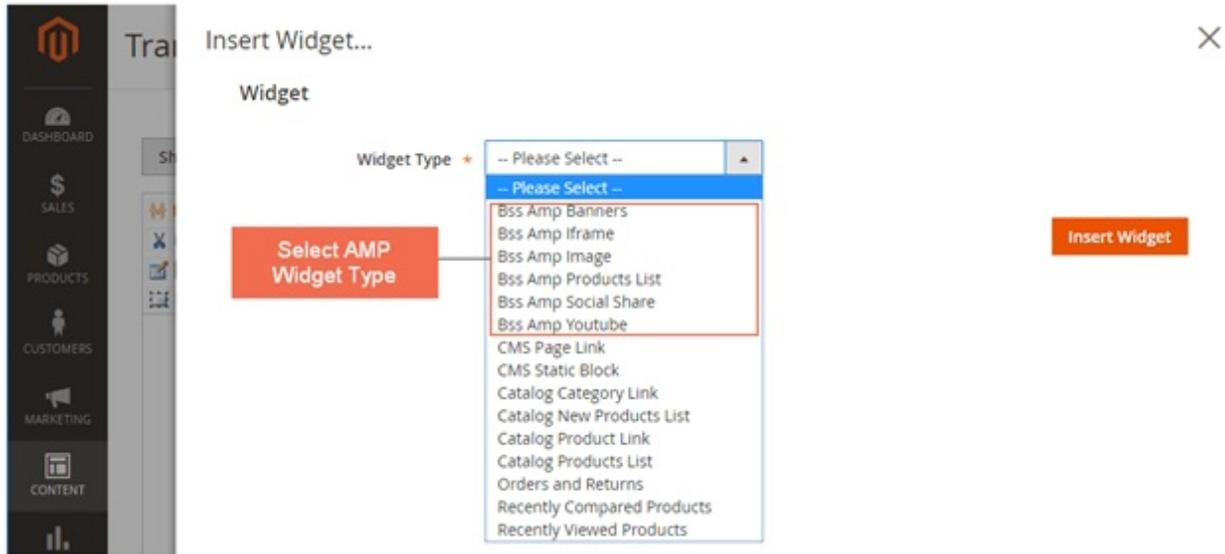
Please go to **Admin -> Content -> Pages -> Add New Page** and start configuration.

Set a name for the Page in **Page Title**.

In **Content**, choose **Insert Widget**.



In **Widget Type**, please select among 6 AMP Widget Types including: **Product list, Banner, Iframe, Social Share, Youtube and Image**.



In the following parts, we will introduce how to configure each type of AMP widgets provided by the extension.

2. AMP Product List Widget

Widget

Widget Type * Bss Amp Products List
List of Products

Widget Options

Title Best Seller

Height * 310

Number of Products to Display * 5

Image Height * 300

Image Width * 240

Conditions * If ALL of these conditions are TRUE :
+

Insert Widget

In **Title**: Fill in the text displaying above the products.

In **Height**: Choose height for product slider.

In **Number of Products to Display**: Choose the number of products which will be shown.

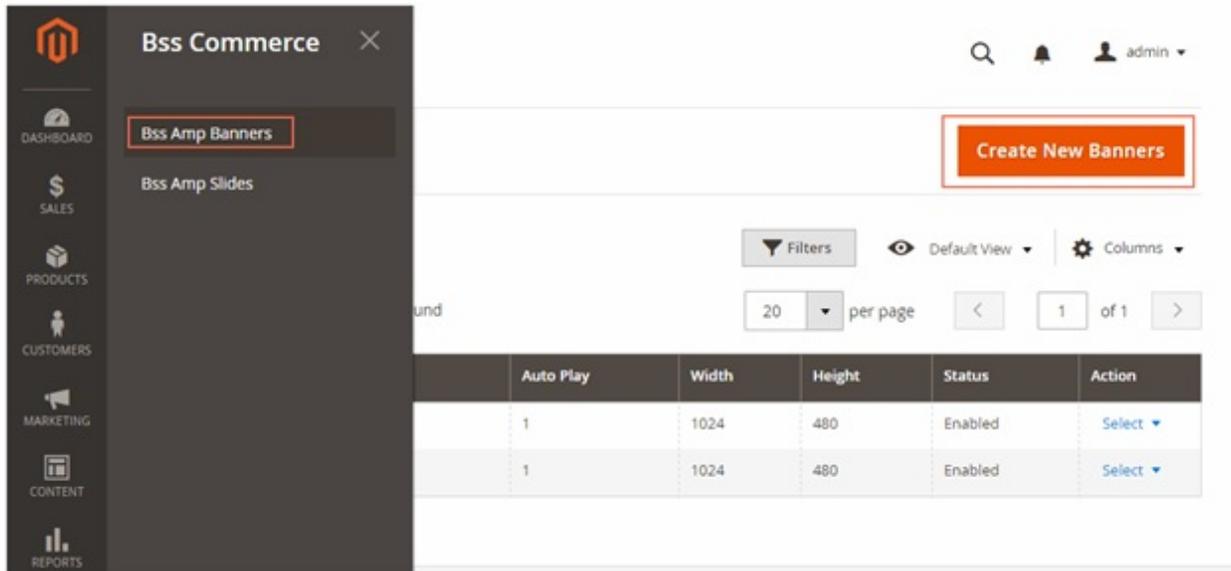
In **Image Height**: Choose the height of product image.

In **Image Width**: Choose the width of product image.

In **Condition**: Choose the condition for products which will be shown.

3. AMP Banner Widget

Please go to **Admin -> BSSCommerce -> AMP Banner -> Create New Banner** and start configuration.



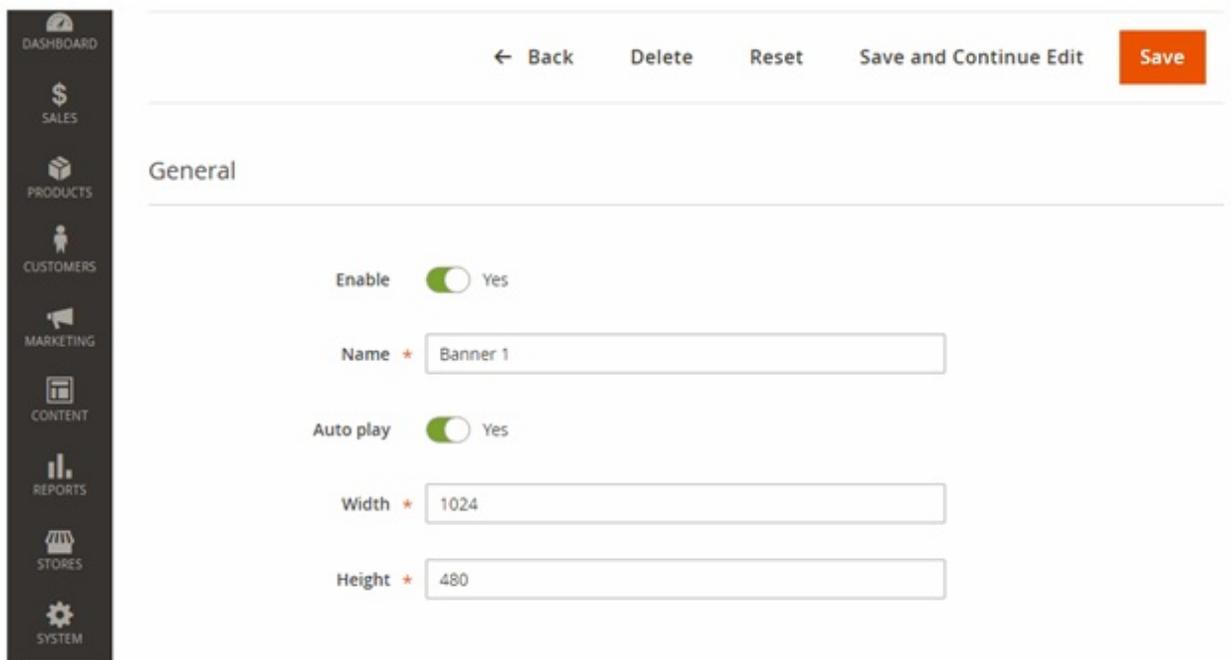
In **Enable**: Choose Yes.

In **Name**: Choose the name for the banner (for management purpose at backend only, not to be displayed at frontend).

In **Autoplay**: Choose Yes for the banner to be auto played, otherwise choose No.

In **Width**: Choose the width for the banner.

In **Height**: Choose the height for the banner.



In the next step, we will make a slide for the above banner.

Please go to **Admin -> BSSCommerce -> AMP SlidesCreate New Slides** and start configuration.

In **Enable**: Choose Yes.

In **Banner**: Choose the banner which you just created

In **Title**: Choose the title for the slide (displayed in frontend).

In **Link**: Choose a link where customer will be directed to once clicking on the banner.

In **Caption**: Choose the caption which will be displayed under the image.

← Back Delete Reset Save and Continue Edit Save

General

Enable Yes

Banner Banner 1

Title * Women

Link * <http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-google-accelerated-mobile>

Caption Women

Open URL in New Window No

Sort Order 1

Image * Upload



/bss/amp/slides/womens-main.jpg
460x1080

In **Open Url in a New Window**: Choose **Yes** for the link to be displayed in a new window, otherwise choose **No**.

In **Sort Order**: Choose the order of the image in the slide.

In **Image**: Upload the image you want to display.

Repeat these steps for all the images you want to be displayed in the slide. The slide can include many images. Below is an example of the images we put in the slide for homepage.

Amp Slides 🔍 🔔 👤 admin ▾

[Create New Slides](#)

Filters 👁 Default View ▾ ⚙ Columns ▾

Actions ▾ 9 records found 20 ▾ per page < 1 of 1 >

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID ↓	Image	Title	Link	Banner	Status	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	1		Women	http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-google-accelerated-mobile-pages-amp/women.html	Banner 1	Enabled	Select ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	2		Men	http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-google-accelerated-mobile-pages-amp/men.html	Banner 1	Enabled	Select ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	3		Gear	http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-google-accelerated-mobile-pages-amp/gear.html	Banner 1	Enabled	Select ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	4		Training	http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-google-accelerated-mobile-pages-amp/training.html	Banner 1	Enabled	Select ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	5		Sale	http://demom2.bsscommerce.com/magento2-google-accelerated-mobile-pages-amp/sale.html	Banner 1	Enabled	Select ▾

After finishing making the slide for the AMP banner, insert the banner in the AMP page.

Insert Widget... ✕

Widget

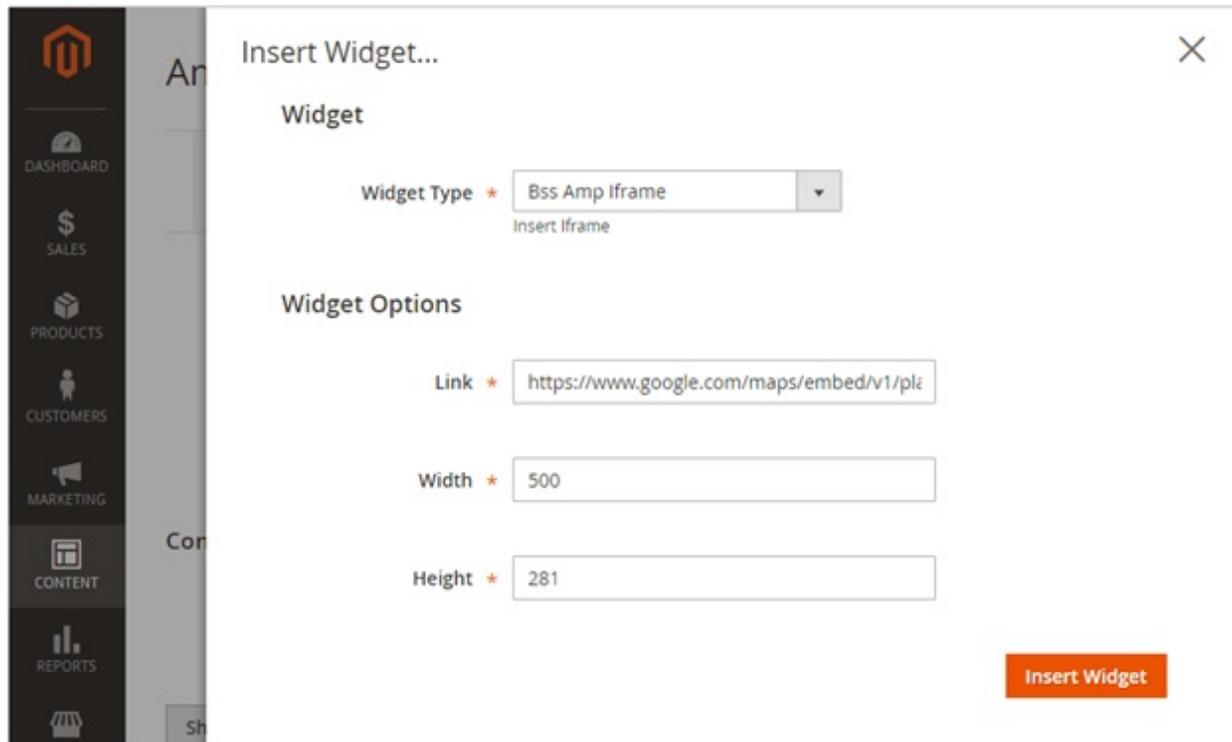
Widget Type * Bss Amp Banners ▾
Insert Banner

Widget Options

Banner Name Banner 1 ▾ [Insert AMP Banner](#)

[Insert Widget](#)

4. AMP Iframe Widget



In **Link**: Choose the link to the Iframe.

In **Width**: Choose the width for the Iframe.

In **Height**: Choose the height for the Iframe.

5. AMP Social Share Widget

There are 8 types of available social share including **Facebook, Email, Gplus, Linkedin, Pinterest, Tumblr, Twitter and Whatsapp**.

Choose **Yes** to enable otherwise choose **No**.

For **Facebook**, please fill in app ID.

The screenshot shows a sidebar on the left with navigation icons for Dashboard, Sales, Products, Customers, Marketing, Content, Reports, Stores, System, Find Partners & Extensions, and BSS Commerce. The main area is a modal window titled 'Insert Widget...' with a close button (X) in the top right corner.

Widget

Widget Type * Bss Amp Social Share
Insert Social Share

Widget Options

Facebook (App Id)

Email

Gplus

Linkedin

Pinterest

Tumblr

Twitter

Whatsapp

Insert Widget

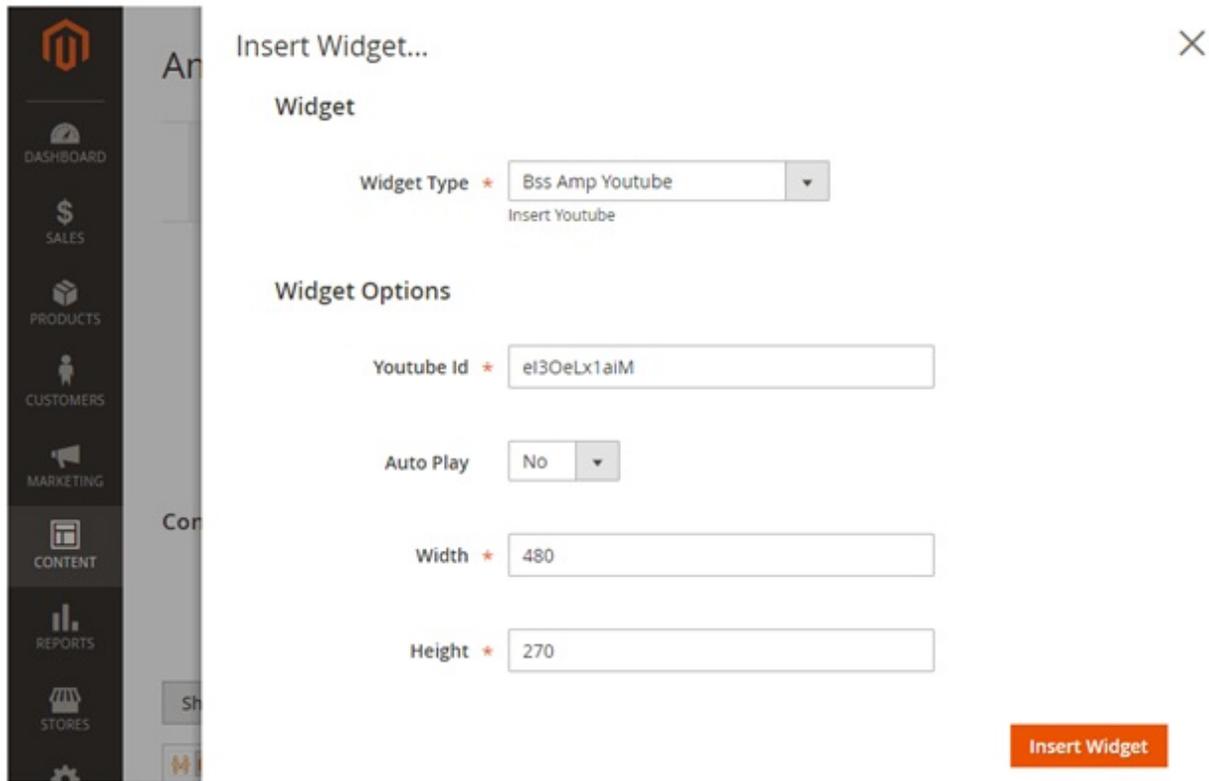
6. AMP Youtube Widget

In **Youtube ID**: Choose the text after “https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=”.

In **Autoplay**: Choose **Yes** for the video to be auto played, otherwise choose **No**.

In **Width**: Choose the width for the video.

In **Height**: Choose the height for the video.



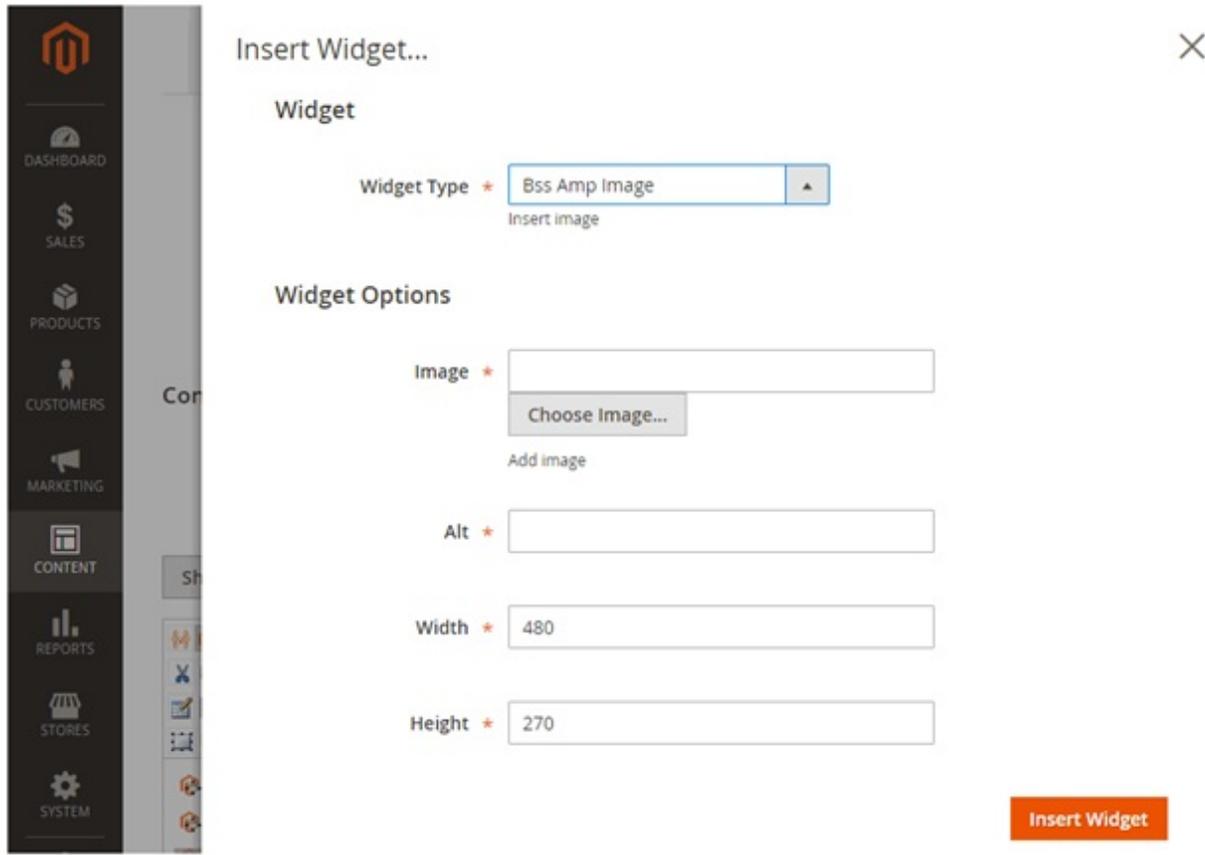
7. AMP Image Widget

In **Image**: Choose the image you want to display.

In **Alt**: Choose Alt text for the image.

In **Width**: Choose the width for the image.

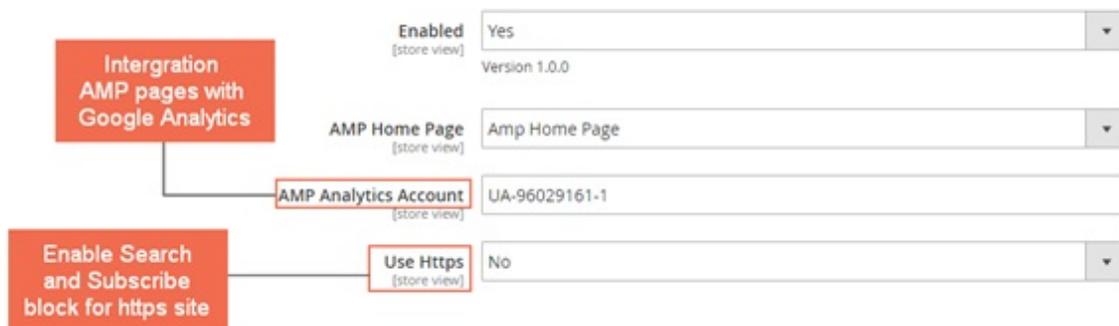
In **Height**: Choose the height for the image.



8. General Configuration

Please go to **Store -> Configuration -> BSS COMMERCE -> Accelerated Mobile Pages** and start configuration.

General

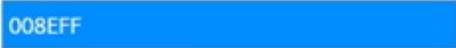
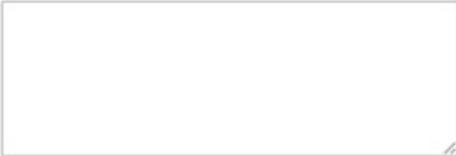


In **Enabled**: Choose Yes to enable the module, otherwise choose **No**.

In **AMP Homepage**: Choose the page you created to be AMP Homepage.

In **AMP Analytics Account**: Fill in the ID of your Google Analytics account to integrate AMP pages to Analytics.

In **Use Https**: This configuration works for https website only. Choose **Yes** to display **search box and subscription box**, otherwise choose **No**. If your site is not using https, please choose **No**.

Button Background Color <small>[store view]</small>	008EFF	
Button Background Color (Hover) <small>[store view]</small>	350AFF	
Button Text Color <small>[store view]</small>	FF5100	
Button Text Color (Hover) <small>[store view]</small>	EDFF12	
Custom CSS <small>[store view]</small>		

In **Button Background Color**: Choose the background color for button on AMP pages.

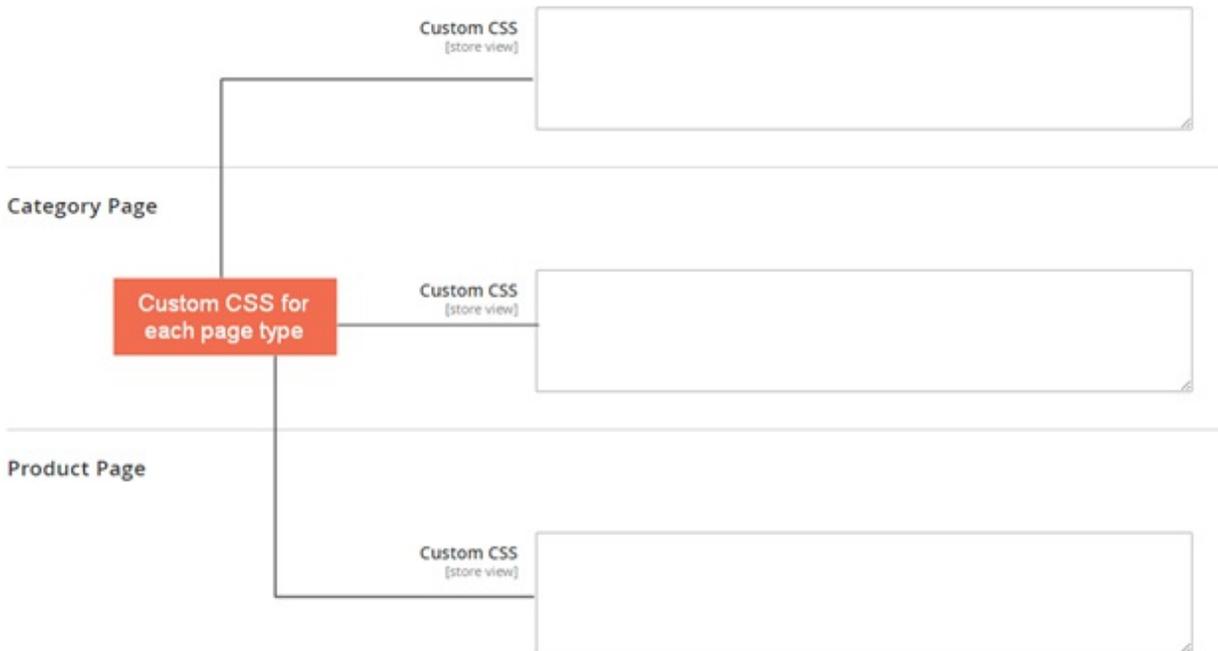
In **Button Background Color (Hover)**: Choose the background color for button on AMP pages when hovering.

In **Button Text Color**: Choose the color for text on button on AMP pages.

In **Button Text Color (Hover)**: Choose the color for text on button on AMP pages when hovering.

In **Custom CSS**: Set the CSS for all AMP pages.

Home Page



In **Custom CSS for Home Page/ Category Page/Product Page/**: Set the CSS for each type of AMP page.

9. Note

- All the CSS configuration must follow AMP standard. Please visit <https://www.ampproject.org/> to know more details about the standard.
- To validate your AMP pages, please use these three tools:
- <https://search.google.com/search-console/amp>
- <https://validator.ampproject.org>
- AMP Validator Extension available for Chrome and Opera

60.2 Compatibility

Our Google AMP for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

60.3 Changelog

60.4 FAQs

Grouped Product with Custom Options

61.1 User Guide

61.1.1 Grouped Product with Custom Options for Magento 2 overview

Grouped Product is an amazing type of product that supports showing multiple products for order on a single page. However, as you know, the default of Magento only allows admin to add simple products without custom options to a grouped product. Whereas, with [Grouped Product with Custom Options for Magento 2](#) supports adding simple products with custom options to a grouped product, which makes customers purchase grouped product conveniently when having more choices to select their wanted attributes of products. Moreover, Grouped Product with Custom Options for Magento 2 helps to show custom options of associated products when customers set quantity which helps to have an economy space and make beautiful sliding effect for grouped product pages.

61.1.2 How Grouped Product with Custom Options for Magento 2 works

1. At the frontend

All custom options of simple product will be shown up only when customers choose quantity.



Street Set for Men

Be the first to review this product

SKU#: Street Set for Men

Product Name

Qty

1

Show custom options when choosing quantity



T-shirt for men

\$35.00

Choose a color *

-- Please Select --

White

Red

Green

-- Please Select --

Enter your name for print + \$5.00

Maximum number of characters: 10

2. At the backend

2.1. Add simple products with custom options to a grouped product

- At first, you need to create custom options for simple products.
- Then, add simple products with custom options to grouped product:
 - Go to **Product -> Catalog**
 - Choose a grouped product you need to add simple product with custom options.
 - At **Grouped Products** tab, click **Add Products to Group**, then select simple products with custom options.
 - Next, choose **Add Selected Products**.
 - **Save**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Products to Group' interface. At the top right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Add Selected Products' buttons. Below this, there are filters and view options. The main area displays a table with 3 records found (3 selected). A callout box highlights the instruction: 'Associate simple products with custom options to a grouped product'.

✓	ID	Thumbnail	Name	Type	SKU	Quantity	Price
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2057		T-shirt for men	Simple Product	T-shirt for men	10000.0000	\$35.00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2058		Basic Long Pants	Simple Product	Basic Long Pants	10000.0000	\$40.00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2059		Men's shoes	Simple Product	Men's shoes	1000.0000	\$30.00

2.2. Make configuration for module

Now you enable this module as follow: Go to **Stores -> Configuration**

- **Enabled:** choose **Yes** to enable the module.
- **Show Image:**
 - Choose **Yes** if you want to show image of simple product with custom options.
 - If you do not want that, choose **No**.
- **Show Product URL:**
 - Choose **Yes** if you want to link to product page of associated product with custom options.
 - Choose **No** if you do not want.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration' page for the 'Grouped Product With Custom Option' module. The 'General' tab is selected, and the 'Enabled' dropdown is set to 'Yes'. The 'Show Image' dropdown is also set to 'Yes', and the 'Show Product Url' dropdown is set to 'Yes'. A callout box points to the 'Show Image' dropdown with the text: 'Choose Yes to show images of items'. Another callout box points to the 'Show Product Url' dropdown with the text: 'Choose Yes to link to product pages when clicking images of associated items'. A 'Save Config' button is visible at the top right.

61.2 Compatibility

Our Grouped Product with Custom Options for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

61.3 Changelog

61.4 FAQs

Hide Price/ Call For Price

62.1 User Guide

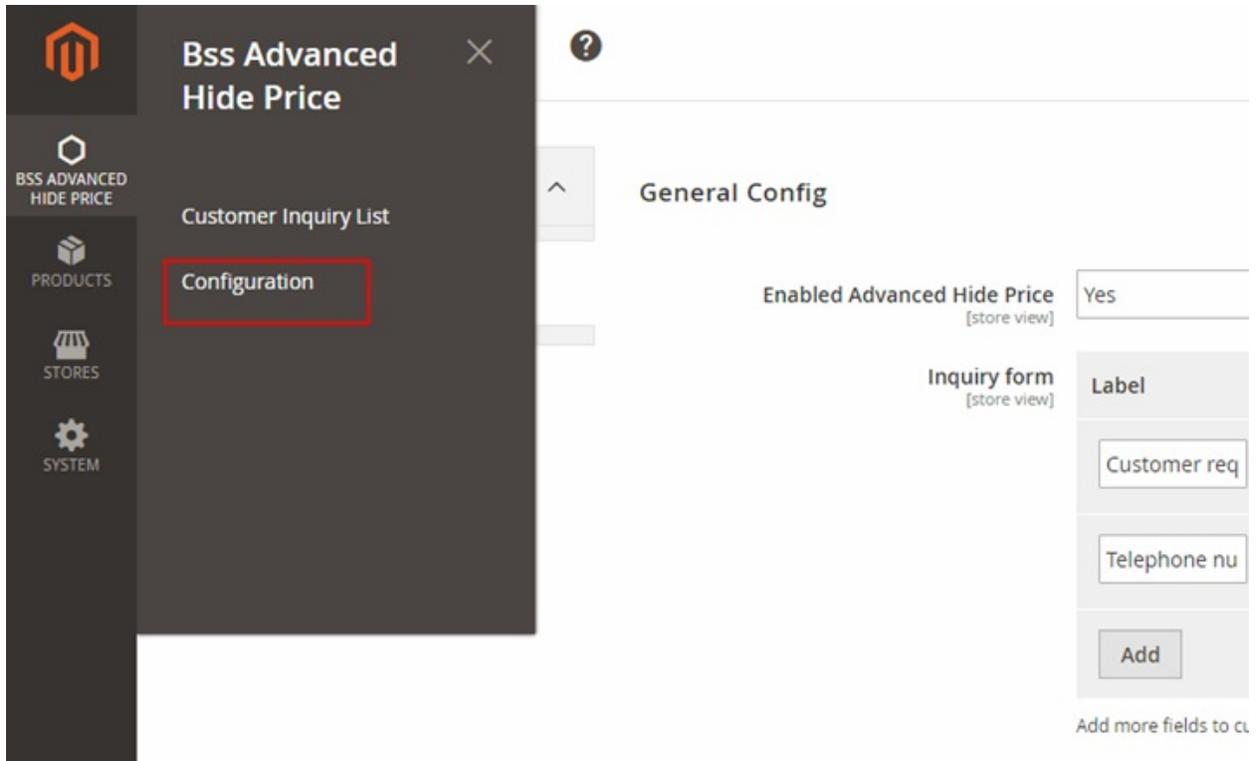
62.1.1 Hide Price/Call For Price for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Advanced Hide Price for Magento 2 is an extension that allows to flexibly hide price for a particular product, a certain category, or specific customer groups. Besides hiding price, the extension also hide “Add to Cart” button and replace it with a custom message or a Call For Price button that link to an Inquiry form in Ajax popup to obtain customer’s request.

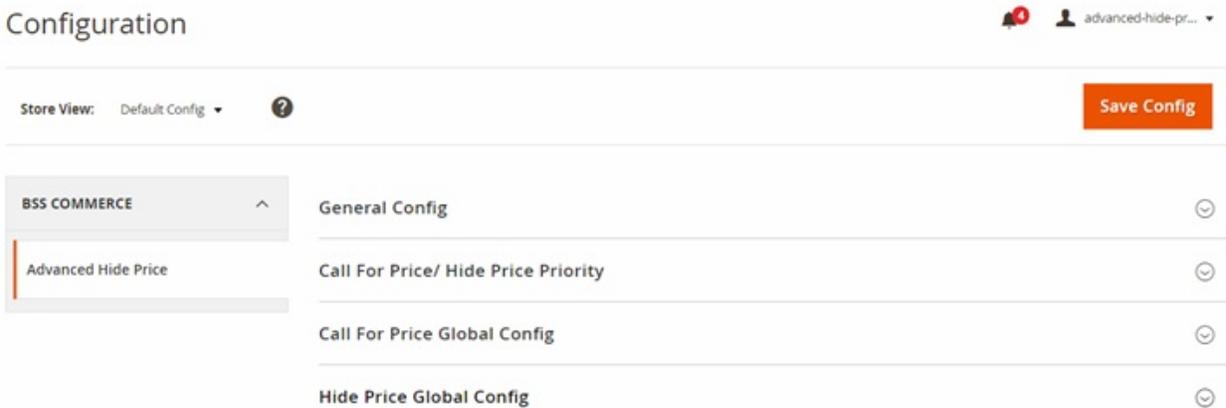
62.1.2 How does Hide Price/Call For Price for Magento 2 Extension work?

1. In Configuration

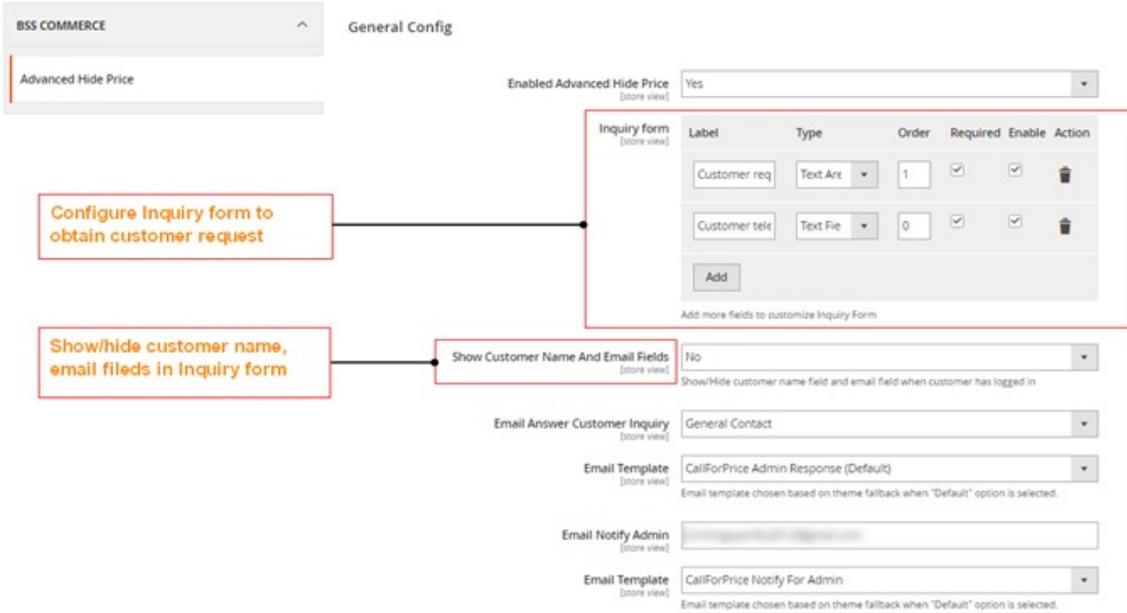
Navigate to **BSS Advanced Hide Price -> Configuration**



In **Configuration**, there are four main sections: General Config, Call For Price/Hide Price Priority, Call For Price Global Config and Hide Price Global Config



1.1. In General Config



In **Enabled Advanced Hide Price**, choose **Yes** to enable the extension or **No** to disable it.

In **Inquiry Form**, customize the inquiry form by adding/ deleting fields in the form to obtain customer requests. Filling in the following options:

- Decide filed name in **Label**. E.g: Customer request.
- Decide filed type in **Type**. There are 3 options to select: Text Field, Text Area, Checkbox.
- Decide the order of the field in Inquiry Form in **Order**.

Tick **Required** and **Enable** checkbox to enable the field, or click action button to discard it.

In **Show Customer Name and Email**, choose **No** to exclude Name and Email field in Inquiry Form if customers have logged in their accounts on site. Otherwise choose **Yes** to include these filed for both logged-in and non-logged-in customers.

In **Email Answer Customer Inquiry**, select an email to send reply to customer?s request then select **Email Template**.

In **Email Notify Admin**, fill in your email to immediately receive email notifying customer request, then select **Email Template**.

1.2. In Call For Price/Hide Price Priority



Prioritize Call For Price or Hide Price Config by selecting that config in **Call For Price/Hide Price Priority**.

1.3. In Call For Price Global Config



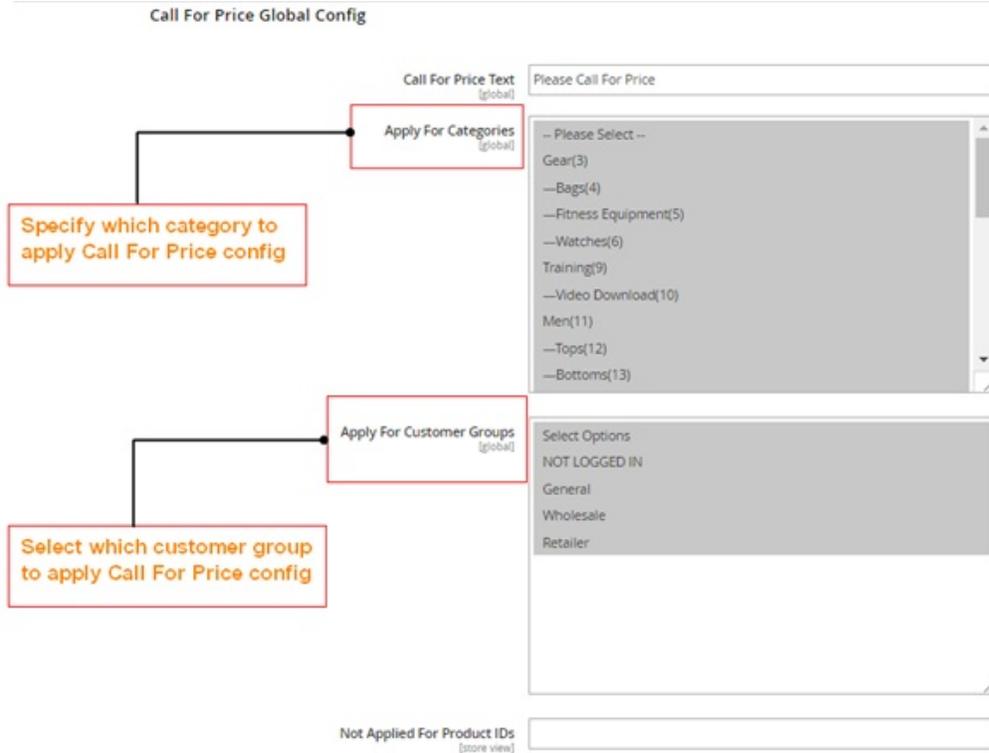
In **Call For Price Text**, enter a text to display in Call For Price button which is in replace of Add to Cart button.

In **Apply For Categories**, select which categories to apply Call For Price config. Choose one, multiple or all categories.

In **Apply For Customer Groups**, select which customer groups to apply Call For Price config. Choose one, multiple or all customer groups.

In **Not Applied For Product IDs**, enter ID of products to exclude from applying Call For Price config.

1.4. In Hide Price Global Config



In **Hide Price Text**, enter a text to display in custom message which is in replace of Add to Cart button.

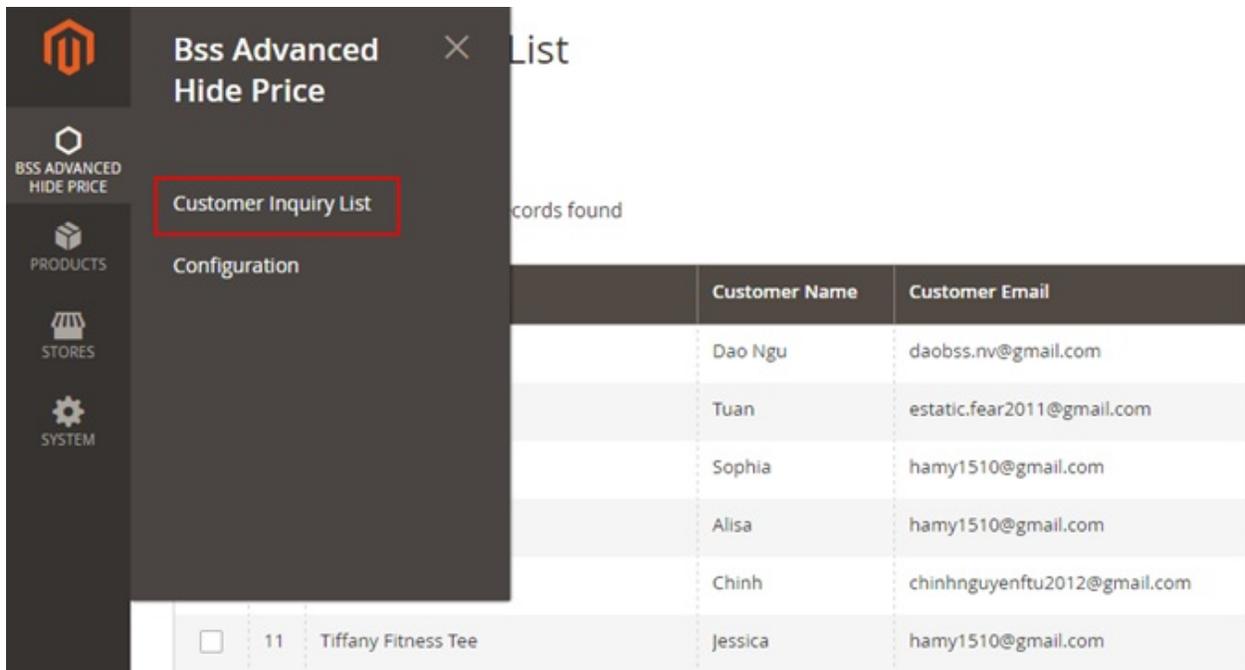
In **Apply For Categories**, select which categories to apply Hide Price config. Choose one, multiple or all categories.

In **Apply For Customer Groups**, select which customer groups to apply Hide Price config. Choose one, multiple or all customer groups.

In **Not Applied For Product IDs**, enter ID of products to exclude from applying Hide Price config.

2. In Customer Inquiry List

Go to **BSS Advanced Hide Price -> Customer Inquiry List**



In **Customer Inquiry List**, check the list of customers who have sent requests with information, including: ID (ID of request), product name, customer name, customer email, created at (time and date when customers sent request), email response and action.

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Product	Customer Name	Customer Email	Created At	Email Response	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Selene Yoga Hoodie	Tuan	estatic.fear2011@gmail.com	Sep 16, 2016 12:20:24 PM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	Nadia Elements Shell	Sophia	hamy1510@gmail.com	Oct 10, 2016 4:22:37 AM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	Karissa V-Neck Tee	Alisa	hamy1510@gmail.com	Oct 10, 2016 7:16:51 AM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	Selene Yoga Hoodie	Chinh	chinhnguyenftu2012@gmail.com	Oct 10, 2016 7:22:07 AM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	Tiffany Fitness Tee	Jessica	hamy1510@gmail.com	Oct 10, 2016 8:29:27 AM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	Selene Yoga Hoodie	Chinh	chinhnguyenftu2012@gmail.com	Oct 10, 2016 10:30:38 AM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	Cassia Funnel Sweatshirt	Cindy	chinhnguyenftu2012@gmail.com	Oct 10, 2016 10:33:18 AM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	Cobalt CoolTech™ Fitness Short	Chinh Nguyen	chinhnguyenftu2012@gmail.com	Oct 19, 2016 10:40:49 AM	Sent	Select ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	Inez Full Zip Jacket	Ha My	hamy1510@gmail.com	Nov 9, 2016 9:54:55 AM	Sent	Select ▼

In **Action**, choose **View** in dropdown **Select** to navigate to inquiry information page.

2.1. In General Information

Check information of the request sent from customer, including general information and additional information.

INQUIRY INFORMATION	
General	
Send Mail	

General Information	
Customer	Name : Cindy - Email : chinhnguyenftu2012@gmail.com
Product	Name : Cassia Funnel Sweatshirt - Sku : WH08
Created At	2016-10-10 10:33:18

Additional Information	
Customer request	<input type="text" value="Which products do you have in stock? If I buy more than 5 items, can I have any discount for this product? Can you tell me your lowest price and shipping rate?"/>
Telephone number	<input type="text" value="123456"/>

2.2. In Send Mail

In **Send Email**, fill in a number to notify customer of price for the requested product in **Price For Request**.

INQUIRY INFORMATION	
General	
Send Mail	

General Information	
Customer	Name : Cindy - Email : chinhnguyenftu2012@gmail.com
Product	Name : Cassia Funnel Sweatshirt - Sku : WH08
Created At	2016-10-10 10:33:18

Additional Information	
Customer request	<input type="text" value="Which products do you have in stock? If I buy more than 5 items, can I have any discount for this product? Can you tell me your lowest price and shipping rate?"/>
Telephone number	<input type="text" value="123456"/>

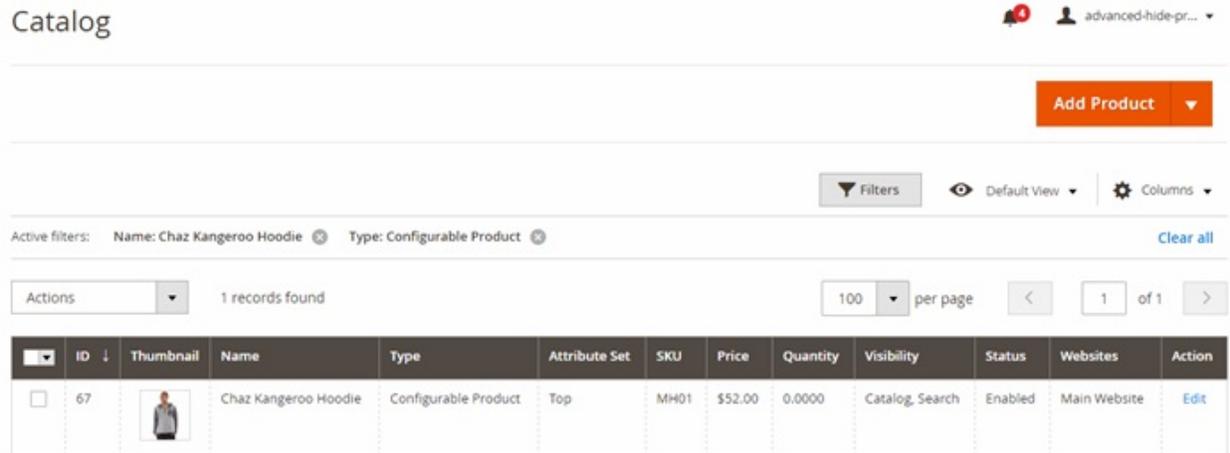
Enter a comment to answer customer inquiry if needed in **Comment**.

Finally, click **Send Email for Customer** button.

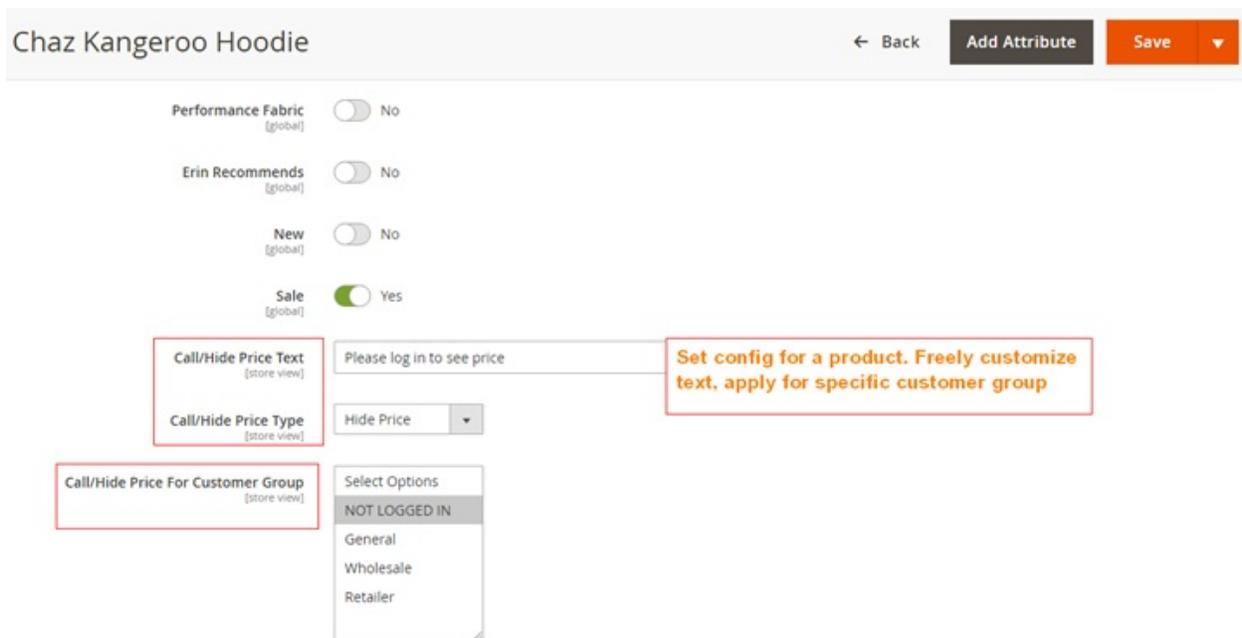
3. In Catalog

Navigate to **Products -> Catalog**

In **Catalog**, search for a product that you want to apply Hide Price or Call for Price config.



In **Action**, click **Edit** to go to Product Edit page. Scroll down to find Hide Price/Call For Price config.



In **Call/Hide Price type**, decide the config you want to apply for that specific product.

In **Call/Hide Price text**, enter a text to display in place of Add to Cart button

In **Call/Hide Price For Customer Group**, select which customer to apply config.

62.2 Compatibility

Our Hide Price/ Call For Price for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

62.3 Changelog

62.4 FAQs

63.1 User Guide

63.1.1 Image Gallery for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Image Gallery for Magento 2 allows admin to create image gallery from scratch, including uploading images, adding new albums, and configuring for each image and album regarding its content, layout and display effect. It is an optimal tool to help admin manage all products' images and provide better visualization of product for customer thanks to widget support and full responsiveness.

63.1.2 How does Image Gallery for Magento 2 Extension work?

1. In Manage Item

Please navigate to **Content -> BSS Gallery Manage -> Manage Item**

Content [Close]

- CONTENT Elements
- STORES Widgets
- SYSTEM Bss Gallery Manage
 - Manage Item**
 - Manage Album
 - Manage Config

General

- Enabled Gallery [store view] Yes
- Image Per Page [store view] 10
- Album Layout [store view] Ajax
- Popup Auto Play [store view] Yes
- Popup Auto Play Speed [store view] 5000
Page Speed If Auto Next is Yes
- Popup Title Position [store view] Outside
- Popup Transition Effect [store view] Fade

Gallery Item

[Add New Item](#)

ID	Thumbnail	Title	Album Ids	Description	Sort Order	Status	Action
107		Hiking backpack	15,17	Hiking backpack	10	Enabled	Edit
106		White long dress	15	White long dress	10	Enabled	Edit
105		Outing kit	15	Outing kit	10	Enabled	Edit
104		Dark blue Polo shirt	15	Dark blue Polo shirt	10	Enabled	Edit
103		Light blue and black Nike shoes		Light blue and black Nike shoes	10	Enabled	Edit
102		Red and white basketball shoes		Red and white basketball shoes	10	Enabled	Edit
101		Digital camera	15	Digital camera	10	Enabled	Edit
100		Street style black tregging	15	Street style black tregging	10	Enabled	Edit

See the list of items here with concise presentation of information including: title, album ids (which albums the item belongs to), description, sort order, status (enabled/disabled), action (click here to edit item information)

- Click **Add New Item** to include a new item into album

New Gallery Item ← Back Reset Save and Continue Edit **Save Gallery Item**

Item Title *

Image * Không có tệp nào được chọn

Video Add embedded URL link of YouTube video
Show youtube video when click image

Sort Order

Status *

Select Albums

Spring Collection Album
 Summer Collection Album
 Autumn Collection Album
 Winter Collection Album
 Outdoor Outing Album
 Street Style Album

Assign the new item to one or multiple albums

description *

- In **Item Title**, pick title for the new item; then upload image for the new item in **Image**
- If your item is a video which has already been uploaded on YouTube, add the embedded url link in **Video**
- Fill in the information in **Sort Order** and set **Status** as Enabled
- Finally, choose one or multiple albums to assign your new item in **Select Albums** and write its description if needed in **Description**.

2. In Manage Album

Please navigate to **Content -> BSS Gallery Manage -> Manage Album**

Gallery Album **Add New Album**

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID ↓	Title	Thumbnail	URL Key	Item Ids	Status	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	Spring Collection Album		spring-collection-album-	55,56,57,58,59,60,61,62,63,64,111	Enabled	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	Summer Collection Album		summer-collection-album-	30,31,32,33,36,37,38,39,40,46,47,48,49,50,51,52,54	Enabled	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	Autumn Collection Album		autumn-collection-album-	65,66,67,68,69,70,71,72,73,74,75	Enabled	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	Winter Collection Album		winter-collection-album-	76,77,78,79,80,81,82,83,84,85,86,87	Enabled	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	Outdoor Outing Album		outdoor-outing-album-	88,89,90,91,92,93,94,95	Enabled	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	Street Style Album		street-style-album-	96,97,98,99,100,101,104,105,106,107	Enabled	Edit

See the list of albums here with concise presentation of information including: title, thumbnail (choose a picture in the album to be album thumbnail), url key (automatically updated based on album title, item ids (show items included in album), status (enabled/disabled), action (click here to edit item information)

- If you want to add new albums into gallery, click **Add New Album**

In New Gallery Album -> Album Information -> General

New Gallery Album ← Back Reset Save and Continue **Save Gallery Album**

ALBUM INFORMATION

General

Manage Item

General Information

Album Title *

Album Description

Meta Keywords

Meta Description

Layout Standard ▾

Slide Auto Play No ▾

Status * Enabled ▾

Write meta data for the album to support SEO

→ Meta Keywords

→ Meta Description

Select album layout: Slider, Standard

→ Layout

- In **General Information**, decide **Album Title**, write **Album Description** if needed, then write meta data in **Meta Keywords** and **Meta Description** to support SEO.
- Then, choose album layout type in **Layout**: Standard or Slider.
- If you want to set automatic sliding action for your album then choose Yes in **Slide Auto Play**, otherwise choose No.
- In **Status** choose Enabled to activate the new album otherwise choose Disabled.
- In **New Gallery Album -> Album Information -> Manage Item**

New Gallery Album ← Back Reset Save and Continue **Save Gallery Album**

ALBUM INFORMATION

General

Manage Item *✎*

Search Reset Filter 65 records found 20 per page 1 of 4

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Album Thumbnail	Thumbnail	Title	Description	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	30	<input type="radio"/>		Drawstring backpack	DIY blue and white drawstring backpack - the unique and must-have item for summer holidays	Enable
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	31	<input checked="" type="radio"/>		Layla Tee	Work out or hang out in chic style in the Layla Tee. With a lightweight sheer design and a roomy neckline, this tee fits you comfortably while looking stylish.	Enable
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	32	<input type="radio"/>		Striped blue and red shirts	Striped blue and red shirts, best choice for women	Enable
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	36	<input type="radio"/>		Denim shorts for women	Denim shorts for women	Enable
<input type="checkbox"/>	46	<input type="radio"/>		Blue sky tank top	Blue sky tank top	Enable
<input type="checkbox"/>	47	<input type="radio"/>		Open shoulder scallop edge top	Open shoulder scallop edge top	Enable

Assign multiple items to the new album

→ 31

→ 32

→ 36

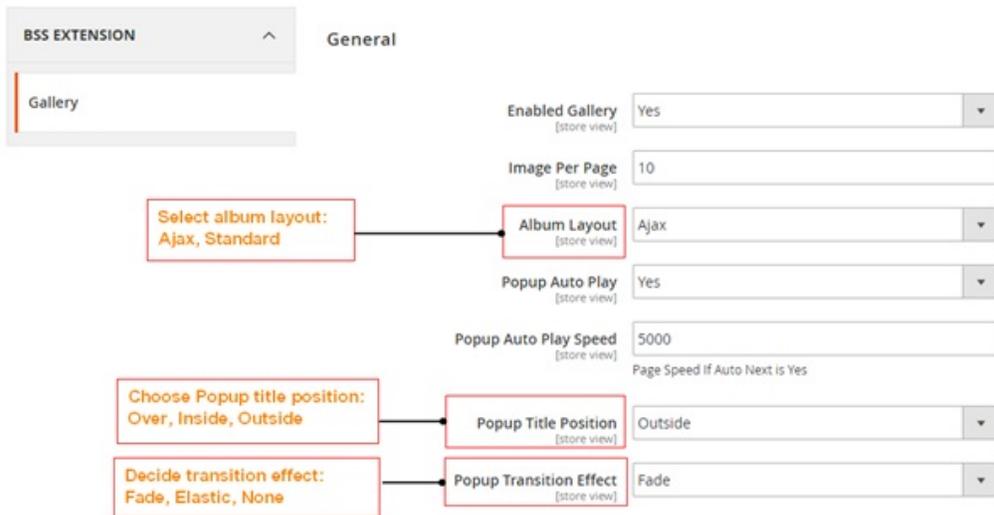
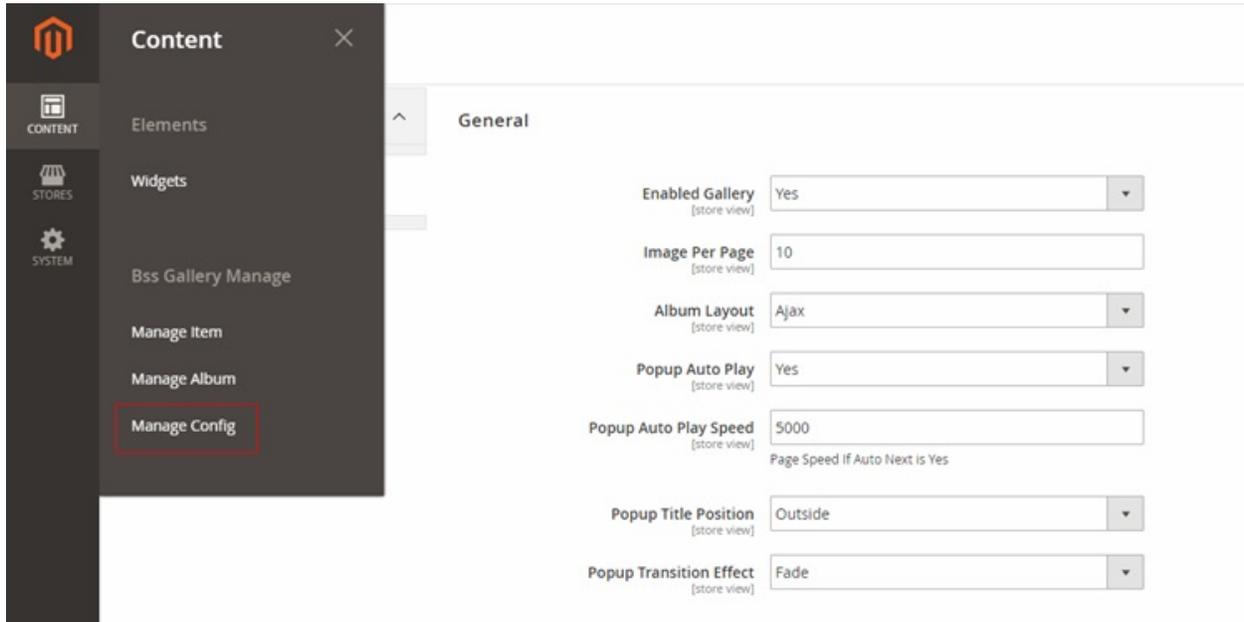
Choose album thumbnail

→ 31

In **Manage Item**, choose one or several items to add to the new album, then in **Album Thumbnail**, choose an item to be album thumbnail

3. In Manage Config

Please navigate to **Content -> BSS Gallery Manage -> Manage Config**

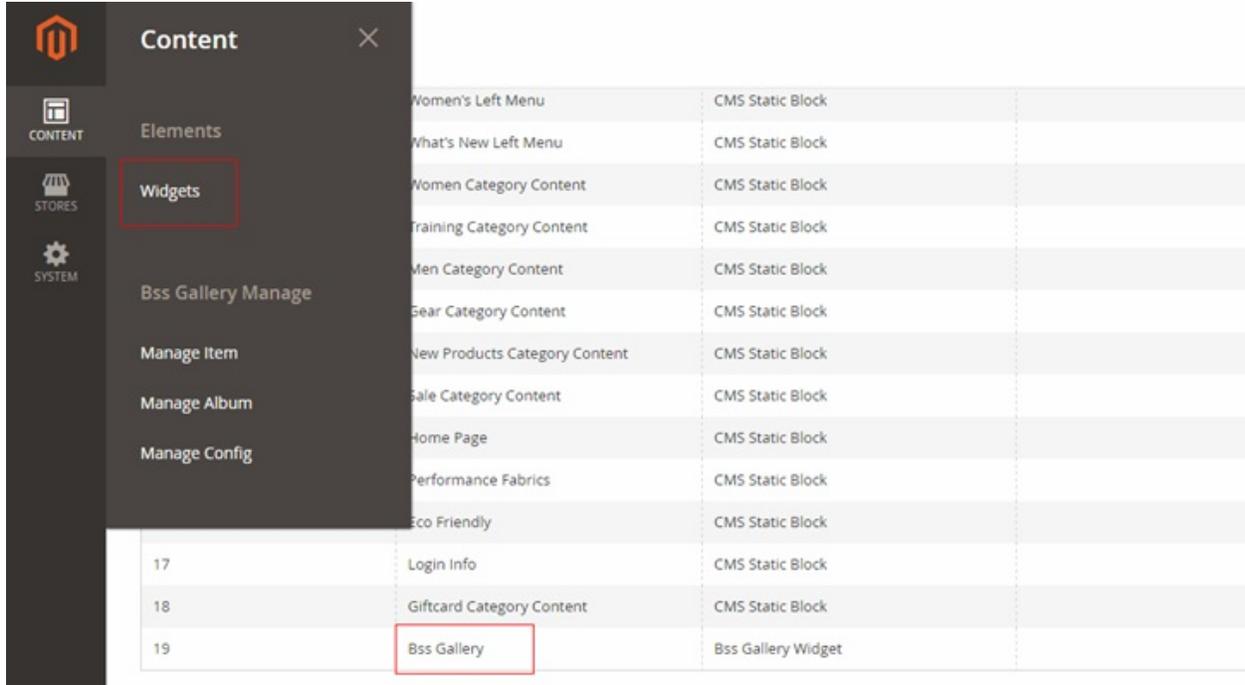


- In **Enabled Gallery**, choose Yes to enable the gallery, otherwise choose No.
- In **Image Per Page**, limit the display of number of items for each page.
- In **Album Layout**, choose one of the two available of album layout: Ajax or Standard.
- In **Popup Auto Play**, choose Yes to enable automatic next image for the gallery, then decide next speed in **Popup Auto Play Speed**; otherwise choose No.
- Then, decide position of fancybox title in **Popup Title Position** with 3 options, including: Over, Inside, and Outside.
- Choose the wanted effect of image display for Popup in **Popup Transition Effect** with 3 options: Fade, Elastic,

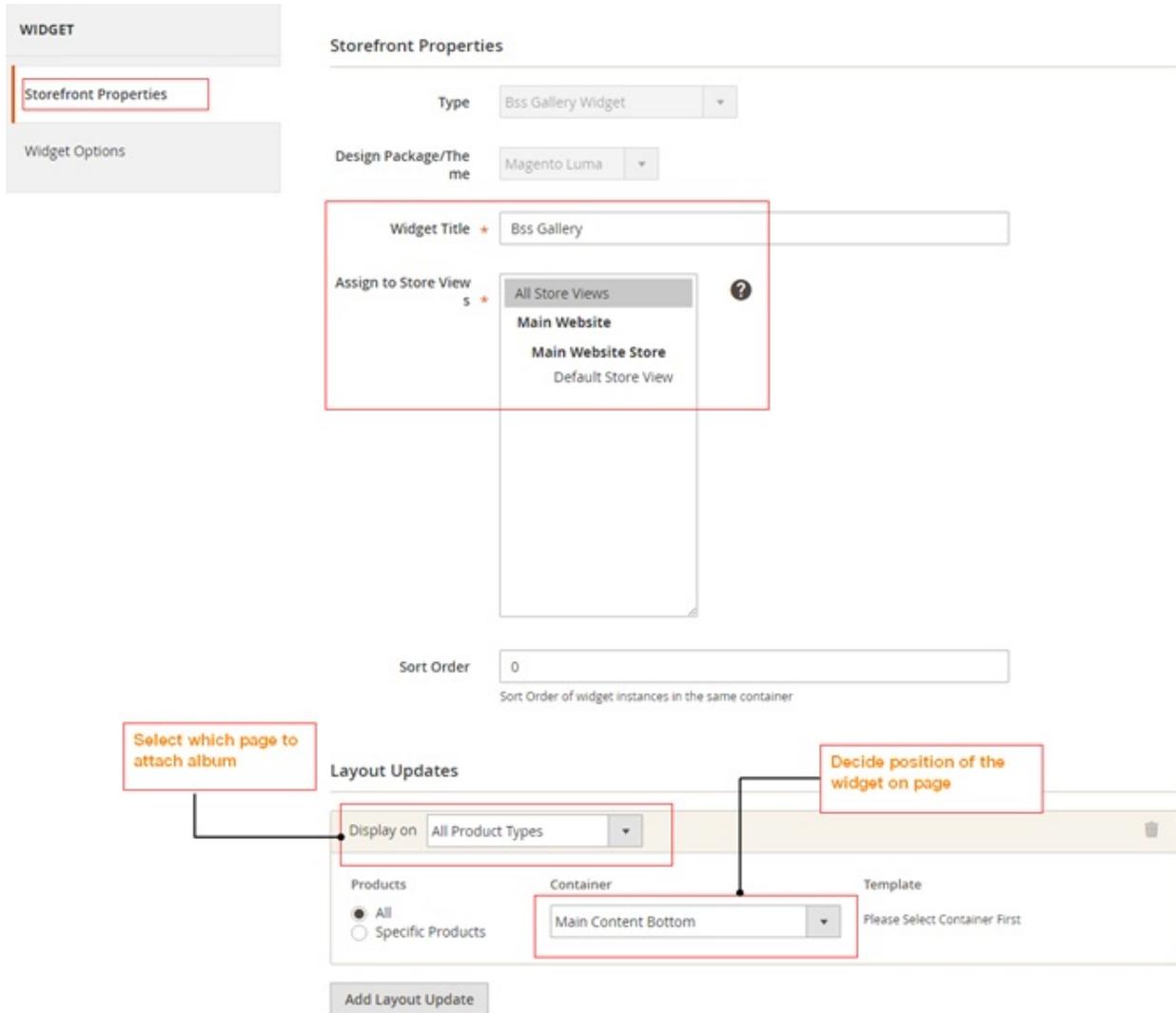
or None.

4. In Widgets

Please navigate to **Content -> Elements -> Widgets -> Bss Gallery**



In **Bss Gallery -> WIDGET -> Storefront Properties**



In **Storefront Properties**, choose title for the widget in **Widget Title**, and pick which store view to place widget: All Store View, Main Website, Main Website Store, Default Store View.

In **Layout Updates**, choose which category/product type/page for gallery displaying in **Display On**, click to see drop down and pick an option among the available list, including: Categories (Anchor Categories, Non-anchor Categories), Products (All Product Types, Simple Product, Virtual Product, Bundle Product, Downloadable Product, Grouped Product, Configurable Product), Generic Pages (All Pages, Specified Page, Page Layouts).

In **Container**, choose an option among the available list of position in drop down to place widget on page.

In **Bss Gallery** -> **WIDGET** -> **Widget Options**

The screenshot shows the 'WIDGET' configuration panel in the Magento 2 Admin. The 'Widget Options' section is expanded, showing the following fields:

- Widget Description:** Image Gallery
- Widget Album:** Summer Collection Album
- Widget Layout:** Slider
- Auto Play:** True
- Auto Play Time:** (empty field)

A callout box with the text "Decide widget layout: Slider or Standard" points to the 'Widget Layout' dropdown menu.

- In **Widget Description**, write description for the widget.
- In **Widget Album**, choose which album to be displayed on widget.
- In **Widget Layout**, choose one of the 2 layout types for widget: Slider, or Standard.
- If choose Slider for Widget Layout, select True to enable **Auto Play**, otherwise select False, then fill in **Auto Play Time** if needed

63.2 Compatibility

Our Image Gallery for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

63.3 Changelog

63.4 FAQs

64.1 User Guide

64.1.1 Infinite Scroll for Magento 2 Extension Overview

In Magento 2 default, in product pages such as catalog or search result, pagination will be displayed at the end of each page as an option to load the next pages. With this function, users only can load the next page one by one. In general, it is not convenient for users if there are a great numbers of pages. To optimize the searching experience for Magento users, BSSCommerce quickly develops [Infinite Scroll for Magento 2 Extension](#) - providing new functions that give admin more choices in setting up how to load the next pages: automatically load with Ajax when customers scroll down to the end of pages, free to customize Load More button/ Back to Top button, create smart URL. Besides, admin can choose which categories the module will work for. Our extension will contribute to making your site become more professional and user ?friendlier.

64.1.2 How does Infinite Scroll for Magento 2 Extension work?

To make configuration of this module, follow these below instruction:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel => Store => Configuration**
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS Commerce** => select **Infinite Scroll**

There are 3 main parts you can fix as your wishes: General, Go To Top, Button Load More

1. General

- **Enabled**

Choose Yes/ No to enable/ disable module

- **Loading Icon**

Click button Choose File -> Select an image file from your computer location. This image will be used as icon displayed while loading product with Ajax

Click Delete Image if you want to use default icon

- **Show load more button pages**

Add a page number into this field. Once set up, when auto ajax loading till this page number, a button will be display for users to load the next pages manually.

If you set up this field to 0, there will be no Load More button.

If you set up this field to 1, Load More button will be displayed right at the first page

You can customize Load More button in the following box.

- **Exclude Category**

Add ID of categories which you don't want the module work for

General

Enabled [store view] Yes

Freely upload icon to show while loading product → Loading Icon [store view] Choose File No file chosen
Delete Image

Use Previous [store view] Yes

Show load more button pages [store view] 0
Page number after which a 'Load more items' link is displayed. Users will manually trigger the loading of the next page by clicking this link.

Exclude categories which you don't want the module work for → Exclude Category [store view] 54

2. Button Load More

You can set up button Load More as wish in term of:

- guiding texts
- background color
- Trigger
- Location
- Speed

Button Load More

Text Button Load More [store view]

Text Button Load Previous [store view]

Setting up for Load More button

Text No More [store view]
Add a text when there are no more pages left to load.

Background Button Load More [store view]

Color Button Load More [store view]

A text to show on the button mouse hover [store view]

zIndex [store view]

Setting up for Go To Top button

Always Visible [store view] ▼
Set the button to be always visible.

Trigger [store view]
After how many scrolled down pixels the button must be shown.

Location [store view] ▼

Go Up Speed [store view] ▼

3. Button Load More

You can set up button Load More as your wish in term of guiding texts and background color for button.

Button Load More

Text Button Load More <small>[store view]</small>	Load more items
Text Button Load Previous <small>[store view]</small>	Load previous items
Setting up for Load More button	Text No More <small>[store view]</small>
	There are no more pages left to load. Add a text when there are no more pages left to load.
Background Button Load More <small>[store view]</small>	EEEEEE
Color Button Load More <small>[store view]</small>	333333

64.2 Compatibility

Our Infinite Scroll for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

64.3 Changelog

64.4 FAQs

65.1 User Guide

65.1.1 Magento 2 Lazy Load Extension Overview

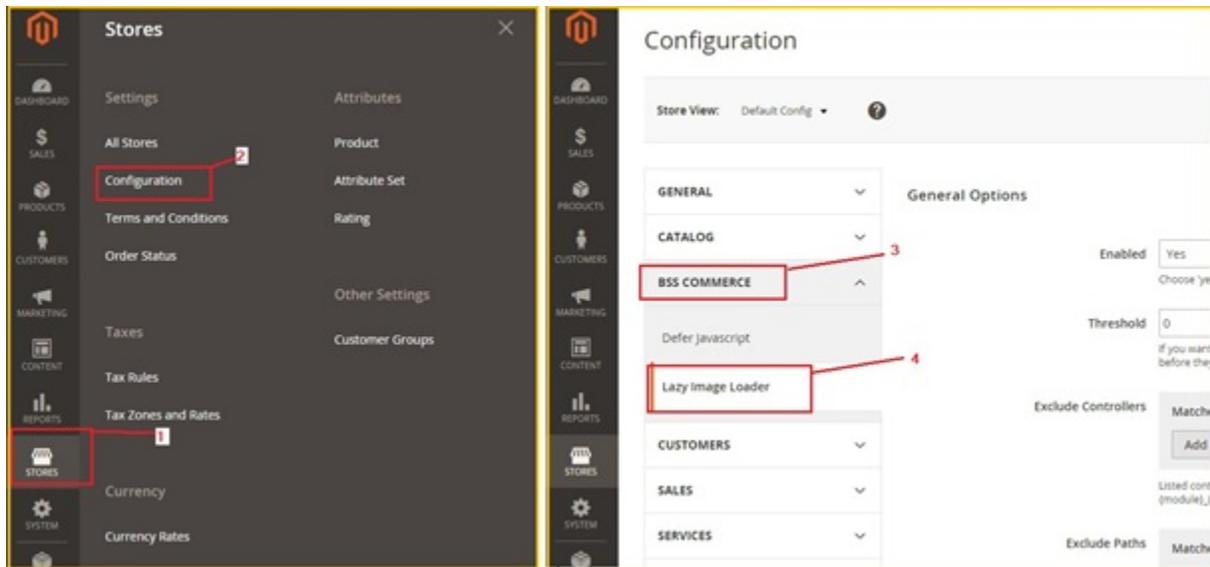
Magento 2 [Lazy Load extension](#) serves Magento 2 based website. It not only creates eye-catching image emerging transition but also optimizes Magento 2 site speed. Especially, the extension is developed with SEO which promotes site rank in the SERPs.

65.1.2 How does Magento 2 Lazy Load extension work?

To make configuration of this module, follow these below instruction:

- Step 1: Go to **Admin Panel** => **Stores** => **Configuration**
- Step 2: At the left side of the page, find **BSS Commerce** => select **Lazy Image Loader**

After these 2 steps, a screen for configuration appears like the below picture:



There are 5 parts you can fix as your wishes: Enabled, Threshold, Exclude controllers, Exclude path, Exclude Home Page.

1. Enabled

You can select between enable and disable Magento 2 Lazy Load Extension by setting the status in **Enabled** box into “Enable” or “Disable”.

Enabled ▼
 Choose 'yes' to enable module.

2. Threshold

In **Threshold** box, you can set the number pixel before image appear on the screen, then the image will be loaded earlier as the pixels you set. For instance, if you set the number in the box is 14, it means that the images will be loaded before when your scroll position is far from 14 pixels.

Threshold [STORE VIEW]
 If you want your images to load earlier, lets say number pixel before they appear on the screen.

3. Exclude controllers, Path, Homepage

Magento 2 Lazy Load Extension allows admin deciding which part will be excluded from lazy-loaded function. To exclude controller, admin can click on **Add** and then filling the match in the box. Admin also can delete the Match and add more by clicking on **Delete**, and **Add** button alternately.

Exclude Controllers [STORE VIEW]

Matched Expression	Action
<input type="text"/>	

Listed controllers will be unaffected by lazy image loader. Use: {module}_{controller}_{action}.

Similar to **Controller**, admin can control the **Path** which they do not want to be affected by lazy image load.

Exclude Paths [STORE VIEW]

Matched Expression	Action
<input type="text"/>	

Listed paths will be unaffected by lazy image loader. Use: (Example: gear/bags.html).

Finally, admin can set whether Homepage be affected by lazy image load or not in the box **Exclude Home Page**.

Exclude Home Page [STORE VIEW]

Home page will be unaffected by lazy image loader.

After finishing all of these set-up steps, you can click on **Save Config** button to start using [Magento 2 Lazy Load extension](#).

65.2 Compatibility

Our Lazy Image Loader Extension for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

65.3 Changelog

65.4 Common Problems

1. Having a problem when installing [Magento 2 Lazy Load extension](#) on **magento 2.1?**

Error message

Invalid XML in file /www/magento2/app/code/Bss/LazyImageLoader/etc/adminhtml/system.xml:

Element 'field', attribute 'validate': The attribute 'validate' is not allowed.

Line: 52

Element 'field', attribute 'validate': The attribute 'validate' is not allowed.

Line: 56

```
#0 /www/magento2/vendor/magento/framework/Config/Reader/Filesystem.php(127):  
↳Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Reader  
->_readFiles(Object(Magento\Framework\Config\FileIterator))  
  
#1 /www/magento2/vendor/magento/framework/Config/Data/Scoped.php(103):  
↳Magento\Framework\Config\Reader\Filesystem->read('adminhtml')  
  
#2 /www/magento2/vendor/magento/framework/Config/Data/Scoped.php(81):  
↳Magento\Framework\Config\Data\Scoped->_loadScopedData()  
  
#3 /www/magento2/vendor/magento/module-config/Model/Config/Structure.  
↳php(66): Magento\Framework\Config\Data\Scoped->get()  
  
#4 /www/magento2/var/generation/Magento/Config/Model/Config/Structure/  
↳Interceptor.php(14): Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure  
->__construct(Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Data),  
↳Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Element\Iterator\Tab),  
Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Element\FlyweightFactory),  
↳Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\ScopeDefiner))  
  
#5 /www/magento2/vendor/magento/framework/ObjectManager/Factory/  
↳AbstractFactory.php(103): Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Interceptor  
->__construct(Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Data),  
↳Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Element\Iterator\Tab),  
Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\Structure\Element\FlyweightFactory),  
↳Object(Magento\Config\Model\Config\ScopeDefiner))  
  
#6 /www/magento2/vendor/magento/framework/ObjectManager/Factory/Compiled.  
↳php(88): Magento\Framework\ObjectManager\Factory\AbstractFactory  
->createObject('Magento\\Config...', Array)
```

How to fix?

Delete validate tag in app/code/Bss/LazyImageLoader/etc/adminhtml/system.xml

Example :

```
<field id="loading_width" translate="label" type="text" validate="validate-  
↳number  
validate-zero-or-greater" sortOrder="6" showInDefault="1" showInWebsite="1"  
↳showInStore="1">
```

change to :

```
<field id="loading_width" translate="label" type="text" sortOrder="6"  
showInDefault="1" showInWebsite="1" showInStore="1">
```

65.5 FAQs

66.1 User Guide

66.1.1 Limit Cart Quantity For Magento 2 Overview

Setting up a limit for order quantity is an essential need for many store owners as it has a remarkable effect on sales policy. However, the default Magento is able to support few of those demands. Hence, BSSCommerce has developed [Limit Cart Quantity For Magento 2](#) with the hope it will become a useful and effective solution for E-commerce business. The extension helps admin to set a minimum and maximum total quantity of all products in a cart for specific customer groups before checking out successfully. Moreover, the content of message notifying about quantity error can be customized with expressive choices of words to encourage customers to shop more pleasantly.

66.1.2 How does Limit Cart Quantity For Magento 2 work?

You go to **Admin -> Store -> Configuration -> Catalog -> Inventory** and start configuration

Minimum Quantity Allowed for Entire Cart [global]

Customer Group	Minimum Qty	Action
NOT LOGGED	5	
General	10	
Wholesale	15	
Retailer	14	
<input type="button" value="Add"/>		

Message Alert For Minimum Value [global]

Minimum total items must be -conf-, you have only -cart- !!

Insert "-conf-" for config value and "-cart-" for cart value. Ex: "The fewest you can purchase is -conf-, you already have -cart-!". Limit 100 characters.

In **Minimum Quantity Allowed for Entire Cart**, go to **Customer Group** column, each line has a drop down list showing all of your customer groups to select.

In **Minimum Qty** column, you can set any number you want for the minimum order quantity of all products in cart for each customer group.

In **Action** column, click to the trash bin icon to remove the minimum quantity required for any customer group.

Click **Add** to add more rows to set the minimum for more customer group.

In **Message Alert For Minimum Value**, add the message you want to show to your customer, insert "-conf-" for minimum quantity require and "-cart-" for customer's cart quantity to be displayed.

Minimum Quantity Allowed for Entire Cart [global]

Customer Group	Minimum Qty	Action
NOT LOGGED ▾	<input type="text" value="5"/>	
General ▾	<input type="text" value="10"/>	
Wholesale ▾	<input type="text" value="15"/>	
Retailer ▾	<input type="text" value="14"/>	
<input type="button" value="Add"/>		

Message Alert For Minimum Value [global]

Minimum total items must be -conf-, you have only -cart- !!

Insert "-conf-" for config value and "-cart-" for cart value. Ex: "The fewest you can purchase is -conf-, you already have -cart-!". Limit 100 characters.

66.2 Compatibility

Our Limit Cart Quantity for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

66.3 Changelog

66.4 FAQs

Minimum Order Amount For Customer Group

67.1 User Guide

67.1.1 Minimum Order Amount For Customer Group Extension For Magento 2 Overview

Minimum Order Amount For Customer Group Extension For Magento 2 is developed from the initial version for Magento 1 to work well on Magento 2 platform. This extension allows admin to set a limitation of minimal order value for each group of customer. Customers will not be able to check out if they order a smaller amount of value than required. This function is especially suitable for B2B e-commerce. Using this extension can help you reach greater revenue.

67.1.2 How does Minimum Order Amount For Customer Group For Magento 2 Extension work?

This module can be easily configured on the backend. Check it in **Store -> Configuration -> Sales -> Sales**

1. Set the limitation

You can customize customer groups and add the minimal amount of value you want to force for each group

Minimum Order Amount

Enable Yes

Customer Group	Minimum Amount	Action
-- Sele	100	
Gener	100	
Whole	200	
Retail	200	

choose a group

add an amount

You also can add more or delete a group as you wish.

Enable Yes

Customer Group	Minimum Amount	Action
NOT LOG	100	

Add

Subtotal after discount

2. Notify your customer

You can leave message for customers to notify them about your limitation.

Description Message

Leave your message here

This message will be shown in the shopping cart when the subtotal (after discount) is lower than the minimum allowed amount.

When the module is enabled, when they do not order enough amount of value, your customer will see your message and cannot check out.

Shopping Cart

 Minimum order amount is \$100.00

Item	Price	Qty	Subtotal
	\$59.00	1	\$59.00
			< \$100.00

After they order enough, they can check out as usual.

67.2 Compatibility

Our Minimum Order Amount For Customer Group For Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

67.3 Changelog

Version 2.0.2

67.4 FAQs

Min/Max Order Quantity per Category

68.1 User Guide

68.1.1 Min/Max Order Quantity per Category for Magento 2 Overview

Min/Max Order Quantity per Category for Magento 2 is a useful tool for online store owners to limit order quantity for all products in a category that each customer group has to meet before checking out successfully.

With the help of this module, Magento store owners can save up a lot of costs especially shipping costs or package costs. No need to worry about too small or too large number of order products each category, using this extension, admin can avoid all obstacles in managing order product quantify per categories.

68.1.2 How does Min/Max Order Quantity per Category for Magento 2 work?

Go to **Store -> Configuration -> BSSCOMMERCE -> Min/Max Order Quantity per Category for Customer Group** to begin setting up

Enable [store view]	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
	Select Yes to enable the module
Show category [store view]	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
	Show all category of product in shopping cart
Messages Limit Max [store view]	<input type="text" value="The max quantity allowed for purchase at category {{category_name}} is {{q"/>
Messages Limit Min [store view]	<input type="text" value="The min quantity allowed for purchase at category {{category_name}} is {{q"/>

1. In **Enable**: Choose **Yes** to enable the module or choose No to disable it
2. In **ShowCategory**:
 - Choose **Yes** to show product category in the shopping cart. Withproduct belonging to multiple categories, all those categories will be displayed regardless of where customer added the product tocart.
 - Choose **No** to hide the productcategory.
3. In **Messages Limit Max**: you can change the notification messages when maximum required order quantity per category is not met (This message locates at the top left corner of the Shopping Cart). Without any changes, default message will be shown as: The max quantity allowed for purchase at category{category_name} is {qty_limit} [Product Name : {product_name}]
4. In **Messages Limit Min**: you can change the notification messages when minimum required order quantity per category is not met. Without any changes, default message will be shown as: The min quantity allowed for purchase at category {category_name} is {qty_limit} [Product Name : {product_name}]
5. In **Min/Max orderquantity**:

Min/max Order Quantity [store view]

Customer Group	Category	Min Qty	Max Qty	Action
NOT ▾	----Tops(ID: 21) ▾	4	8	
NOT ▾	--Gear(ID: 3) ▾	3	10	
<input type="button" value="Add"/>				

Set Option for min/max qty per category for customer group

You can freely choose customer group and category to apply the min/max quantity rule. Click **Add** button for more options.

After finishing with setup, choose **Save Config**

*Note:

For products belong to multiple categories, the order quantity of products needs to meet the min/max requirement of all thosecategories.

The min/max rule is applied to the total number of products in each category added to cart, not the order quantity of each particular product.

68.2 Compatibility

Our Min/Max Order Quantity per Category for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

68.3 Changelog

v1.0.0 . First Release

68.4 Common Problems

How to show the category name?

If customers use the similar theme to default or they customized item section in the cart, comment folder Bss/MinMaxQtyOrderPerCate/view and add file into theme (view/frontend/templates/cart/item/default.phtml)

```
<?php
// get session and show cate
$objectManager = \Magento\Framework\App\ObjectManager::getInstance();
$customerSession = $objectManager->get('Magento\Customer\Model\Session');
$_catename = $customerSession->getCatecheckoutcart();
?>

<!-- add category name -->
<?php if (!empty($_catename)): ?>
    <span> Category name: <?php echo $block->escapeHtml($_catename[
↪$product->getSku()]) ?></span>
<?php endif ?>
<!-- -->
```

compared to file

Bss/MinMaxQtyOrderPerCate/view/frontend/templates/cart/item/default.phtml to add exactly
edit message Bss/MinMaxQtyOrderPerCate/Observer/MinMaxQty.php

```
--message Min Qty
if(!empty($_qty['min_qty'])) {
    .....
    $message = "The min quantity allowed for purchase at_
↪category ".$cate_name." is
↪name.' ]';
    .....
}
--message Max Qty
if(!empty($_qty['max_qty'])) {
    .....
    $message = "The max quantity allowed for purchase at_
↪category ".$cate_name." is
↪name.' ]';
    .....
}
```

68.5 FAQs

Multiple Store View Pricing

69.1 User Guide

69.1.1 Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 Extension Overview

[Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 extension](#) helps store owners to set up different prices for the same product in various store views of a store while Magento 2 default does not support this function. For example, you want to sell a table at 50 in English store view but in the French store view, the price you want customers to pay is 80. It all depends on demands of store owners as well as business strategies for each local target customers.

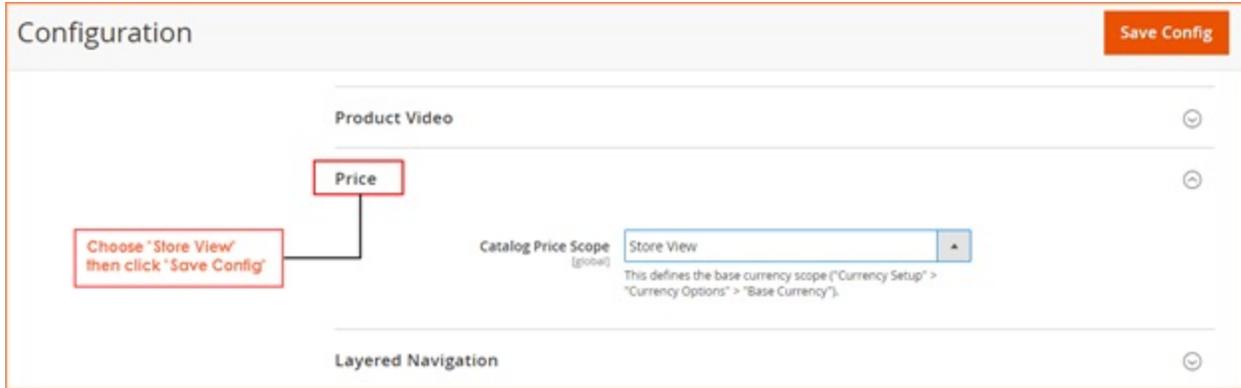
Moreover, this module also allows administrators to set up base currency for each store view so that customers can easily checkout with currency of store view. It can be said that this is really another very outstanding features of Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 to make more convenient for both customers and store owners.

69.1.2 How does Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 Extension work?

1. Enable Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 Extension

You go to **Store -> Configuration -> Catalog**

Next, you continue to click **Catalog** section and among all sections shown up in the page, find **Price** section to start the customization.



In box **Catalog Price Scope**, there are 3 options for admin to choose: Global, Website and Store View. You choose Store View to enable the module.

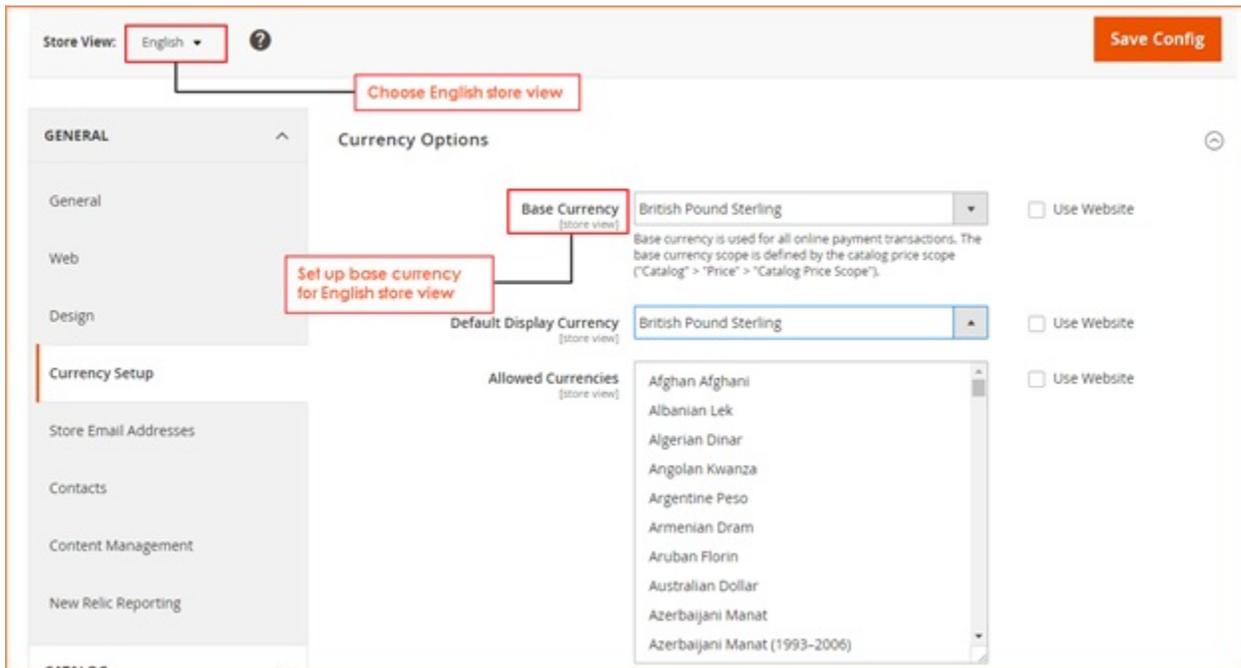
Then you click **Save Config** and begin to customize prices of products in each store view of each store

2. Set up base currency for each store view

2.1. Set up base currency for English store view

In **Configuration**, you go to **General -> Currency Setup** to set up base currency for English store view

Choose **English** store view from **Store View** Section



In **Base Currency**: Choose **British Pound Sterling** as base currency and customers will use this one to checkout.

In **Default Display Currency**: you can choose **British Pound Sterling** or any other currency because this one is only displayed in the product or category page, not used in the checkout.

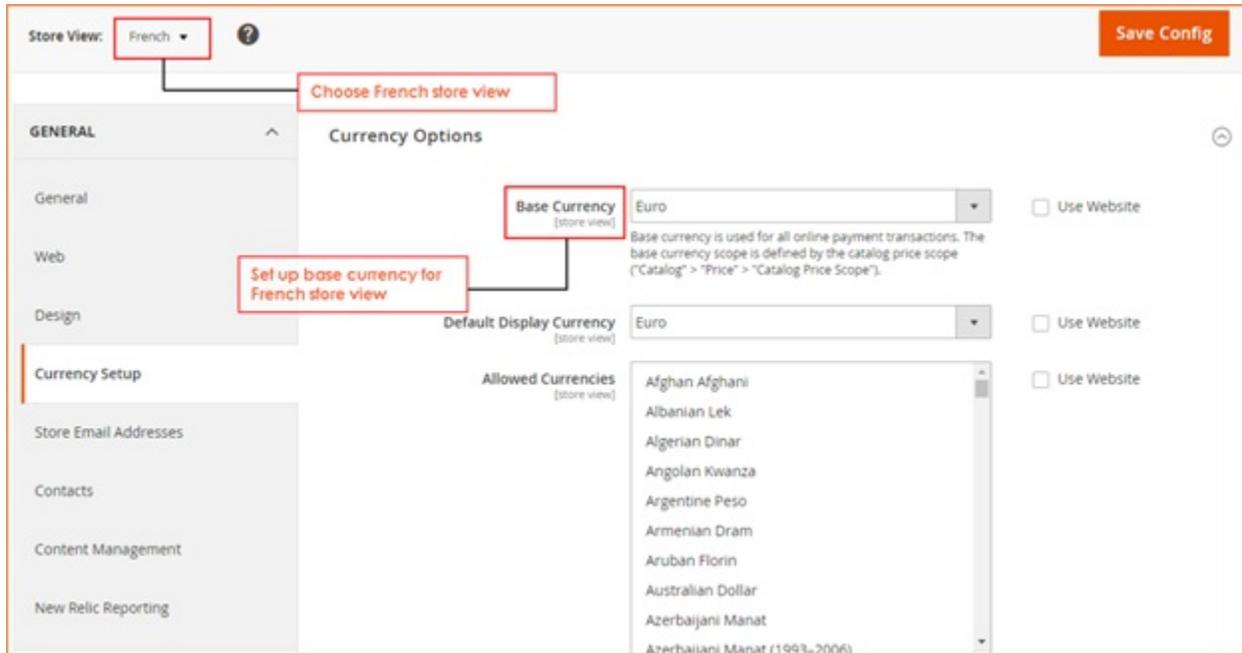
In **Allowed Currencies**: Choose **British Pound Sterling**

Then, click to **Save config** and start to set up price for a product in the English store view

2.2. Set up base currency for French store view

In **Configuration**, you go to **General -> Currency Setup** to set up base currency for French store view

Choose **French** store view from **Store View** Section



In **Base Currency**: Choose **Euro** as base currency and customers will use this one to checkout.

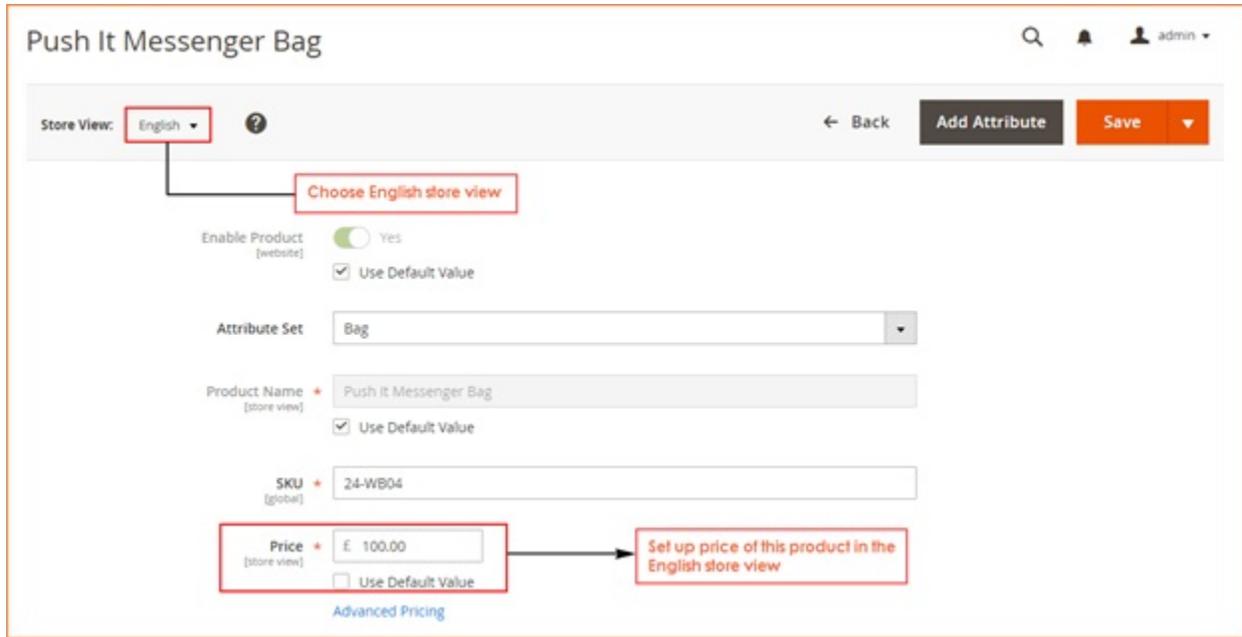
In **Default Display Currency**: you can choose **Euro** or any other currency because this one is only displayed in the product or category page, not used in the checkout.

In **Allowed Currencies**: Choose **Euro**

Then, click to **Save config** and start to set up price for a product in the French store view

3. Set up different prices for a product in store views of a store

3.1. Set up price for a product in the English store view: Put It Messenger Bag, for example



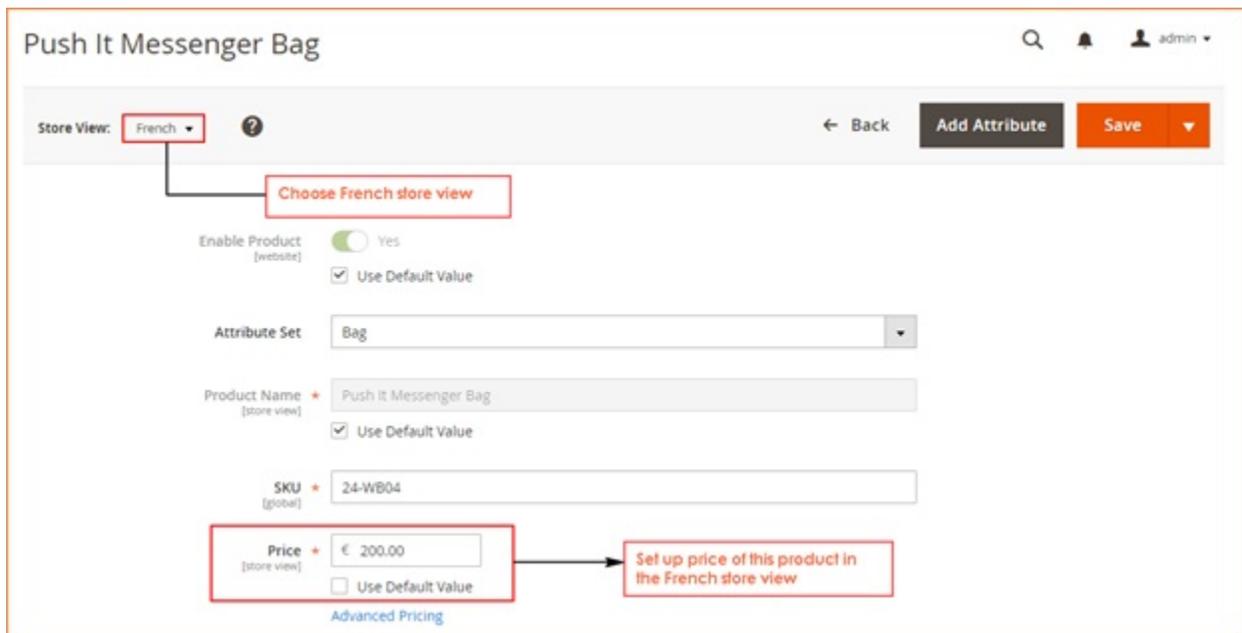
Step 1: Choose **English** in **Store View** box

Step 2: In **Price** section, you unmark “**Use Default Value**” and add your wanted price for the product in this English store view: 100, for instance

In addition, you can also set up **Special Prices** for this product by clicking **Advanced Pricing**

Finally, you save configuration and continue to set up price in the other store view

3.2. Set up price for a product in the French store view: Put It Messenger Bag, for example

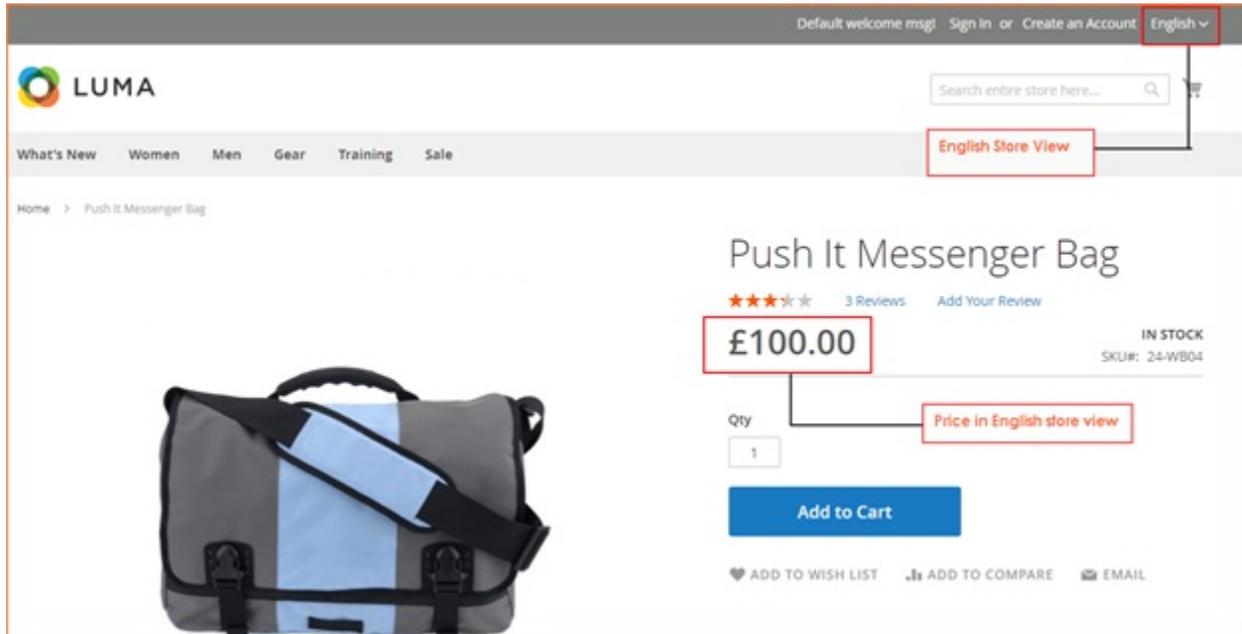


Step 1: Choose **French** in **Store View** box

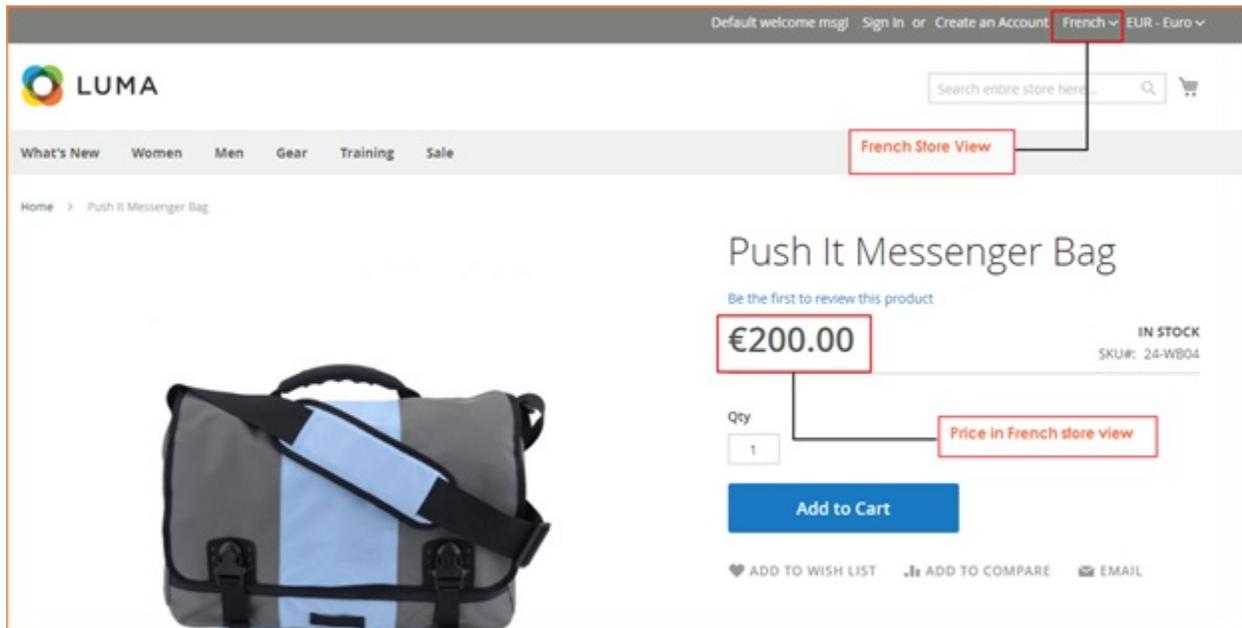
Step 2: In **Price** section, you unmark “**Use Default Value**” and add your wanted price for the product in this French store view: 200, for instance

Finally you save configuration in go to the frontend to see the changes:

- Price of Put It Messenger Bag in the English store view:



- Price of Put It Messenger Bag in the French store view:



As a result, you can set up different price for a product: **Put It Messenger Bag** in two store views

69.2 Compatibility

Our Multiple Store View Pricing for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

69.3 Changelog

69.4 Common Problems

69.5 FAQs

69.6 Import Product Price Per Store View

Step 1: Get the SKU of product you want to import price

- Go to Product -> Catalog -> Manage Products
- Then choose a product you want to import price -> copy its SKU

Step 2: Get the export file

- Go to **System -> Data Transfer -> Export**
- In **Entity Type**, choose **Products**
- Paste the SKU on SKU box
- Click **Continue**, then a CSV file will be exported
- Open the downloaded CSV file
- Skip unnecessary attributes and leave 3 important attributes: SKU, store_view_code, price

Step 3: Get store view code and paste in CSV file

- Get store view code: **Store -> All stores -> choose a store view** to get its code
- Open the CSV file, in the **store_view_code** column equivalent to each SKU, replace the current store code by code of store view or add a new row to add

new code of store view

- Fill in price in the **price** column as you want
- Save the CSV file

Step 4: Import the CSV file to site

- Go to **System -> Data Transfer -> Import**
- In **Import Settings**, choose **Products** for **Entity Type**
- In **Import Behavior**, choose **Add/Update**
- In **File to import**, select a CSV file to import
- Click **Check Data** and then click **Import**

There will be a note shown up: *File is valid! To start import process press "Import" button*

It is the end of import price process for multiple store views.

Now you will check again your product on each store view.

You also can see the example about import product price per store view for [Magento 2 Multiple Store View Pricing extension's](#) video below:

69.7 Installation Guide

Step 1:

Copy code to folder root magento 2

Step 2:

Run php bin/magento setup:upgrade in ssh in folder root of magento 2

Step 3:

Run php bin/magento indexer:reindex

Step 4:

Delete folder var/generation

69.8 Uninstallation Guide

69.8.1 Magento 2 Multiple Store View Pricing

Step 1: Change Price Scope to Global

You go to **Admin** and navigate to **Store**→ **Configuration**→ **Catalog**→ **Catalog**→ **Price**. In **Catalog Price Scope**, you select **Global**.

Step 2: Remove EAV attributes and tables that this extension adds to database

***Note:** You should backup your database before removing.

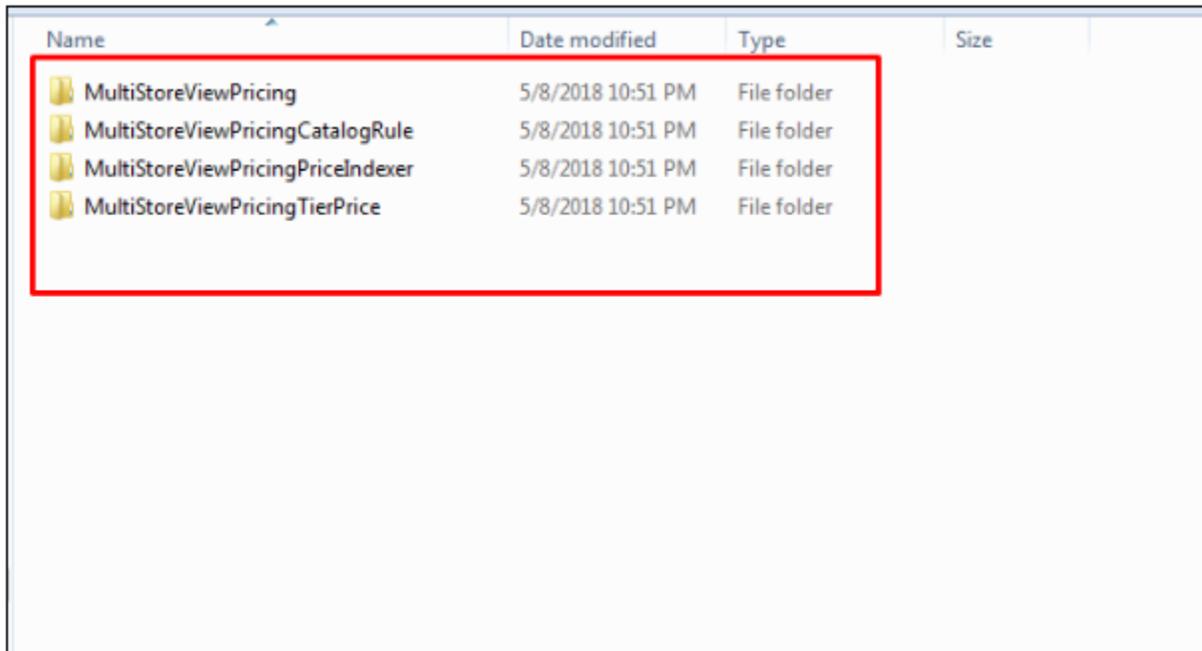
- Remove **tier_price_config_for_store** and **tier_price_for_store** attributes in the **eav_attribute** table of database.
- Remove tables that this extension adds to database.
 - catalog_product_index_price_store
 - catalogrule_product_price_store
 - catalog_product_index_price_store_idx
 - catalog_product_index_price_store_tmp
 - catalog_product_index_price_final_store_tmp
 - catalog_product_index_price_final_store_idx
 - catalog_product_index_price_bundle_store_idx
 - catalog_product_index_price_bundle_store_tmp
 - catalog_product_index_price_bundle_sel_store_idx
 - catalog_product_index_price_bundle_sel_store_tmp
 - catalog_product_index_price_bundle_opt_store_idx
 - catalog_product_index_price_bundle_opt_store_tmp
 - catalog_product_index_price_cfg_opt_agr_store_idx

- catalog_product_index_price_cfg_opt_agr_store_tmp
- catalog_product_index_price_cfg_opt_store_idx
- catalog_product_index_price_cfg_opt_store_tmp
- catalog_product_index_price_downlod_store_idx
- catalog_product_index_price_downlod_store_tmp
- catalog_product_entity_tier_price_store

- Remove rows whose **store_id** values are not 0 in the **catalog_product_entity_decimal** table.

<input type="checkbox"/> Modify	value_id	attribute_id	store_id	entity_id	value
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3906	78	2	11	30.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3905	77	2	11	40.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3904	77	2	826	100.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3903	77	2	1	39.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3901	77	2	40	100.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3899	78	2	40	90.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3902	77	1	1	37.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3900	77	1	40	95.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3898	78	0	40	90.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3897	77	0	2045	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3896	82	0	2044	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3895	77	0	2044	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3894	82	0	2043	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3893	77	0	2043	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3892	82	0	2042	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3891	77	0	2042	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3890	82	0	2041	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3889	77	0	2041	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3888	82	0	2040	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3887	77	0	2040	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3886	82	0	2039	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3885	77	0	2039	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3884	82	0	2038	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3883	77	0	2038	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3882	82	0	2037	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3881	77	0	2037	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3880	82	0	2036	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3879	77	0	2036	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3878	82	0	2035	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3877	77	0	2035	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3876	82	0	2034	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3875	77	0	2034	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3874	82	0	2033	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3873	77	0	2033	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3872	82	0	2032	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3871	77	0	2032	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3870	82	0	2031	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3869	77	0	2031	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3868	82	0	2030	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3867	77	0	2030	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3866	82	0	2029	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3865	77	0	2029	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3864	82	0	2028	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3863	77	0	2028	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3862	82	0	2027	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3861	77	0	2027	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3860	82	0	2026	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3859	77	0	2026	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3858	82	0	2025	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3857	77	0	2025	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3856	82	0	2024	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3855	77	0	2024	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3854	82	0	2023	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3853	77	0	2023	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3852	82	0	2022	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3851	77	0	2022	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3850	82	0	2021	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3849	77	0	2021	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3848	82	0	2020	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3847	77	0	2020	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3846	82	0	2019	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3845	77	0	2019	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3844	82	0	2018	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3843	77	0	2018	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3842	82	0	2017	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3841	77	0	2017	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3840	82	0	2016	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3839	77	0	2016	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3838	82	0	2015	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3837	77	0	2015	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3836	82	0	2014	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3835	77	0	2014	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3834	82	0	2013	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3833	77	0	2013	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3832	82	0	2012	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3831	77	0	2012	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3830	82	0	2011	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3829	77	0	2011	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3828	82	0	2010	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3827	77	0	2010	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3826	82	0	2009	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3825	77	0	2009	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3824	82	0	2008	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3823	77	0	2008	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3822	82	0	2007	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3821	77	0	2007	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3820	82	0	2006	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3819	77	0	2006	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3818	82	0	2005	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3817	77	0	2005	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3816	82	0	2004	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3815	77	0	2004	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3814	82	0	2003	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3813	77	0	2003	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3812	82	0	2002	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3811	77	0	2002	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3810	82	0	2001	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3809	77	0	2001	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3808	82	0	2000	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3807	77	0	2000	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3806	82	0	1999	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3805	77	0	1999	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3804	82	0	1998	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3803	77	0	1998	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3802	82	0	1997	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3801	77	0	1997	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3800	82	0	1996	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3799	77	0	1996	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3798	82	0	1995	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3797	77	0	1995	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3796	82	0	1994	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3795	77	0	1994	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3794	82	0	1993	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3793	77	0	1993	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3792	82	0	1992	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3791	77	0	1992	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3790	82	0	1991	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3789	77	0	1991	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3788	82	0	1990	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3787	77	0	1990	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3786	82	0	1989	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3785	77	0	1989	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3784	82	0	1988	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3783	77	0	1988	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3782	82	0	1987	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3781	77	0	1987	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3780	82	0	1986	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3779	77	0	1986	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3778	82	0	1985	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3777	77	0	1985	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3776	82	0	1984	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3775	77	0	1984	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3774	82	0	1983	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3773	77	0	1983	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3772	82	0	1982	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3771	77	0	1982	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3770	82	0	1981	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3769	77	0	1981	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3768	82	0	1980	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3767	77	0	1980	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3766	82	0	1979	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3765	77	0	1979	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3764	82	0	1978	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3763	77	0	1978	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3762	82	0	1977	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3761	77	0	1977	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3760	82	0	1976	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3759	77	0	1976	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3758	82	0	1975	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3757	77	0	1975	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3756	82	0	1974	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3755	77	0	1974	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3754	82	0	1973	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3753	77	0	1973	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3752	82	0	1972	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3751	77	0	1972	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3750	82	0	1971	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3749	77	0	1971	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3748	82	0	1970	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3747	77	0	1970	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3746	82	0	1969	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3745	77	0	1969	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3744	82	0	1968	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3743	77	0	1968	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3742	82	0	1967	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3741	77	0	1967	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3740	82	0	1966	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3739	77	0	1966	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3738	82	0	1965	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3737	77	0	1965	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3736	82	0	1964	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3735	77	0	1964	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3734	82	0	1963	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3733	77	0	1963	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3732	82	0	1962	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3731	77	0	1962	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3730	82	0	1961	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3729	77	0	1961	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3728	82	0	1960	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3727	77	0	1960	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3726	82	0	1959	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3725	77	0	1959	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3724	82	0	1958	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3723	77	0	1958	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3722	82	0	1957	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3721	77	0	1957	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3720	82	0	1956	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3719	77	0	1956	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3718	82	0	1955	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3717	77	0	1955	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3716	82	0	1954	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3715	77	0	1954	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3714	82	0	1953	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3713	77	0	1953	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3712	82	0	1952	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3711	77	0	1952	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3710	82	0	1951	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3709	77	0	1951	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3708	82	0	1950	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3707	77	0	1950	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3706	82	0	1949	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3705	77	0	1949	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3704	82	0	1948	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3703	77	0	1948	45.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3702	82	0	1947	1.0000
<input type="checkbox"/> edit	3701	77	0	194	

Step 3: Remove code of this module in the BSS folder.



A screenshot of a file explorer window showing a list of folders. The folders are highlighted with a red rectangular box. The columns are Name, Date modified, Type, and Size.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
MultiStoreViewPricing	5/8/2018 10:51 PM	File folder	
MultiStoreViewPricingCatalogRule	5/8/2018 10:51 PM	File folder	
MultiStoreViewPricingPriceIndexer	5/8/2018 10:51 PM	File folder	
MultiStoreViewPricingTierPrice	5/8/2018 10:51 PM	File folder	

Step 4: Run Reindex by SSH

Run this command: `php bin/magento indexer:reindex`

70.1 User Guide

70.2 Compatibility

Our Multiple Wishlists for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

70.3 Changelog

70.4 FAQs

71.1 User Guide

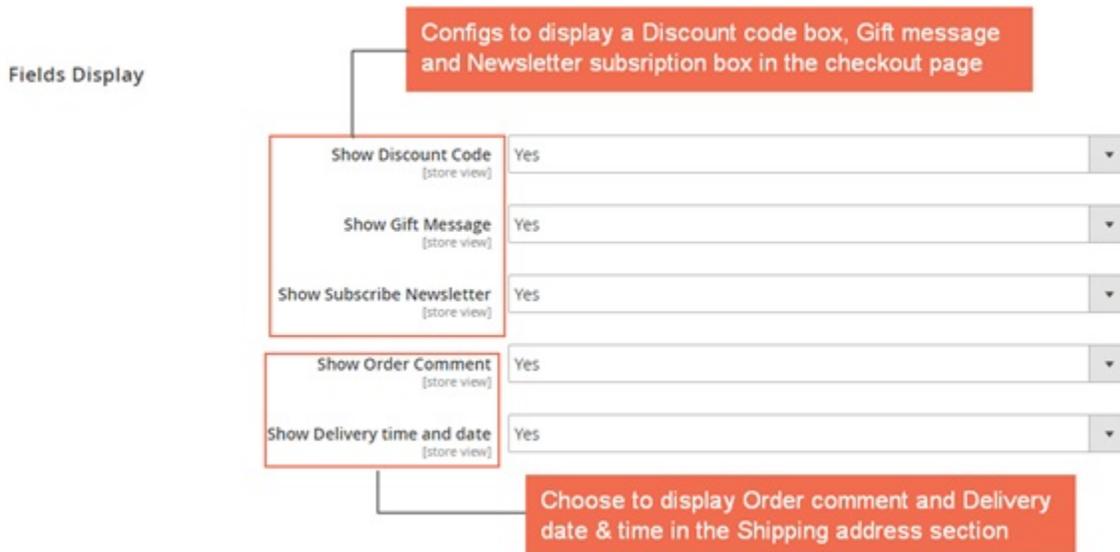
71.1.1 One Step Checkout for Magento 2 Overview

[One Step Checkout for Magento 2 extension](#) helps customers to checkout simply and quickly by displaying all elements in 1 page only. They do not need to experience two parts (Shipping Address and Reviews & Payments) as in Magento 2 default, but fill all information in one place conveniently. Therefore, the checkout process becomes more user friendly, which can reduce abandonment rate and bring higher conversion rate for online stores.

71.1.2 How Does One Step Checkout for Magento 2 Work?

Please go to **Store -> Configuration -> BSS ONESTEPCHECKOUT -> One Step Checkout**

1. In Fields Display



In **Show Discount Code:**

- Choose Yes to display a box to enter discount code.
- Choose No to hide this box from the checkout page.

In **Show Gift Message:**

- Choose Yes to show Gift options that let customers to add their own gift messages.
- Choose No to disable this function.

In **Enable Subscribe Newsletter:**

- Choose Yes to allow customers to subscribe newsletter in the checkout page.
- Choose No to disable this option.

In **Enable Order Comment:**

- Choose Yes to show a text box for customers to leave their comments for order
- Choose No to exclude this box from the checkout page

In **Enable Delivery time and date:**

- Choose Yes to display Order delivery date and time that allows customers to choose their own suitable dates and times to receive orders.
- Choose No to disable this function.

2. In General

General

Enable <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
	If set to No, Onestepcheckout extension will simply be disabled.
Enable suggesting address by Google <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
	If set to Yes, Onestepcheckout extension will allow auto complete address.
Google API Key <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="AlzaSyAxQGg1t2kweRcZ_UW0bHT5_pCP0rLXa4E"/>
	Click here to get API key
Router Name <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="checkout"/>
	Example: onestepcheckout.html -> http://example.com/onestepcheckout.html
Default Payment Method <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="Cash On Delivery"/>
	Default payment method selected.
Default Shipping Method <small>[store view]</small>	<input type="text" value="[flatrate] Fixed"/>
	Default shipping method selected.

In **Enable**:

- Choose Yes to enable Magento 2 One Step Checkout extension.
- Choose No to disable this module.

In **Enable suggesting address by Google**:

- Choose Yes to enable the address suggesting function of Google. It will suggest customer addresses when they type some letters.
- Choose No to disable this function.

In **Google API Key**: Fill in your API Key.

In case you haven't yet had an API Key, please click the link after this configuration to get it.

In **Router Name**: Choose your wanted url name for your checkout page.

In **Default Payment Method**: Select default payment method.

In **Default Shipping Method**: Select default shipping method.

71.2 Compatibility

Our One Step Checkout for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

71.3 Changelog

71.4 FAQs

72.1 User Guide

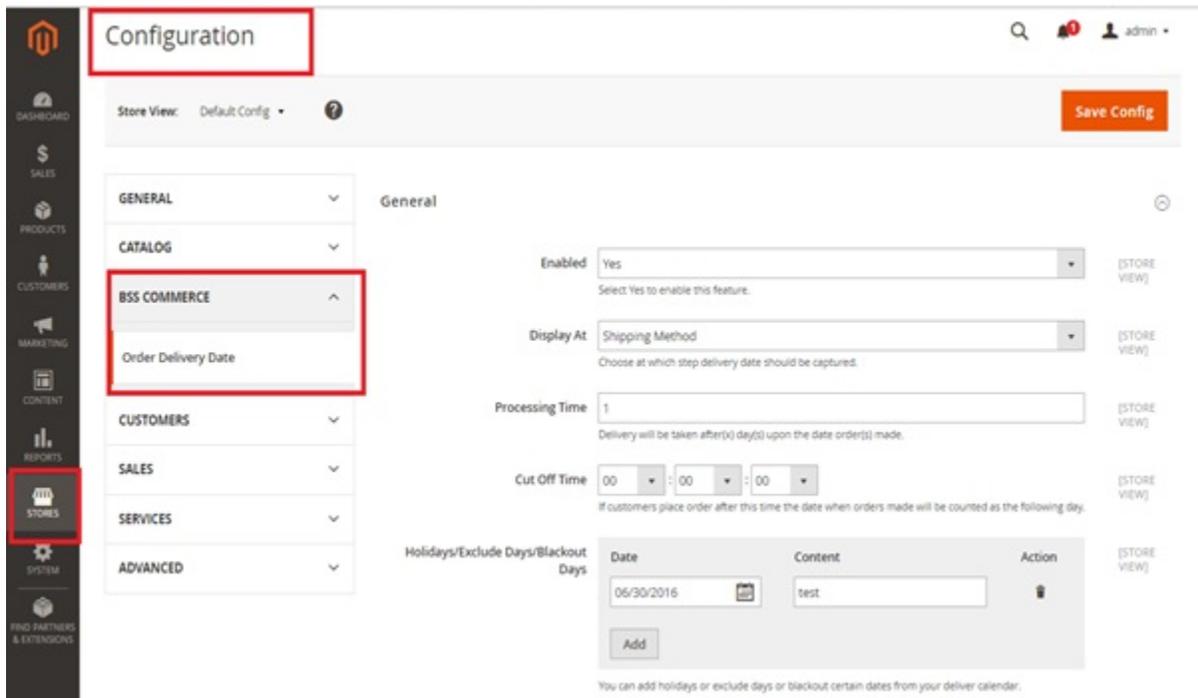
72.1.1 Order Delivery Date for Magento 2 Extension Overview

With help of [Order Delivery Date for Magento 2 Extension](#) , shipment information for every order from your Magento 2 based websites will be more detailed and clearer than ever. In the front-end, customers can choose the exact **dates** and **time slots**; even leave a **comment** about it. In the back-end, website admin can easily control his own conditions to build timing options for customers, including: Processing Time, Cut-off Time, Holidays/Exclude days/Blackout days, Time slots, Disable Delivery Date

72.1.2 How does it work?

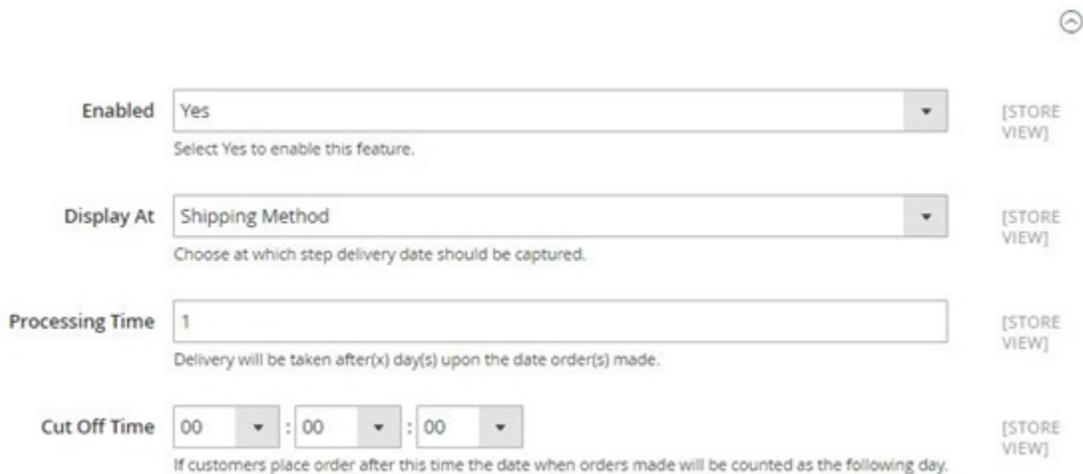
1. Set up Delivery Order Date in the back-end

Order Delivery Date for Magento 2 offers store owners an easy way to set up and control advanced delivery time choices for their customers' orders. In Admin Panel, navigate to the section of this extension: **Stores** Configuration BSS Commerce Order Delivery Date



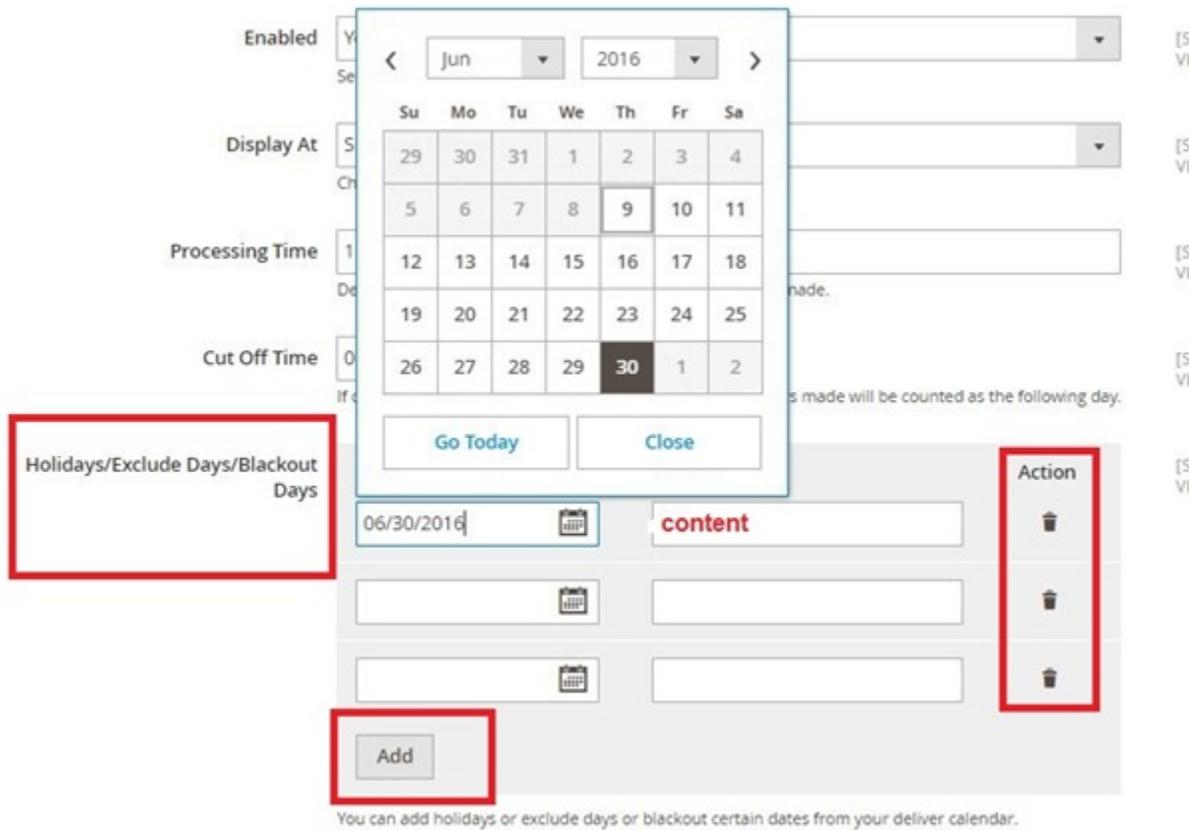
At “Enabled” field, you just simply select Yes/No to turn on or off this extension from taking effects.

“Display At” is the section that lets you decide where the part for customers fill in details about delivery dates will be shown: Shipping method, Shipping Address

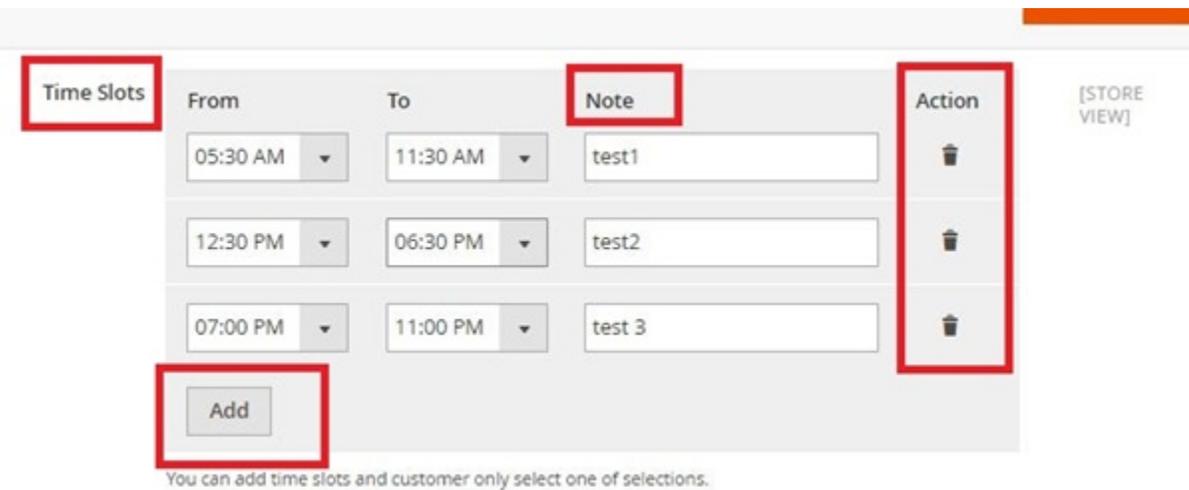


“Processing Time” is the number of days from the time an order is placed in the website until when the delivery can begin. If you set it as 1 day, then a customer placing an order today has his options of delivery date start from tomorrow

“Cut Off Time” is set up as a point of time in the day when order made after that will be counted as being made on the next day



“Holidays/Exclude Days/Blackout Days”: These are the days that are not available for delivery picked in the calendar by admin. They will be faded in the delivery calendar shown for customers and of course, they cannot be selected. Admin can add more unavailable days like that by click the button “Add” or delete them by clicking on trash bin icon under column “Action”. Content for each one may be filled in, the reason for its out-of-options status for instance.



There are “Time Slots” to set up delivery time more exactly by hours in the day. You can also Add new time slots or Delete them, and write a note for each one just in similar way to what you do with Holidays/Exclude Days/ Blackout Days before. In **“Disable Delivery Date”** section, you can fix the days in every week that are not available for delivery options.

Disable Delivery Date

Sunday	<input type="checkbox"/>
Monday	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tuesday	<input type="checkbox"/>
Wednesday	<input type="checkbox"/>
Thursday	<input type="checkbox"/>
Friday	<input type="checkbox"/>
Saturday	<input type="checkbox"/>

[STORE VIEW]

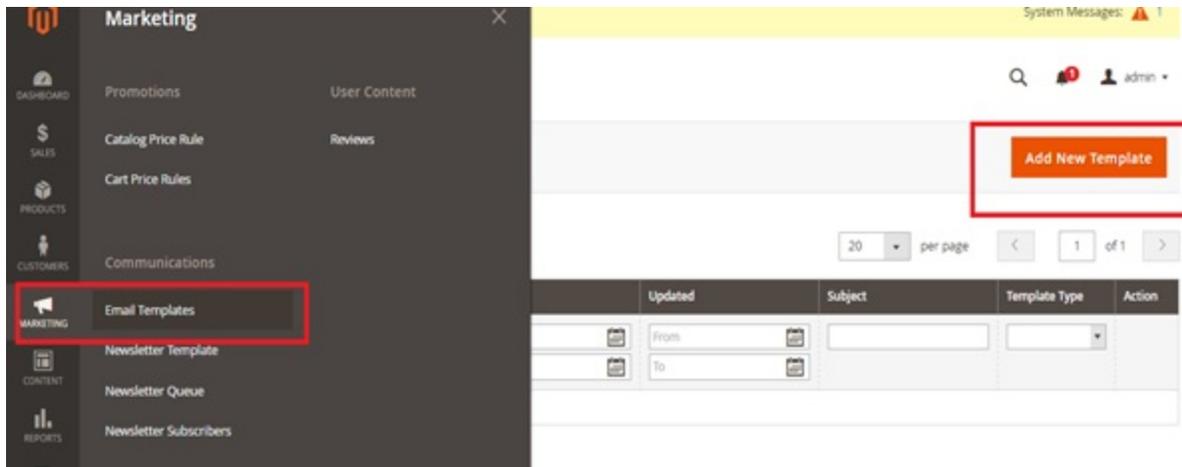
Choose days on which shipping will not be available.

2. Insert Order Delivery Date Information into Orders, Invoices, Shipments, Credit Memos and emails

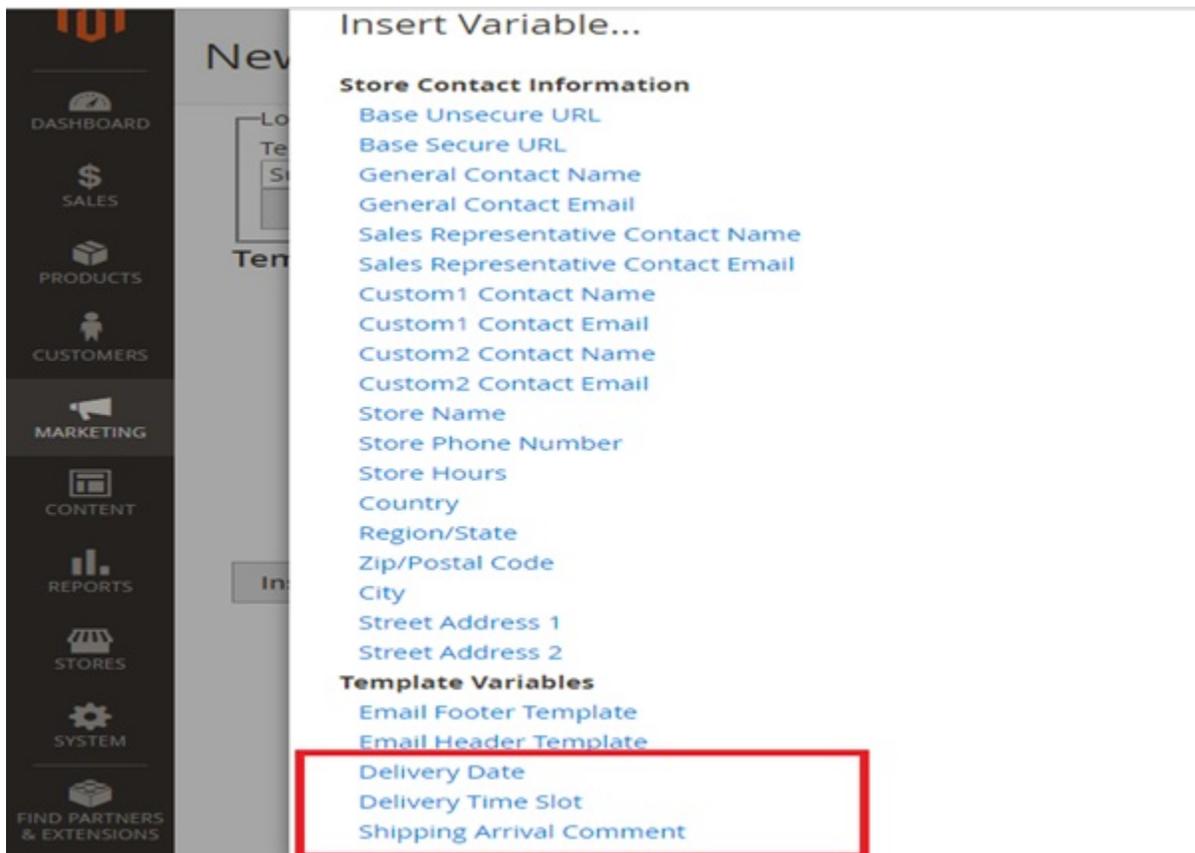
Besides allowing a very detailed timing customization, Order Delivery Date for Magento 2 Extension also add customers' Delivery Date, Time Slots and Arrival Comments directly to **Orders/Invoices/Shipments/Credit Memos info** in the backend for admin to keep tracking more easily. To check it, from Admin Panel you go to **Sales** section and choose which one you want to see. Opening every single order/invoice/ shipment/credit memo you will see the added part of this module.

The screenshot shows the Magento 2 Admin Panel interface. At the top, the order ID #000000008 is displayed. The sidebar on the left contains navigation icons for Dashboard, Sales, Products, Customers, Marketing, Content, Reports, Stores, and System. The 'SALES' menu item is highlighted with a red box. The main content area is titled 'ORDER VIEW' (also highlighted with a red box) and shows details for order #000000008. The order status is 'Pending' and was placed on Mar 8, 2016. The account information shows the customer is a 'Guest' with email 'testbss123@gmail.com'. The billing and shipping addresses are both 'test test, test, 123, Vatican City, T: 345345'. The payment method is 'Check / Money order' and the shipping method is 'Flat Rate - Fixed \$5.00'. The 'Delivery Date Information' section, highlighted with a red box, shows a shipping arrival date of 2016-03-23, a timeslot of 01:00 AM - 02:00 AM, and arrival comments 'comment test'.

As for **Emails**, Order Delivery Date for Magento 2 Extension automatically adds Delivery Date, Time slots and Arrival Comments as given by customers into email variables so that when creating an email template, you can use this information if needed. To do so, from Admin Panel you go to **Marketing** Email Templates Add new template



After loading default template, in Template Information section, click **Insert Variable...** then you will see added variables added by this module



When you continue to send emails to your customers as usual using the templates that were just created, Delivery Date, Delivery Time Slot and Shipping Arrival Comment will be included.

72.2 Compatibility

Our Order Delivery Date for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

72.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0

- First release

Version 1.0.1

- Ability to display delivery date at shipping method section on checkout page

72.4 FAQs

Previous/Next Product Page

73.1 User Guide

73.2 Compatibility

Our Previous/Next Product Page for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

73.3 Changelog

v1.0.0: First Release

73.4 FAQs

74.1 Installation Guide

To install [Quick View for Magento 2 Extension](#) , please follow this following video for better installation:

74.2 User Guide

74.2.1 Quick View for Magento 2 Extension Overview

[Quick View for Magento 2 Extension](#) allows customers to check preview of products and add products to cart in Quick View popup without visiting product page. Besides, customers can also execute other actions just like in a real product page, such as: add products to compare, wish list, send email, write review and check related/up-sell products. Admin can easily settings and design of Quick View Popup.

74.2.2 How Does Quick View for Magento 2 Extension Work?

Please go to **Store -> Configuration -> Ajax Quick View**

1. General

Enable <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
	Choose 'yes' to enable module.	
Show Related Product Block <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show Up-sell Product Block <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show mail-to <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show add to wishlist <small>[store view]</small>	No	▼
Show add to compare <small>[store view]</small>	No	▼
Show Reviews and Ratings <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show Additional Information <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show Go To Product Link <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼

In **Enable**, choose Yes to enable the extension or No to disable it.

In **Show Related Product Block**, choose Yes to include related product block in Quick View popup, or No to exclude this information.

In **Show Up-sell Product Block**, choose Yes to include up-sell product block in Quick View popup, or No to exclude this information.

In **Show Mail-to**, choose Yes to enable mail-to option in Quick View popup, or No to leave it out.

In **Show Add to Wishlist**, choose enable add to wish list option in Quick View popup, or No to leave it out.

In **Show Add to Compare**, choose enable add to compare option in Quick View popup, or No to leave it out.

In **Show Review and Ratings**, choose Yes to include review and ratings in Quick View popup, or No to exclude this information.

In **Show Additional Information**, choose Yes to include addition information (product detail block) in Quick View popup, or No to exclude this information.

In **Show Go To Product Link**, choose Yes to enable Show Go To Product link in Quick View popup, or No to leave it out.

2. Quick View Popup Design

Enable <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Choose 'yes' to enable module.		
Show Related Product Block <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show Up-sell Product Block <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show mail-to <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show add to wishlist <small>[store view]</small>	No	▼
Show add to compare <small>[store view]</small>	No	▼
Show Reviews and Ratings <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show Additional Information <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼
Show Go To Product Link <small>[store view]</small>	Yes	▼

In Button Text Color, set color for text on Quick View button.

In Button Text, enter text for Quick View button. Eg: Quick View, View Product?

In Button Color, set color for Quick View button.

74.3 Compatibility

Our Quick View for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

74.4 Changelog

74.5 FAQs

75.1 User Guide

75.2 Compatibility

Our Reorder Product List for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

75.3 Changelog

v1.0.0: First Release.

75.4 FAQs

Shipping and Payment Method for Customer Group

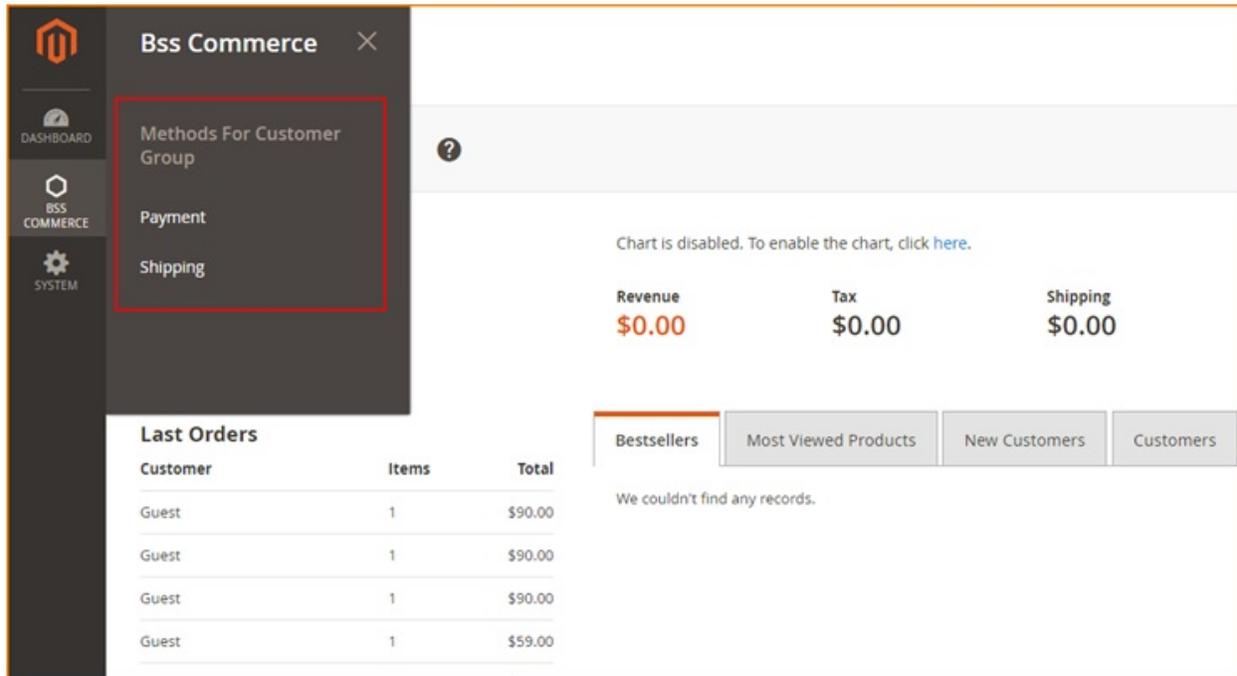
76.1 User Guide

76.1.1 Shipping and Payment per Customer Group for Magento 2 Extension Overview

Shipping and Payment per Customer Group for Magento 2 allows admin to assign shipping and payment methods to specific customer groups, thus promotes better order management and faster customer checkout process.

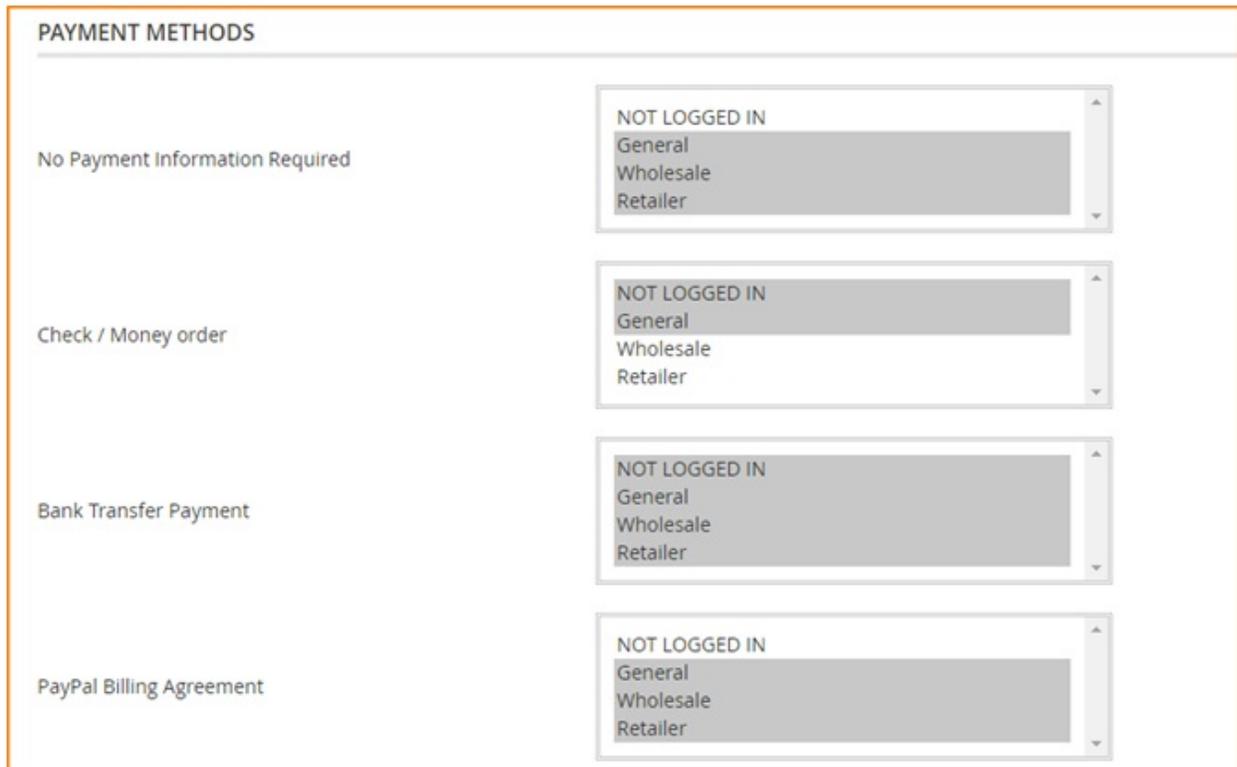
76.1.2 How does Shipping and Payment per Customer Group for Magento 2 Extension work?

Please go to **BSS COMMERCE -> Methods for Customer Group -> Payment / Shipping**



1. In Payment

In **Payment Methods**, choose one or multiple customer groups in each of enabled payment methods available.



Then, click **Submit button** to save all figuration.

Bank Transfer Payment

PayPal Billing Agreement

NOT LOGGED IN
General
Wholesale
Retailer

NOT LOGGED IN
General
Wholesale
Retailer

Submit

2. In Shipping

In **Shipping Methods**, select one or multiple customer groups in each of enabled shipping methods available.

SHIPPING METHODS

DHL

Federal Express

Flat Rate

Best Way

Free Shipping

United Parcel Service

NOT LOGGED IN
General
Wholesale
Retailer

Then, click **Submit button** to save all figuration.

The screenshot shows a configuration form for shipping methods. It contains two dropdown menus. The first dropdown is for 'Free Shipping' and the second is for 'United Parcel Service'. Both dropdowns show a list of options: 'NOT LOGGED IN', 'General', 'Wholesale', and 'Retailer'. The 'Retailer' option is selected in both. A red box highlights the 'Submit' button at the bottom left of the form.

76.2 Compatibility

Our Shipping and Payment Method per Customer Group for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

76.3 Changelog

76.4 FAQs

Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View

77.1 User Guide

77.1.1 Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2 Overview

Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2 helps administrators to set up shopping cart price rule for store views, instead of the whole website as Magento default. Therefore, store owners can provide their local customers particular promotions programs to encourage them to purchase more and enhance sales effectively.

77.1.2 How Does Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2 Work?

After installing this module, you will select store views to set up cart price rules when you create new rules.

You go to **MARKETING -> Cart Price Rules -> Add New Rule**.

Rule Information

Rule Name * 20% OFF for orders including 3 or more products

Description 20% OFF for orders including 3 or more products

Active * Yes

Store View * English
French
Italy
Main Website Store
English
French

Customer Groups * NOT LOGGED IN
General
Wholesale
Retailer

You fill in necessary information in sections of **Rule information**. Especially, in **Store View** section, you will select store views to set up this rule and apply in the frontend. You can select multiple store view to carry out setup at one time.

Take 2 following examples to see how Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2 can function in details.

Example 1: Set up a rule “20% OFF for orders including 3 or more products” for English store view.

In Rule Information:

- Fill in Rule name and Description.
- Set Yes for Active.
- Select English of Main Website Store in Store View section.
- Select customer groups to apply.

Coupon * No Coupon

Uses per Customer 0
Usage limit enforced for logged in customers only.

From 01/25/2017

To 01/25/2019

Priority 0

Public in RSS Feed Yes

- Set up Coupon, Uses per Customers, Valid Time and Priority for this rule.

In **Conditions**: Set up the right condition for this rule.

Apply the rule only if the following conditions are met (leave blank for all products).

If ALL of these conditions are TRUE :

Total Items Quantity equals or greater than 3 ✖



In **Actions**: Choose suitable actions for the rule.

Actions

Apply Percent of product price discount

Discount Amount *

Maximum Qty Discount is Applied To

Discount Qty Step (Buy X)

Apply to Shipping Amount No
Discount amount is applied to subtotal only

Discard subsequent rules Yes

Free Shipping -- Please Select --

Apply the rule only to cart items matching the following conditions (leave blank for all items).

If ALL of these conditions are TRUE :



In **Labels**: Write a label for each store view to specify which promotion is being applied.

Labels

Default Rule Label for All Store Views

Store View Specific Labels ?

Main Website

Fashion Store

English

French

Italy

Main Website Store

English

French

Finally, you save the rule and see how it is applied in the frontend:

The screenshot shows the LUMA shopping cart page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the LUMA logo, a search bar, and a language selector set to 'English'. Below the navigation bar, there are menu items: 'What's New', 'Women', 'Men', 'Gear', 'Training', and 'Sale'. The main heading is 'Shopping Cart'. The cart contains three items:

Item	Price	Qty	Subtotal
 Overnight Duffle	\$45.00	1	\$45.00
 Cassius Sparring Tank Color: Blue Size: M	\$18.00	1	\$18.00
 Balboa Persistence Tee Color: Orange Size: M	\$29.00	1	\$29.00

A red callout box points to the 'Discount' line in the Summary section, stating: "Rule '20% OFF for orders including 3 or more products' is applied in English Store View". The Summary section shows:

Summary	
Estimate Shipping and Tax	
Subtotal	\$92.00
Discount	-\$18.40
Tax	\$0.00
Order Total	\$73.60

Below the summary is a 'Proceed to Checkout' button and a link for 'Check Out with Multiple Addresses'.

Example 2: Set up a rule “30% OFF for orders which has subtotal greater than \$500” for French store view. You do the same steps as in Example 1 but you need to choose French store view to set up in Store Views section.

Rule Information

Rule Name * 30% OFF for orders which has subtotal greater than \$500

Description 30% OFF for orders which has subtotal greater than \$500

Active * Yes

Store View *

- English
- French
- Italy
- Main Website Store
- English
- French

Customer Groups *

- NOT LOGGED IN
- General
- Wholesale
- Retailer

In Conditions:

Conditions

Apply the rule only if the following conditions are met (leave blank for all products).

If ALL of these conditions are TRUE :

Subtotal equals or greater than 500

In Actions:

Actions

Apply Percent of product price discount

Discount Amount * 30

Maximum Qty Discount is Applied To 0

Discount Qty Step (Buy X) 0

Apply to Shipping Amount No
Discount amount is applied to subtotal only

Discard subsequent rules Yes

Free Shipping -- Please Select --

Apply the rule only to cart items matching the following conditions (leave blank for all items).

If ALL of these conditions are TRUE :

Finally, you save the rule and see how it is applied in the frontend:

The screenshot shows the LUMA shopping cart interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Default welcome msg!', 'Sign In or Create an Account', and a language selector set to 'French'. Below this is a search bar and a 'French Store View' button. The main heading is 'Shopping Cart'. The cart contains one item: 'Aim Analog Watch' with a price of \$45.00 and a quantity of 14, resulting in a subtotal of \$630.00. A red callout box points to the item, stating: 'Rule "30% OFF 30% OFF for orders having subtotal greater than \$500" is applied in French Store View'. To the right, a 'Summary' panel shows: Subtotal: \$630.00, Discount: -\$189.00, Tax: \$0.00, and Order Total: \$441.00. A 'Proceed to Checkout' button is visible at the bottom of the summary panel.

*Note: For more understandings about how to create a shopping cart price rule for Magento 2, you can take a look at our following tutorial:

[How to Create Shopping Cart Price Rule for Magento 2](#)

77.2 Compatibility

Our Shopping Cart Price Rule per Store View for Magento 2 is compatible with:

- Community: 2.0.x - 2.1.x
- Enterprise: 2.0.x - 2.1.x

77.3 Changelog

v1.0.0: First Release.

77.4 FAQs

Simple Details on Configurable Products

78.1 User Guide

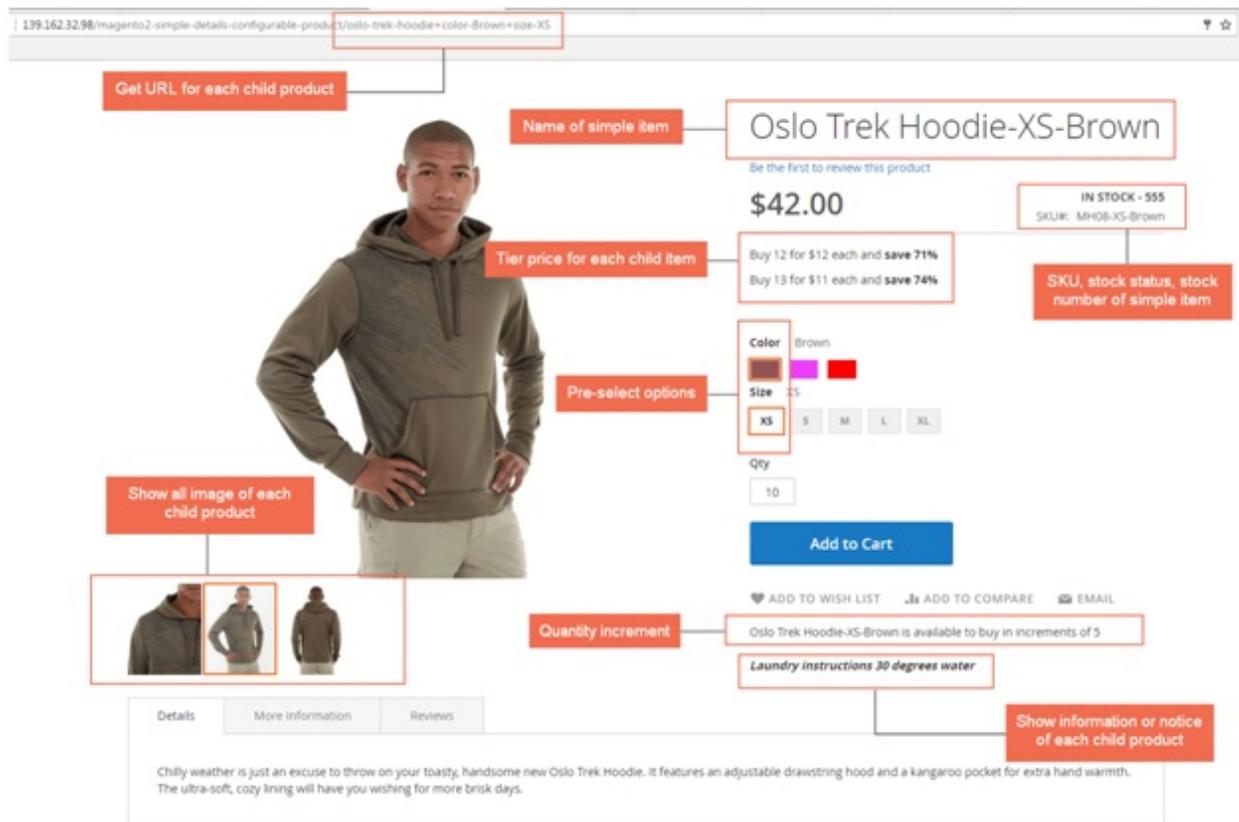
78.1.1 Simple Details on Configurable Product for Magento 2 Overview

[Simple Details on Configurable Product for Magento 2](#) supports showing all detailed information of each child product when choosing options, namely SKU, name, tier price, stock status, stock number, description and URL. Therefore, this extension is absolutely suitable for those selling configurable product with many different children products or for business purpose of each child item.

78.1.2 How does Simple Details on Configurable Product for Magento 2 Extension work?

1. In the frontend

This is how Simple Details on Configurable Product is displayed in the frontend:



- Show details of children items of configurable product, such as: name, SKU, tier price, stock status, stock number and description.
- Get URL for each child product with preselected options.
 - URL: URL will change as chosen options. If customers access to the URL, options are also selected in the product page.
 - Custom URL has a form: `.../Product-Name+attr1-Value1+attr2-Value2` (For instance: `.../hero-hoodie+color-Black+size-S`), it changes when choosing attributes of product.
- Support minimum quantity for product separately added to cart instead of the default of Magento 2, which only allows for configurable products.
- Support quantity increment for children products. This function outweighs the default with ability to set increment for each associated product of configurable product. For example, if you set 5 for quantity increment for a skirt-red-L, then your customer cannot buy this item with quantity 1-2-3 or 6-7-8 only choose this product with 5-10-15 etc in quantity box.

2. In the backend

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for 'Simple Details on Configurable Product'. On the left, a sidebar lists navigation options: GENERAL, CATALOG, B2B COMMERCE (selected), SIMPLE DETAILS ON CONFIGURABLE PRODUCT (active), CUSTOMERS, SALES, SERVICES, and ADVANCED. The main content area is titled 'General' and contains an 'Enabled' dropdown set to 'Yes' with a 'Use system value' checkbox. Below this is the 'Attributes Display Config' section, which lists eight attributes with 'Yes' selected in the dropdown and 'Use system value' checked: SKU, Name, Descriptions, Tier Price, Stock Status, Product Image, Min/max Qty Allow in Shopping Cart, and Qty Increment. The 'Advanced Settings' section at the bottom includes 'Custom URL' and 'Preselect', both set to 'Yes' with 'Use system value' checked.

In General:

- Enabled: choose Yes to enable the module.

In **Attributes Display Config**: choose Yes to show the attributes you want in the frontend:

- SKU
- Name
- Description
- Tier Price
- Stock Status
- Product Image
- Min/Max Quantity Allow in shopping cart: this default feature now can support for simple products individually. Edit each child item page in the backend to set minimum or maximum quantity.
- Quantity Increment: this feature of Magento default now supports every simple product of configurable product. Edit each simple product to set quantity increment.

In Advanced Settings:

- Custom URL: choose Yes to enable this feature.

*Note: in this configuration, if you want to get a new URL for simple product, you can type URL as you wish in the box (**Do not have neither '+' nor '~**); or you can let it blank and tick on checkbox as image below to take the URL of configurable product.

Search Engine Optimization

URL Key [store view]

Create Permanent Redirect for old URL

Meta Title [store view]

Meta Keywords [store view]

Meta Description [store view]

Maximum 255 chars. Meta Description should optimally be between 150-160 characters

- Preselect: the attributes are preselected in the product detail page in the backend. Go to product details page in the backend, preselect option of attributes.

SDCP Preselect

Color ▼

Size ▼

Configurations

*Note: in Magento 2.0.x version, there will be a separate Preselect tab in product detail page:

Store View: All Store Views ▼ ?

Top ▾

BASIC SETTINGS

- Product Details
- SDCP Preselect**
- Images and Videos
- Search Engine Optimization

SDCP Preselect

Color ▼

Size ▼

78.2 Compatibility

Our Simple Details on Configurable Products for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

78.3 Changelog

78.4 FAQs

79.1 User Guide

79.1.1 Overview Of Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2 Extension

The [Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2 Extension](#) can assist customers in purchasing a large number of multiple products and adding all of them to cart at once instead of spending lots of time to order each one of products then adding to shopping cart. Therefore, with this magento 2 extension developed by BSS Commerce, online wholesalers will be no longer delayed even one second while purchasing.

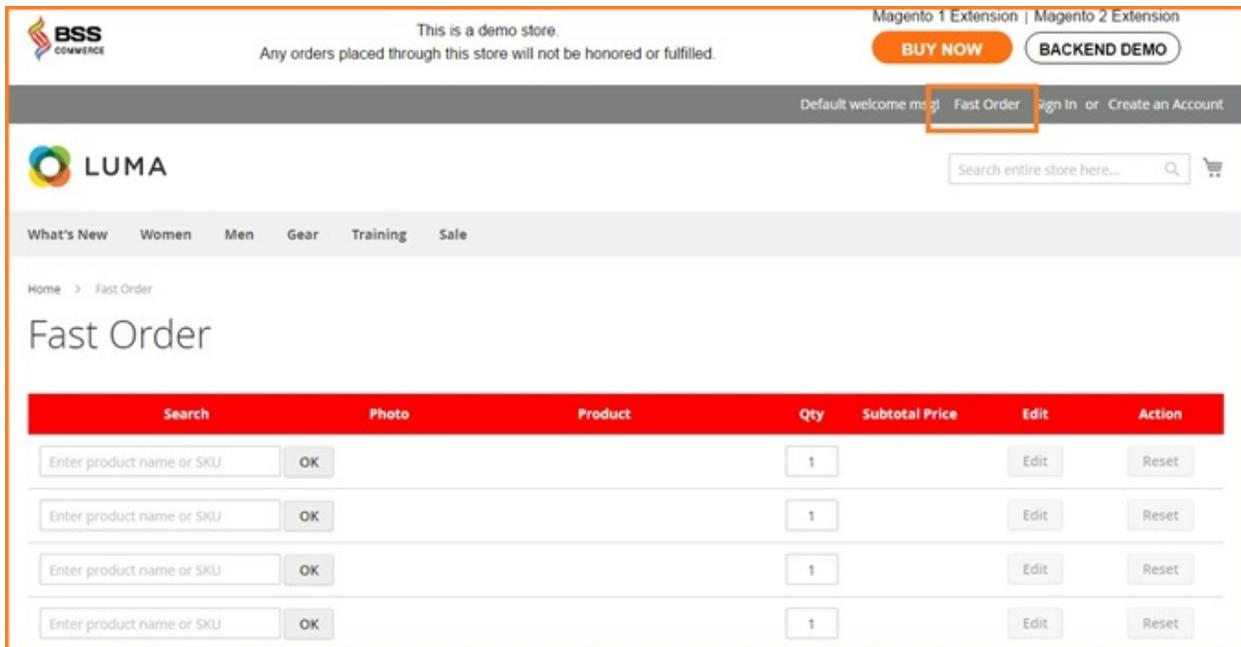
79.1.2 How does Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2 Extension work?

1. How to use functions of Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2 Extension

[Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2](#) is a very useful extension that allows selecting multiple products at the same time and then adding them to shopping cart without spending too much time purchasing one by one. By this way, [Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2](#) can optimize order process and decrease buying time by following these steps:

Step 1: Click “**Fast Order**” shortcut in the right side of the website

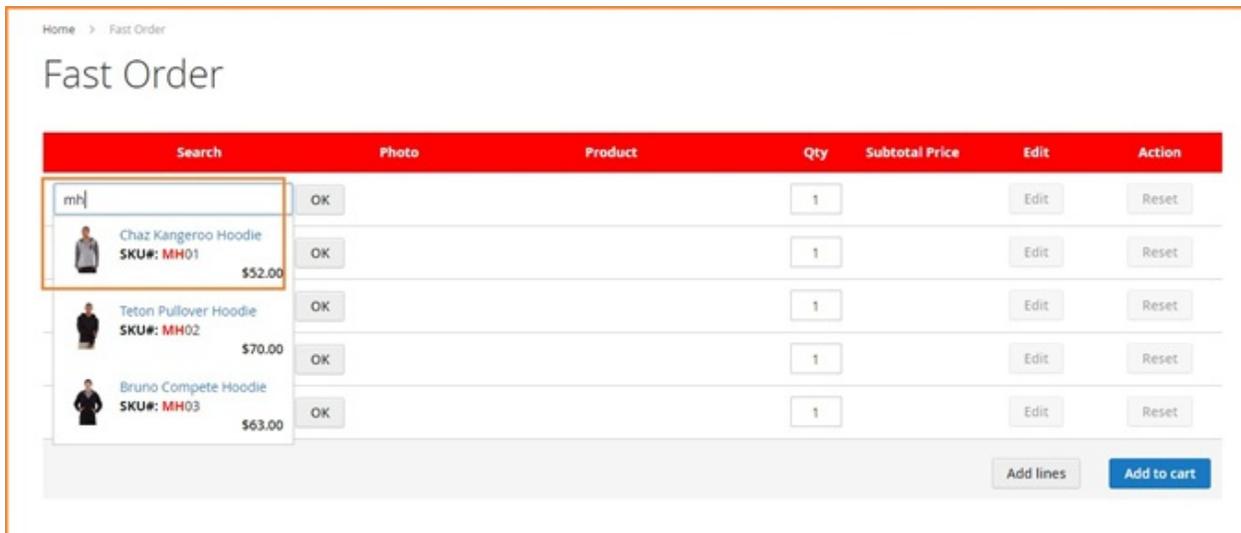
- Fast Order shortcut will be displayed in the right side of your Magento site when you installed [Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2](#)
- Customers click to Fast Order shortcut and there is a Fast Order CMS page for them to search



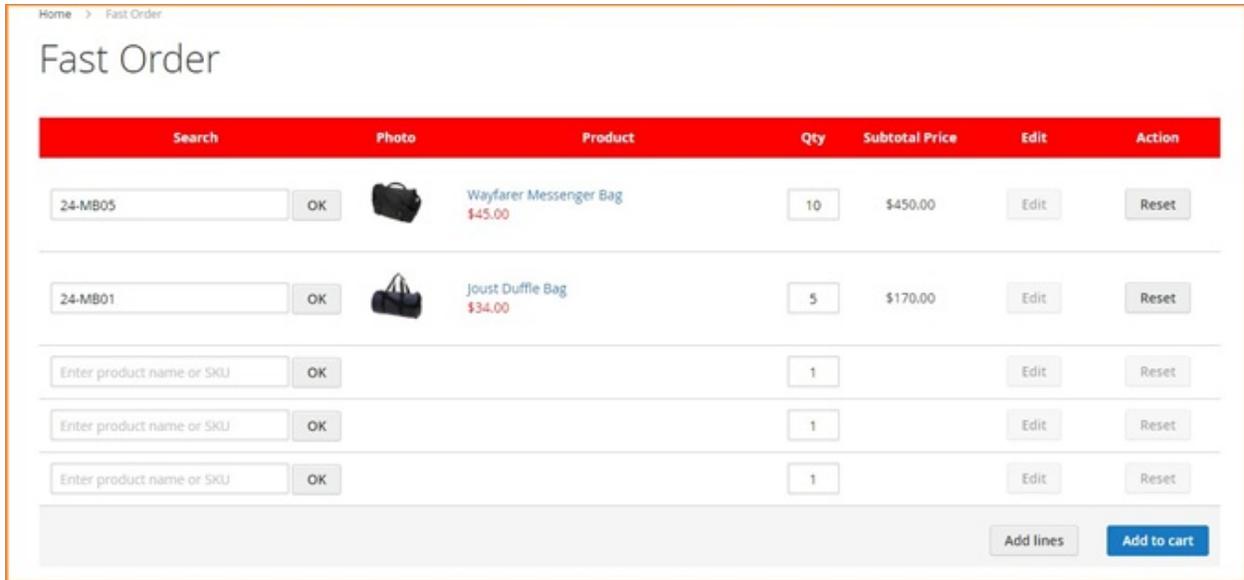
Step 2: Search products by typing names or SKU in the search boxes

There will be several suggestions as you set up for customers to choose. Both names and SKUs are included in the search results with the highlighted search keyword.

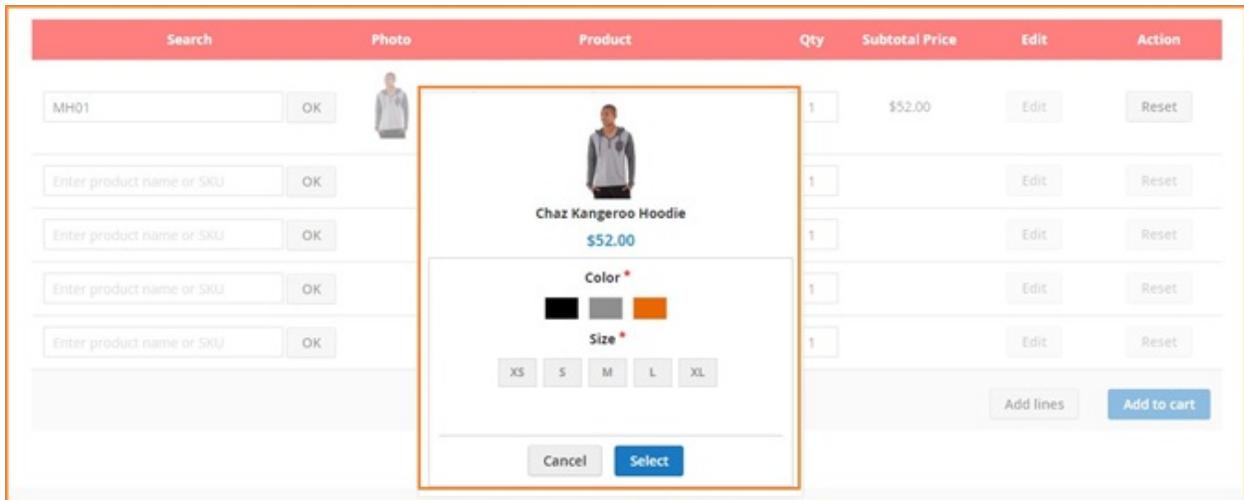
As you can see, it also supports autocomplete



Step 3: Select your wanted products with quantity and add them to cart



For configurable products, there will be a popup of custom option attributes for customers to choose. Evenmore, if your customers want to edit product attributes or other custom options, they just need to click on **“EDIT”** button



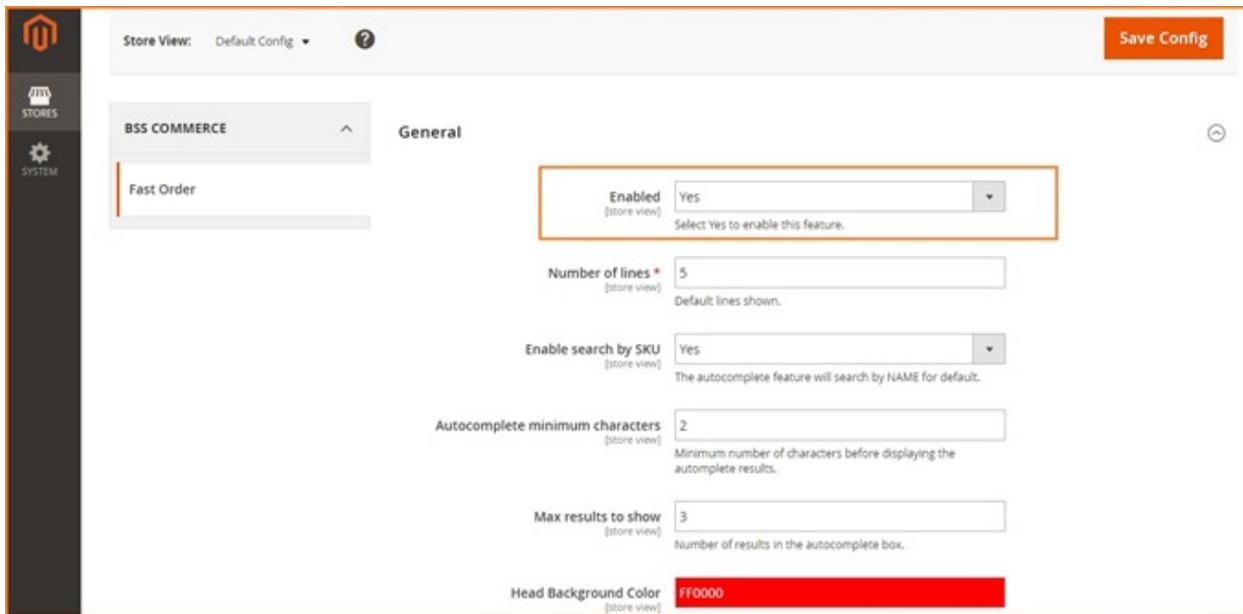
If they want to get more lines for searching and ordering, they can click on **“Add lines”** button at the right bottom of the ordering table

Step 4: Customers can also view your shopping cart page to see chosen products

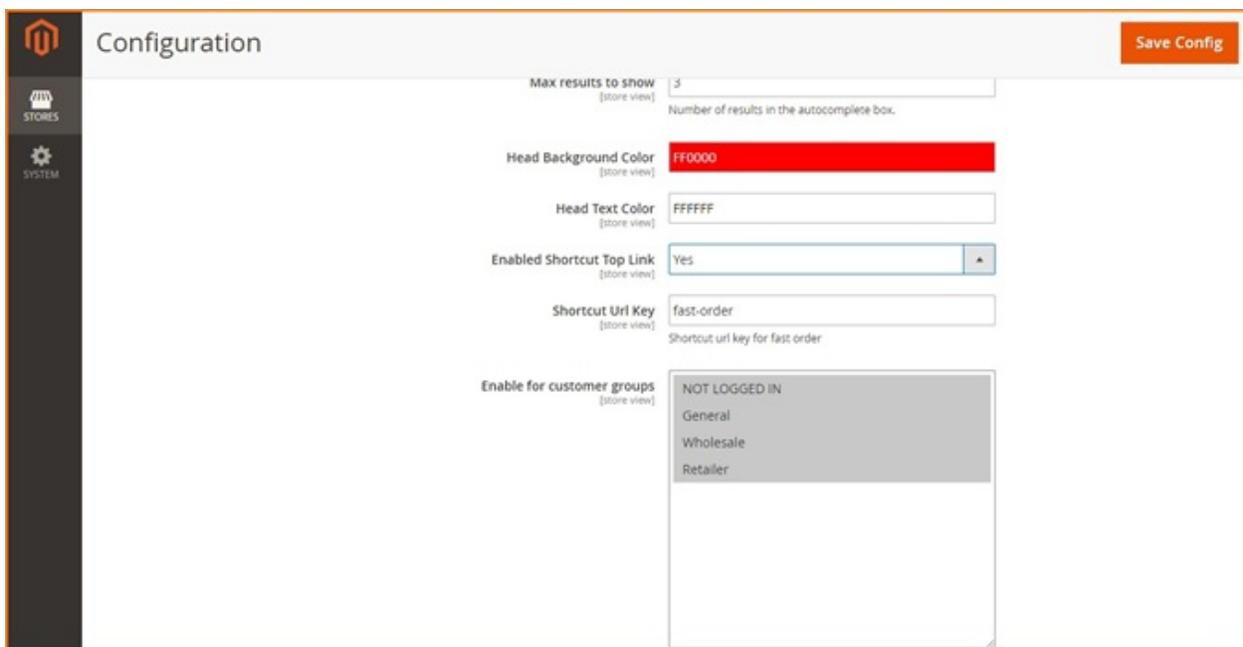
Step 5: Process to checkout right after adding products into cart. The grand total will be automatically calculated as you add multiple desired items to cart at a time.

2. How to configure Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2 Extension in the backend

- For Admin Configuration, go through **“Stores -> Configuration -> BSS Commerce -> Fast Order”**.



- In **Enabled**: You can switch on/switch off Wholesale Fast Order For Magento 2 by choosing **Yes** or **No** it in the back end.
- In **Number of lines**: you set the number of lines of Fast Order shown in the CMS page
- In **Enabled search by SKU**:
 - Choose **Yes** to enable customers to search by SKUs
 - Choose **No** and customers can only search by names as default
- In **Autocomplete minimum characters**: you set the minimum characters customers have to type in the search box so that the result can appear.
- In **Max results to show**: you set the number of results displayed in the autocomplete box



- In **Head Background Color and Head Text Color**: you can choose which color as you wish for your ordering table on the CMS Page to get more attraction from your customers
- In **Enabled Shortcut Top Link**:
 - Choose **Yes** to enable shortcut top link -> Then there will be a **Shortcut Url Key** box for you to type the name for the shortcut url.
 - Choose **No** if you want to disable it
- In **Enable for customer groups**: you choose group for whom you do not want to enable Wholesale Fast Order

79.2 Compatibility

Our Wholesale Fast Order for Magento 2 is compatible with all current versions of Community and Enterprise

79.3 Changelog

Version 1.0.0:

- First Release

79.4 FAQs

1. How to Create Htpasswd for Magento Site
2. How to Solve the Issue of Image Dimension Specifying in Magento
3. How To Upgrade Magento 2.0.2 to Magento 2.0.4 Version
4. Solve “Unable to Communicate With The PayPal Gateway” Error in Magento
5. Problem When Using CDN in Magento: Cannot Loading Font Files
6. Flat Catalog Product Function: Problem in Sorting Product
7. Magento 2 - Got Problems While Importing Products?
8. Magento Redirect to Checkout after Adding To Cart: An Easy How-To Guide
9. Magento Tutorial: Create Color Swatches for Configurable Product
10. Newsletter Tutorial: How to Create and Send Newsletter in Magento?
11. How To Delete Order in Magento
12. How to Optimize Magento Site Speed with GTMetrix
13. How to Set up Payment Sections in Magento Site? [Part 1]
14. How to Set up Payment Section in Magento Site? [Part 2]
15. How to Set up Payment Section in Magento Site? [Part 3]
16. Equip Impervious Magento Security for Your Online Store [Part 1]
17. Equip Impervious Magento Security for Your Online Store [Part 2]
18. Magento Fix: Customers Can’t Login to Version 1.8, 1.8.1 and 1.9
19. How to Set Up Payment Methods in Magento 2 (Part 1)
20. How to Set Up Payment Methods in Magento 2 (Part 2)
21. How to Set Up Multiple Store Views in Magento 2
22. How to Create Configurable Products in Magento 2

- 23. [How to Set Up Shipping Methods in Magento 2 \(Part 1\)](#)
- 24. [Easy Steps to Set Up Minimum Order Amount in Magento 2 in 2 Minutes](#)
- 25. [How to Set Up Shipping Methods in Magento 2 \(Part 2\)](#)
- 26. [Simple Steps to Set Minimum and Maximum Order Quantity in Magento 2](#)
- 27. [Magento 1 Tutorial: How to Import Price Per Store View](#)
- 28. [How to Manage Currency Symbol and Currency Rate in Magento 2](#)
- 29. [How To Set Minimum Quantity for Configurable Product](#)
- 30. [How to Set up Multiple Languages and Currencies in Magento 1 and 2](#)
- 31. [How To Create Shopping Cart Price Rule in Magento 2](#)
- 32. [How to Create Catalog Price Rules in Magento 2](#)